Contents

Preface ................................................................. xiii

Chapter 1  OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES
1. Preview ................................................................. 1
2. Verb tenses: overview ............................................... 2
3. The simple tenses and the progressive tenses .................... 2
4. The perfect tenses .................................................. 3
5. The perfect progressive tenses ..................................... 3
6. The perfect and perfect progressive tenses ....................... 4
7. Verb tenses ......................................................... 5
8. Verb tenses ......................................................... 7
9. Verb tenses ......................................................... 7
10. Verb tenses ......................................................... 8
11. Spelling of -ing forms ............................................. 8
12. Spelling of -ed forms ............................................. 9
13. Spelling of -ing and -ed forms ................................ 10
14. Chapter review .................................................... 10

Chapter 2  PRESENT AND PAST, SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE
1. The simple present and the present progressive ................ 12
2. The simple present and the present progressive ................. 12
3. The simple present and the present progressive ................. 13
4. Non-progressive verbs .............................................. 13
5. The present progressive to describe a temporary state ........ 14
6. Regular and irregular verbs ........................................ 15
7. Regular and irregular verbs ........................................ 15
8. Irregular verbs ..................................................... 16
9. Irregular verbs ..................................................... 16
10. Irregular verbs ..................................................... 17
11. Irregular verbs ..................................................... 18
12. Irregular verbs ..................................................... 19
13. Irregular verbs ..................................................... 19
14. Simple past of irregular verbs .................................... 20
15. Simple past of irregular verbs .................................... 21
16. The simple past and the past progressive ....................... 21
17. The simple past and the past progressive ....................... 22
18. The simple past and the past progressive ....................... 23
19. Simple present, present progressive, simple past, past progressive ........................................ 23
20. Using progressive verbs with always ............................ 24
21. Chapter review .................................................... 25
Chapter 7  NOUNS

1. Regular and irregular plural nouns ........................................... 63
2. Regular and irregular plural nouns ........................................... 63
3. Final -s / -es ................................................................. 64
4. Possessive nouns ............................................................... 64
5. Possessive nouns ............................................................... 65
6. Possessive nouns ............................................................... 65
7. Possessive nouns ............................................................... 66
8. Nouns as adjectives ............................................................ 66
9. Nouns as adjectives ............................................................ 66
10. Nouns as adjectives ............................................................. 67
11. Nouns as adjectives ............................................................. 67
12. Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 68
13. Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 68
14. Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 69
15. Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 69
16. Basic article usage ............................................................. 70
17. Basic article usage ............................................................. 70
18. General article usage .......................................................... 70
19. General article usage .......................................................... 71
20. Using articles .................................................................. 71
21. Using articles .................................................................. 72
22. Expressions of quantity with count and noncount nouns .......... 73
23. Expressions of quantity with count and noncount nouns .......... 73
24. Expressions of quantity with count and noncount nouns .......... 74
25. Using a few and few; a little and little .................................... 75
26. Using a few and few; a little and little .................................... 75
27. Using a few and few; a little and little .................................... 75
28. Singular expressions of quantity: one, each, every .................... 76
29. One, each, every .............................................................. 77
30. Using of in expressions of quantity ......................................... 77
31. Chapter review .................................................................. 78

Chapter 8  PRONOUNS

1. Personal pronouns ............................................................... 79
2. Personal pronouns ............................................................... 79
3. Personal pronouns: agreement with generic nouns and indefinite pronouns ...... 80
4. Personal pronouns: agreement with collective nouns .................. 80
5. Reflexive pronouns ............................................................. 81
6. Reflexive pronouns ............................................................. 81
7. Using you, one, and they as impersonal pronouns ...................... 82
8. Forms of other ................................................................. 82
9. Forms of other ................................................................. 83
10. Common expressions with other ............................................. 84
11. Nouns and pronouns ........................................................... 84
### Chapter 9 MODALS, PART 1
1. Basic modal introduction .............................................. 85
2. Polite requests with “I” as the subject; polite requests with “you” as the subject ................................. 85
3. Polite requests with Would you mind .................................. 86
4. Polite requests with Would you mind .................................. 86
5. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition ................................................................. 87
6. Past tense of must and have to ............................................ 88
7. Expressing necessity and prohibition ...................................... 88
8. Verb form review: have to .................................................. 89
9. Advisability: should, ought to, had better ............................... 89
10. Advisability: should, ought to, had better ............................... 89
11. Should, ought to, had better ................................................. 90
12. The past form of should .................................................... 91
13. Present and past forms of should .......................................... 91
14. Obligation: be supposed to ................................................. 92
15. Unfulfilled intentions: was / were going to .............................. 93
16. Obligation: be supposed to and unfulfilled intentions: was / were going to .............................. 93
17. Making suggestions: could vs. should ..................................... 93
18. Chapter review ............................................................ 94

### Chapter 10 MODALS, PART 2
1. Degrees of certainty: must and may / might I could ....................... 95
2. Degrees of certainty: must and may / might I could ....................... 95
3. Degrees of certainty: present time negative ................................... 96
4. Degrees of certainty: past time .............................................. 97
5. Degrees of certainty: past time negative ................................... 98
6. Degrees of certainty: present and past time ................................ 98
7. Must have vs. had to .......................................................... 99
8. Degrees of certainty: future time ............................................ 100
9. Degrees of certainty: future time ............................................ 100
10. Progressive forms of modals ................................................. 101
11. Modals and modal phrases .................................................. 102
12. Review of modals ............................................................ 103
13. Ability: can and could ....................................................... 103
14. Repeated action in the past .................................................. 104
15. Expressing preference: would rather ....................................... 104
16. Combining modals with phrasal modals ..................................... 105

### Chapter 11 THE PASSIVE
1. Forming the passive ....................................................... 106
2. Active vs. passive .......................................................... 107
3. Forming the passive ....................................................... 107
4. Forming the passive ....................................................... 107
5. Active vs. passive .......................................................... 109
6. Active vs. passive .......................................................... 109
7. Using the passive .......................................................... 110
8. Using the passive .......................................................... 110
9. Active vs. passive .......................................................... 111
10. The passive form of modals and phrasal modals ......................... 112
11. The passive form of modals and phrasal modals ......................... 112
12. Non-progressive passive .................................................. 113
13. Non-progressive passive .................................................. 113
14. Common non-progressive passive verbs + prepositions .................. 113
15. Passive vs. active ......................................................... 114
16. The passive with get ..................................................... 114
17. Participle adjectives ...................................................... 115
Chapter 15  GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2

1. Infinitive of purpose: *in order to* ............................................. 153
2. Infinitive of purpose: *in order to* ............................................. 153
3. Adjectives followed by infinitives ............................................. 154
4. Using infinitives with *too* and *very* ........................................ 154
5. Using infinitives with *too* and *enough* .................................... 155
6. Passive infinitives and gerunds ............................................. 155
7. Passive infinitives and gerunds ............................................. 155
8. Passive infinitives and gerunds ............................................. 156
9. Passive infinitives and gerunds ............................................. 156
10. Using gerunds or passive infinitives following *need* .................. 157
11. Using verbs of perception ............................................. 157
12. Using the simple form after *let* and *help* ................................. 158
13. Using causative verbs: *make, have, get* .................................. 159
14. Using causative verbs: *make, have, get* .................................. 159
15. Verb form review ............................................. 160
16. Verb form review ............................................. 160
17. Review ............................................. 161
18. Verb form review ............................................. 162

Chapter 16  COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

1. Parallel structure ............................................. 163
2. Parallel structure ............................................. 163
3. Parallel structure ............................................. 164
4. Parallel structure: using commas ............................................. 165
5. Parallel structure ............................................. 165
6. Paired conjunctions: *both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor* ............................................. 166
7. Paired conjunctions: *both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor* ............................................. 166
8. Paired conjunctions: *both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor* ............................................. 166
9. Separating independent clauses with periods; connecting them with *and* and *but* ............................................. 167
10. Separating independent clauses with periods; connecting them with *and* and *but* ............................................. 168
11. Chapter review ............................................. 168
12. Chapter review ............................................. 169
Chapter 17  ADVERB CLAUSES
1. Adverb clauses .................................................. 170
2. Periods and commas ........................................... 170
3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time .................. 171
4. Verb tense review .............................................. 171
5. Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect .... 172
6. Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect .... 172
7. *Even though* vs. *because* .................................. 173
8. *Even though* vs. *because* .................................. 173
9. Showing direct contrast: *while* ......................... 174
10. *If*-clauses ...................................................... 175
11. Shortened *if*-clauses ......................................... 175
12. Using *whether or not* and *even if* ................. 176
13. Adverb clauses of condition: using *unless* ...... 176
14. Adverb clauses of condition: using *only if* ...... 177
15. Review: adverb clauses of condition ................. 177
16. Adverb clauses .................................................. 178
17. Chapter review ................................................. 178

Chapter 18  REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES
1. Introduction ...................................................... 180
2. Modifying adverbial phrases ............................... 180
3. Changing time clauses to modifying adverbial phrases .... 181
4. Adverb clauses and modifying phrases ............... 181
5. Expressing the idea of “during the same time” in modifying adverbial phrases .... 182
6. Expressing the idea of “during the same time” and cause / effect in modifying adverbial phrases .... 183
7. Expressing the idea of “during the same time” and cause / effect in modifying adverbial phrases .... 184
8. Modifying phrases and clauses ......................... 184
9. Modifying phrases with *upon* ......................... 185
10. Modifying phrases with *upon* ......................... 185
11. Modifying phrases ............................................. 186

Chapter 19  CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION
1. Using *because of* and *due to* ......................... 187
2. Using *because of* and *due to* ......................... 187
3. Using *because of* and *due to* ......................... 188
4. Cause and effect: using *therefore, consequently,* and *so* .......... 188
5. Cause and effect: using *therefore, consequently,* and *so* .......... 188
6. Cause and effect: using *therefore, consequently,* and *so* .......... 189
7. Showing cause and effect .................................... 190
8. Periods and commas .......................................... 190
9. Summary of patterns and punctuation .................. 191
10. *Such . . . that* and *so . . . that* ..................... 191
11. *Such . . . that* and *so . . . that* ..................... 192
12. Expressing purpose ........................................... 192
13. Expressing purpose: using *so that* ................. 193
14. Using modals with *so that* ......................... 193
15. Expressing purpose: using *so that* ................. 193
16. Showing contrast (unexpected result) ............... 194
17. *Despite, in spite of* vs. *even though,* *although* ........ 194
18. Showing contrast .............................................. 196
19. Showing contrast .............................................. 196
20. Showing direct contrast ...................................... 197
21. Expressing condition: using *otherwise* ............ 197
Chapter 20  CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

1. Introduction to conditional sentences ........................................... 200
2. Overview of basic verb forms in conditional sentences ...................... 200
3. True in the present or future .......................................................... 201
4. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the present or future .............................. 202
5. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the present or future .............................. 202
6. True vs. untrue in the present or future .......................................... 203
7. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the past .............................................. 203
8. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the past .............................................. 204
9. Conditional sentences: present, future, or past ................................. 204
10. Conditional sentences: present, future, or past ................................. 205
11. Conditional sentences ................................................................. 205
12. Progressive verb forms in conditional sentences .............................. 206
13. Using “mixed time” in conditional sentences ................................... 206
14. Using progressive forms and “mixed time” in conditional sentences .... 207
15. Omitting if .................................................................................... 208
16. Omitting if .................................................................................... 208
17. Implied conditions ......................................................................... 209
18. Review: conditional sentences ...................................................... 209
19. Verb forms following wish ............................................................. 211
20. Verb forms following wish ............................................................. 211
21. Verb forms following wish ............................................................. 212
22. Using would to make wishes about the future ................................. 213
23. Conditionals ................................................................................. 213

Appendix  SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS

1. Subjects, verbs, and objects ............................................................ A1
2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs ....................................................... A1
3. Adjectives and Adverbs ................................................................. A2
4. Adjectives and Adverbs ................................................................. A2
5. Midsentence adverbs ..................................................................... A3
6. Identifying prepositions ................................................................. A3
7. Sentence elements .......................................................................... A4
8. Linking verbs ................................................................................ A4
9. Linking verbs; adjectives and adverbs ............................................. A5
10. Review: basic question forms ........................................................ A6
11. Yes / no and information questions ................................................ A7
12. Information questions .................................................................. A8
13. Information questions .................................................................. A9
14. Negative questions ...................................................................... A10
15. Tag questions ............................................................................... A11
16. Constructions ............................................................................... A11
17. Using not and no ......................................................................... A12
18. Avoiding double negatives ............................................................ A13
19. Beginning a sentence with a negative word .................................... A13
20. Preposition combinations ............................................................... A13
21. Preposition combinations ............................................................... A14
22. Preposition combinations ............................................................... A14
23. Preposition combinations ............................................................... A15
24. Preposition combinations ............................................................... A15
25. Preposition combinations ............................................................... A16
The *Understanding and Using English Grammar Workbook* is a place for students to explore and practice English grammar on their own. It is a place where they can test and fine-tune their understandings of English structures and improve their abilities to use English meaningfully and correctly. All of the exercises have been designed for independent study, but this book is also a resource for teachers who need exercise material for additional classwork, homework, testing, or individualized instruction.

The *Workbook* is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts found in *Understanding and Using English Grammar, Fourth Edition*, a classroom teaching text for students of English as a second or foreign language, as well as in the accompanying *Chartbook*, a reference grammar with no exercises.

The answers to the practices can be found in the *Answer Key* in the back of the *Workbook*. Its pages are perforated so that they can be detached to make a separate booklet. However, if teachers want to use the *Workbook* as a classroom teaching text, the *Answer Key* can be removed at the beginning of the term.

A special *Workbook* section called *Phrasal Verbs*, not available in the main text, is included in the *Appendix*. This section provides a reference list of common phrasal verbs along with a variety of exercises for independent practice.
Practice 1. Preview. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)
Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses to complete the sentences.

1. A: I’m going to ask you some questions so that we can practice verb tenses. What do you do every day before you come to class? Name one thing.
   B: I (eat) ____________ breakfast.

2. A: What did you do last night? Name three separate activities.
   B: Last night I (eat) ________________ dinner. Then I (visit) ________________ some friends, and later I (write) ________________ a couple of letters.

3. A: What are you doing right now? What activity is in progress right now, at this exact moment?
   B: Right now I (talk) ________________ to you. I (answer) ________________ your questions.

4. A: Where were you at this exact time yesterday? And what activity was in progress then?
   B: Let me think. At this time yesterday, I was at the bookstore. I (look) ________________ ________________ for the books I needed to buy for this class.

5. A: How many questions have I asked since we began this exercise?
   B: I think you (ask) ________________ me five or six questions since we began this exercise.

6. A: What have you been doing for the past five minutes? In other words, what activity began five minutes ago and has been in progress from then until now?
   B: I (talk) ________________ to you for the past five minutes. I started talking to you five minutes ago, and I am still talking to you.

7. A: Where will you be tomorrow morning?
   B: I (be) ________________ in class tomorrow morning.

8. A: What will you be doing at this exact time tomorrow? In other words, what activity will be in progress at this exact same time tomorrow?
   B: Right now I am sitting in the classroom. And at this exact time tomorrow, I (sit) ________________ in the classroom.
9. A: What had you done by the time you got to class today? In other words, what is one activity that you had completed before you arrived in class today?
   B: Well, for one thing, I (eat) ________________ breakfast by the time I got to class today.

10. A: What will you have done by the time you go to bed tonight? Name one activity that you will have completed before you go to bed tonight.
   B: I (eat) ________________ dinner by the time I go to bed tonight.

► Practice 2. Verb tenses: overview. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)
This is a calendar of the month of February. For each item, write the date or dates that the text refers to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tue</th>
<th>Wed</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Fri</th>
<th>Sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Today is Wednesday, February 11th. We play tennis on Saturdays. These are the dates we play tennis in February: February __7th__, __14th__, __21st__, and __28th__.
2. Today is Wednesday, February 4th. We’re going to play tennis on Saturday. We’re going to play tennis on February ________.
3. Today is Wednesday, February 4th. It rained yesterday. It rained on February ________.
4. Today is Wednesday, February 4th. It’s been raining since Monday. It has rained on these days: February ________, ________, and ________.
5. Today is Friday, February 13th. It’s beautiful today, but it had been raining for three days. It rained on February ________, ________, and ________.
6. Today is Friday, February 13th. It’s not going to rain during the weekend. It won’t rain on February ________ and ________.
7. Today is Saturday, February 21st. We’ve been here for exactly two weeks. We arrived here on February ________.
8. Today is Monday, February 23rd. Our singing group meets every Tuesday evening, and we sing from 7:00 to 9:00 p.m. I will be singing with my group on the evening of February ________.

► Practice 3. The simple tenses and the progressive tenses. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)
Circle the correct verb to complete each sentence.

1. It (is raining / rains) every day in August.
2. Uncle Joe (visited / visits) us last month.
3. Our team (will win / wins) the soccer game tomorrow.
4. Nick (watches / is watching) an action movie on TV now.
5. Tomorrow at this time we (will be flying / are flying) over the Atlantic Ocean.
6. Tina! I (was thinking / am thinking) of you just a minute ago when the phone rang!
7. I know you, Aunt Martha. You’re never going to retire. You (are working / will be working) at your computer even when you are 90 years old.
8. At 9:00 P.M. last night, all the children (go / went) to bed. At 10:00 P.M. they (slept / were sleeping).
9. Uh-oh. Look! Mr. Anton (fell / was falling) down on the ice. Mr. Anton! Don’t move! We (help / will help) you!
10. A: Why is the beach closed today?
   B: There are sharks in the water! They (swim / are swimming) near the shore!

Practice 4. The perfect tenses. (Chart 1-3)
Circle the correct verb to complete each sentence.

1. I (have / had) already seen the movie twice.
2. I (have / had) already seen the movie, so I didn’t want to see it again.
3. Guy (has been / was) a professor at this university since 2001. He’s going to be chairman of the English department next year.
4. Fred (has been / was) a judge in the Supreme Court of this state for 21 years until he retired last year.
5. On the 14th of next month, my grandparents are going to celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary. They (will have been / had been) married for 50 years.
6. Rafael and Sue live in Springfield. They (lived / have lived) there all their lives.
7. Ann and Sid moved to Chicago. Before that, they (have / had) lived in this town all their lives.
8. Sorry, Mr. Wu. You (have / will have) missed your flight! The plane left just two minutes ago.
9. Jan speaks excellent English. He (had / has) studied English in school for twelve years before he came here.
10. We were too late to have dinner at the restaurant. When we got there, it (has / had) already closed for the night.

Practice 5. The perfect progressive tenses. (Chart 1-4)
Circle the correct verb to complete each sentence.

1. I’m thirsty, aren’t you? We (have / had) been driving for four hours. Let’s stop for a cold drink soon.
2. When is the rain going to stop? It (has been / was) raining for two days.
3. When Greta graduates from medical school next year, she (will be / will have been) studying for twenty years!
4. After Jim and Kim (have / had) been going out together for seven years, they finally got married last month.
5. You (has / have) been working in this office for only two months, and you’ve already gotten a raise? That’s great!
6. Stan finally quit playing professional tennis after he broke his ankle two months ago. He (has / had) been playing for twenty years.
7. Well, it’s good to be on this plane. Finally! We (have been waiting / will have been waiting) almost two hours!
8. Wake Maria up now. She (had / has) been sleeping for three hours. That’s a very long nap.
9. The police officer gave Pedro a ticket because he (has / had) been speeding.

Practice 6. The perfect and the perfect progressive tenses. (Charts 1-3 and 1-4)
Choose the sentence that means the same as the given sentence(s). Write the letter of the sentence.

1. We’ve been watching TV all night. _____
   a. We are still watching TV.
   b. We watched TV until a little while ago.

2. I’ve already done my homework. _____
   a. I’m still doing my homework.
   b. I’ve finished my homework.

3. The baby was crying when I picked him up. _____
   a. First the baby cried. Then I picked him up.
   b. First I picked up the baby. Then he cried.

4. The baby cried when I picked him up. _____
   a. First the baby cried. Then I picked him up.
   b. First I picked up the baby. Then he cried.

5. Don’t wake me up when you get home at midnight. I’ll be sleeping then. _____
   a. I’m going to go to sleep before midnight.
   b. I’m going to go to sleep after midnight.

6. I’m not going home for the summer break. I’ll be studying. _____
   a. I have a lot of studying to do.
   b. I don’t have a lot of studying to do.

7. At the beginning of the new year, I’ll start a new job. _____
   a. I’ll start a new job before the new year begins.
   b. I’ll start a new job when the new year begins.

8. By the beginning of the new year, I will have started my new job. _____
   a. I’ll start a new job before the new year begins.
   b. I’ll start a new job when the new year begins.

9. Joe and his family had cleaned the whole house before his parents arrived. _____
   a. The house was already clean when his parents arrived.
   b. The house was not yet clean when his parents arrived.
Practice 7. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)

Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses to complete the sentences.

**SIMPLE**

1. Tom has regular habits. He (eat) ______ dinner every day. He has eaten dinner every day since he was a child. He ate dinner every day last month. He ate dinner yesterday. He will eat dinner tomorrow. He will probably eat dinner almost every day until the end of his life.

2. Tom eats dinner every day. Usually he eats at home, but yesterday, he (eat) ______ dinner at a restaurant.

3. Tom ate dinner yesterday. He eats dinner every day. In all probability, he (eat) ______ dinner tomorrow.

**PROGRESSIVE**

4. At 7:00 this evening, Tom started to eat dinner. It is now 7:15. Tom is on the phone because Mary called him. He says, “Can I call you back? I (eat) ______ dinner right now. I’ll finish soon and will call you back. I don’t want my dinner to get cold.” Tom’s dinner is in progress when Mary calls.

5. Last week Tom went to a restaurant. He began to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary came into the restaurant, saw Tom, and walked over to say hello. Tom’s dinner was still in front of him. He hadn’t finished it yet. In other words, when Mary walked into the restaurant, Tom (eat) ______ dinner. Tom’s dinner was in progress when Mary arrived.

6. Tom will begin his dinner at 7:00 tonight. Mary will arrive at 7:15. It takes Tom 30 minutes to eat his dinner. In other words, when Mary arrives tonight, Tom (eat) ______ his dinner. Tom’s dinner will be in progress when Mary arrives.

(continued on next page)
7. Tom finished eating dinner at 7:30 tonight. It is now 8:00, and his mother has just come into the kitchen. She says, “What would you like for dinner? Can I cook something for you?” Tom says, “Thanks Mom, but I \( \text{eat, already} \) dinner.”

10. Tom began to eat dinner at 7:00 tonight. It is now, at this moment, 7:15. Tom \( \text{eat} \) his dinner for 15 minutes, but he hasn’t finished yet. In other words, his dinner has been in progress for 15 minutes.

8. Yesterday Tom cooked his own dinner. He began at 7:00 and finished at 7:30. At 8:00 his mother came into the kitchen. She offered to cook some food for Tom, but he \( \text{eat, already} \) \underline{\text{already}} \. In other words, Tom had finished his dinner before he talked to his mother.

11. Last week Tom went to a restaurant. He began to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary came into the restaurant, saw Tom, and walked over to say hello. Tom’s dinner was still in front of him. He hadn’t finished it yet. In other words, when Mary walked into the restaurant, Tom \( \text{eat} \) dinner. Tom’s dinner was in progress when Mary arrived.

9. Tomorrow Tom will begin dinner at 7:00 and finish at 7:30. His mother will come into the kitchen at 8:00. In other words, Tom \( \text{eat, already} \) dinner by the time his mother walks into the kitchen.

12. Tonight Tom will go to a restaurant. He will begin to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary will come into the restaurant, see Tom, and walk over to say hello. Tom’s dinner will still be in front of him. He won’t have finished it yet. In other words, when Mary walks into the restaurant, Tom \( \text{eat} \) dinner for 15 minutes. Tom’s dinner will have been in progress for 15 minutes by the time Mary arrives.
Practice 8. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)
Circle the phrase that correctly describes each sentence.

1. He is eating dinner. daily habit at this time in the past
2. We ate a huge dinner. in the future at this time in the past
3. She doesn’t eat lunch. daily habit at this time in the past
4. I’ve been busy. past and present past only only today
5. Sam spoke to Anna. past and present past only daily habit
6. They were studying. past and present at this time in the past
7. They’re sleeping. daily habit at this time in the past
8. I’ll see you there. in the future daily habit at this time
9. Sue plays the violin. in the future daily habit at this time
10. Tina played the drums. daily habit at this time in the past

Practice 9. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)
Circle the letter of each word or phrase that can complete the sentence. More than one completion may be correct.

1. We will be there ____.
   a. now b. soon c. next week

2. It’s raining really hard ____.
   a. right now b. last week c. tomorrow

3. Shhh! The movie is beginning ____.
   a. daily b. now c. right now

4. The newspaper hasn’t come ____.
   a. tomorrow b. all day c. since Monday

5. We are enjoying the nice weather ____.
   a. now b. this week c. sometimes

6. I am going to study ____.
   a. last night b. next month c. this weekend

7. John has been sleeping ____.
   a. since 9:00 b. all day c. for two hours

8. He worked hard ____.
   a. last week b. now c. yesterday

9. Carlos was studying ____.
   a. at midnight b. when we came c. in a week

10. We’ll see you ____.
    a. tomorrow b. a minute ago c. in the morning

11. I’ll be talking to you ____.
    a. soon b. now c. in a few days
Practice 10. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)
Write the letters of all the phrases that can complete each sentence.

1. Every day I ________.  
   a. memorize new vocabulary  
   b. am memorizing new vocabulary  
   c. was memorizing new vocabulary

2. Right now it ________.  
   a. is snowing  
   b. was snowing  
   c. snows

3. By the time the plane lands, ________.  
   a. I have finished my book  
   b. I will have finished my book  
   c. I had been finishing my book

4. Tomorrow at this time ________.  
   a. we will have arrived home  
   b. we will be arriving home  
   c. we arrived home

5. Pretty soon the weather ________.  
   a. will turn cold  
   b. is going to turn cold  
   c. will be turning cold

6. While you were sleeping, ________.  
   a. your mom stopped by  
   b. your mom has stopped by  
   c. your mom was stopping by

7. Before you got here, ________.  
   a. I had been cleaning my room  
   b. I am cleaning my room  
   c. I will have cleaned my room

8. They had left the restaurant ________.  
   a. before we arrived  
   b. after we arrived  
   c. by the time we arrived

Practice 11. Spelling of -ing forms. (Chart 1-6)
Write the -ing form of each verb in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Just add -ing to the simple form.</th>
<th>Drop the final -e and add -ing.</th>
<th>Double the final letter and add -ing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy</td>
<td></td>
<td>copying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cutting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Practice 12. Spelling of -ed forms.** (Chart 1-6)
Write the -ed form for each verb in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Just add -ed to the simple form.</th>
<th>Add -d only.</th>
<th>Double the final letter and add -ed.</th>
<th>Change the -y to -i and add -ed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>bother</td>
<td>bothered</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>copy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>copied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>fasten</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>fear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>occur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>pat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>play</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>refer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>reply</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>return</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>scare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>try</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 13. Spelling of -ing and -ed forms. (Chart 1-6)
Write the -ing and -ed form for each word in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>-ing</th>
<th>-ed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>preferring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>kiss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>play</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>faint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>allow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>die</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>fold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>try</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>hop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 14. Chapter review. (Chapter 1)
Read the conversation between a new teacher and his students on the first day of class. Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses to complete the conversation.

**Part I.** The first day of the new semester.

TEACHER: Good morning, students. I'm your new music teacher, Tom Piazza.

STUDENT 1: Hello, Mr. Piazza. How (you, spell) ____________ your name?

MR. PIAZZA: I (spell) ____________ it almost like pizza, but it (have) ____________ an extra “A” in the middle.

STUDENT 2: Where (you, be) ____________ from, Mr. Piazza?

MR. PIAZZA: Well, I (be) ____________ Italian. You can tell that by the name. I was born in Italy, but I (live) ____________ there for only two years as a child. My parents (move) ____________ to New York with the whole family when I was just two years old.
STUDENT 3: Oh, (you, grow) up in New York then?

MR. PIAZZA: Yes, I did. I grew up in New York City.

STUDENT 4: So when (you, come) here to Springfield?

MR. PIAZZA: Just two weeks ago. I (arrive) here just two weeks ago!
I (be) here for two weeks.

STUDENT 5: Only two weeks! Well, (you, like) Springfield?

MR. PIAZZA: I do. It seems very nice. Right now I (stay) downtown in the PriceWise Hotel. I (look) for an apartment near this school now. In fact, I (look) for an apartment for two weeks. I hope that I (find) one soon.

Part II. Two weeks later.

STUDENT: (you, find) an apartment yet, Mr. Piazza?

MR. PIAZZA: Yes, I have. As you know, I (look) for one for the past two weeks, and then over the weekend, I found a nice one.

STUDENT: Great! When (you, move) in?

MR. PIAZZA: Next weekend. Usually I (give) piano lessons all day on Saturdays, but next Saturday I won’t be giving lessons. Next Saturday and Sunday — all day — I (move) all my things into my new place. It will take the whole weekend, I’m sure. But next Monday at this time, I (move) everything into my new apartment. I (be) very happy here in Springfield in the future, I know.
Practice 1. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)
Complete the sentences. Write the simple present or the present progressive form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. The sun (set) ___________ in the west every evening.
2. Look! The sun (set) __________________ behind the mountain now. How beautiful!
3. The football players (practice) __________________ on the field right now.
4. The football players (practice) __________________ on the field every afternoon.
5. I always (listen) __________________ to the radio when I’m in my car.
6. The traffic is bad today, but it isn’t bothering me. I (listen) __________________ to my favorite morning talk show with Jack LaLoule, who is very funny.
7. Sam and Lara (talk) __________________ on the phone every night.
8. Sam and Lara (talk) __________________ on the phone right now, so I can’t call Lara. Her line is busy.
9. I’ll call you back in a little while. We (eat) __________________ dinner right now.
10. My grandparents usually (eat) __________________ dinner early. They often go out to their favorite restaurant for the early dinner special at 5:30.

Practice 2. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)
Circle the correct verb.

1. Because of the force of gravity, objects (fall / are falling) down and not up.
2. It’s autumn! The leaves (fall / are falling), and winter will soon be here.
3. Coffee (grows / is growing) in mountainous areas, not in deserts.
4. Oh, you (grow / are growing) so fast, Johnny! Soon you’ll be taller than your dad.
5. Near the Arctic Circle, the sun (shines / is shining) for more than twenty hours a day at the beginning of the summer.
6. It’s a beautiful day! The sun (shines / is shining) and the birds (sing / are singing).
7. Maria is a professional singer. She (sings / is singing) in the opera every season.
8. Olga likes mysteries. She (reads / is reading) one mystery book every week.
9. Hello, Sarah? I (call / am calling) you from my car. I’m going to be a little late for lunch.
Practice 3. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Complete the sentences. Write either the simple present or the present progressive form of the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once.

belong  bleed  mean  shrink  try
bite  fail  own

1. The bank lent us money for a down payment, so now we ______ own ______ the house we used to rent.

2. Shhh! I ____________ to concentrate. I can’t hear myself think with all that noise going on.

3. This book is mine. That one ____________ to Pierre.

4. Shhh! The baby ____________. We don’t want to wake him up.

5. Singular ____________ “one.”

6. That sweater won’t fit you if you wash it in hot water. Wool ____________ in hot water.

7. Look at Joan. She ____________ her fingernails. She must be nervous.

8. A: Juan! What’s the matter with your hand? It ____________.
   B: I just cut it when I was using a knife. It’s not serious. I’ll wash it and put a bandage on it.

9. A: My grades in school are terrible this term. I ____________ three of my courses.
   B: Maybe you can improve them before the end of the term if you start studying.

Practice 4. Non-progressive verbs. (Chart 2-3)

Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. There you are! Behind the tree! I ______ you.
   a. see  b. am seeing

2. My mother’s hearing has been getting worse for several months. She _____ a specialist right now.
   a. sees  b. is seeing

3. Do you see that man? I ______ him. He was my high school English teacher.
   a. recognize  b. am recognizing

4. My favorite actor ______ at the Paramount Theater.
   a. currently appears  b. is currently appearing

5. A: Is my voice loud enough?
   B: Yes, _____.
   a. I hear you  b. I am hearing you
6. A: Aren’t you having any coffee?
   B: No, ___.
      a. I prefer tea                               b. I’m preferring tea

7. A: What’s on your mind?
   B: I ___.
      a. think about my family                    b. am thinking about my family

8. A: Did you make a decision yet?
   B: No, ___.
      a. I need your opinion                    b. I’m needing your opinion

9. A: Why are you staring at me?
   B: ___.
      a. You resemble your mom so much          b. You are resembling your mom so much

10. A: There’s Dr. Jones on a motorcycle! Do you believe it? ___.
    B: a. Yeah, he owns several                  b. Yeah, he is owning several

► **Practice 5. The present progressive to describe a temporary state.** (Chart 2-3, 2nd footnote)

Circle the letter of the correct completion. If the situation describes a temporary state, choose the present progressive.

1. My husband and I are short, but our children ___.
   a. are tall                                  b. are being tall

2. Jane’s an intelligent woman, but she won’t see a doctor about those headaches she has. She ___ now.
   a. is foolish                                b. is being foolish

3. The teacher spoke harshly to the children because they were too noisy, so now they ___.
   a. are quiet                                 b. are being quiet

4. Don’t eat that chocolate dessert. It ___.
   a. is not healthy                            b. is not being healthy

5. Timmy! Those are bad words you’re saying to Mr. Hawkes. You ___.
   a. are not polite                            b. are not being polite

6. I’m worried about Jeff. He has pneumonia. He ___.
   a. is very ill                               b. is being very ill
Part I. Circle the eight past tense verbs in the passage.

Part II. Answer the questions according to the information in the passage. Circle “T” if the statement is true. Circle “F” if the statement is false.

1. The Soviet Union launched the first artificial satellite. T F
2. The first satellite was about the size of a golf ball. T F
3. The first orbit around the Earth took about an hour and a half. T F
4. Sputnik went into space several times. T F
5. This first launch was the beginning of the space age and the space race. T F

Practice 7. Regular and irregular verbs. (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Complete the sentences. Write the simple past tense of the verbs in bold.

Part I. Regular verbs: The simple past and past participle end in -ed.

1. Sandy works at a bakery. She worked there last Saturday.
2. Burt often listens to old Beatles songs. He listened to some last night too.
3. Ana and Juan study English in a group on Saturday mornings. Last Saturday, they ________________ the irregular past tense verbs.
4. It rains every afternoon in the summer. Yesterday it __________________ all afternoon and all night too.

Part II. Irregular verbs: The simple past and past participle do not end in -ed.

5. Watch out! Those glasses break easily. Uh-oh . . . one glass just __________________ .
6. Nowadays, I occasionally swim for exercise when I have time, but I __________________ every day when I was a child.
7. Lightning sometimes hits trees in this area. In the last storm, a lightning bolt __________________ my neighbor’s tree and caused it to fall on his house.

*launch = to start something, usually something big or important.
**usher in = to introduce.
Practice 8. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-5)
Complete the sentences. Write the simple past tense of the verbs in bold.

Group 1.
1. This year corn costs a lot more than it ________________ last year.
2. Gail generally shuts the door very quietly, but tonight she ________________ it with a loud bang because she was very angry.
3. I usually cut my daughter’s hair myself, but last week I was sick and she went to a hairdresser. He ________________ it too short, and she wasn’t happy.
4. Andrew moves from job to job. Normally, he works for about a year and then quits, but on this last job, he ________________ after only one month.

Group 2.
5. Sometimes I forget things. Yesterday I ________________ to take my keys with me, and when I got home, I couldn’t get into my house.
6. Presidents choose their assistants and their cabinet officers. Last week the president ________________ the chief financial officer of a major bank to be the secretary of the treasury.
7. I am a history major. I take a lot of history courses. Last semester I ________________ Medieval European History and Modern African History.
8. Jenny always gives generous presents. Last year she ________________ me a beautiful silver picture frame from Mexico.

Practice 9. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-5)
Complete the sentences. Write the simple past tense of the verbs in bold.

Group 3.
1. The concert usually begins on time, but tonight it ________________ ten minutes late.
2. The opera star generally sings beautifully, but last night he ________________ poorly because he was getting a cold.
4. Keisha usually drinks green tea. At our house, we didn’t have any green tea, so she ________________ decaffeinated coffee.

Group 4.
5. I always buy fresh vegetables on the weekend. Last Saturday I ________________ fresh asparagus.
6. Mr. Joseph teaches Spanish in high school. He ________________ my mother Spanish in the same high school 25 years ago.
7. Our basketball team doesn’t win many games, but we ________________ last Friday night.
8. The other team is an excellent team, and they rarely lose a game. But they ______________ the game last Friday night.

9. A: Isn’t Helen still here? She usually leaves after six, doesn’t she?
   B: Not today. She ______________ early for a dentist’s appointment.

10. A: Don’t tell this to Grandma. Bad news about the family always upsets her.
    B: I told her already. And it’s true — the bad news ______________ her. She cried.

► Practice 10. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-5)
Complete the sentences. Write the simple past tense of the verbs in bold.

Group 5.

1. I know the whole Grant family. I know their aunts, uncles, and cousins, and I ___________ their grandparents long ago.

2. Tom is a pilot. He flies across the Atlantic Ocean regularly. Last month he ___________ to Australia for the first time.

3. I rarely do all of my homework. Last night I ___________ about half of it before I went to bed for the night.

4. My friends and I usually see a movie on Friday nights. Last Friday night we ___________ the new science-fiction movie, Robot Planet.

Group 6.

5. Joanna is an excellent runner. She runs in the Olympic Games. She ___________ in the Olympic Games in Athens in 2004 and in Beijing in 2008.

6. Aunt Jessie rarely comes to our house. But last year she ___________ for my brother’s wedding.

7. When you mix red paint and yellow paint, it becomes orange paint. Yesterday I mixed yellow paint with blue paint, and it ___________ green.

Group 7.

8. A: Your mother is an English teacher, right?
   B: Well, she ___________ an English teacher until she retired. Now she writes books to teach people English.

9. A: You go to the math review sessions on Monday nights, don’t you?
   B: Yes, I do. I ___________ to the review session last night.

Group 8.


11. Musicians learn to play instruments when they are very young. My cousin ___________ to play the violin when she was only four years old.
12. Fires burn quickly in this dry weather. Last month a fire _____________ out of control for a week in the national park.

13. Be careful! The milk is going to spill! Uh-oh. Too late. It _____________ all over the rug.

**Practice 11. Irregular verbs.** (Chart 2-5)
Write the simple past and the past participle forms of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Form</th>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. buy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. begin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. catch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. quit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. find</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. make</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. take</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. break</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. lose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. sleep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. build</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. fight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Practice 12. Irregular verbs.** (Chart 2-5)
Complete the verb chart. Write the missing simple present, simple past, or past participle forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Form</th>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. seen</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. teach</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. spoken</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. gone</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. forgotten</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. wrote</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. left</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. upset</td>
<td>upset</td>
<td>upset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. flown</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice 13. Irregular verbs.** (Chart 2-5)
In this exercise, a police reporter interviews the victim of a theft. The victim answers the questions, using a past tense verb. Write the victim’s words.

1. **REPORTER:** So, a thief broke into your home last night?
   **VICTIM:** Yes, a thief ___________ into my home last night.

2. **REPORTER:** Did he steal anything?
   **VICTIM:** Yes, he ___________ some things.

3. **REPORTER:** Did you know he was in your apartment?
   **VICTIM:** Yes, I ___________ he was in my apartment.

4. **REPORTER:** Did you hear him come in?
   **VICTIM:** Yes, I ___________ him come in.

5. **REPORTER:** Did the police come?
   **VICTIM:** Yes, the police ___________.

6. **REPORTER:** Did your hands shake when you called the police?
   **VICTIM:** Yes, my hands ___________ when I called them.
7. REPORTER: Did he hide in your garden?
VICTIM: Yes, he ________________ in my garden.

8. REPORTER: Did the police find him?
VICTIM: Yes, the police ________________ him.

9. REPORTER: Did they fight with him?
VICTIM: Yes, they ________________ with him.

10. REPORTER: Did he run away?
VICTIM: Yes, he ________________ away.

11. REPORTER: Did they shoot at him?
VICTIM: Yes, they ________________ at him.

12. REPORTER: Did they catch him?
VICTIM: Yes, they ________________ him.

> Practice 14. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-5)
Complete the sentences. Write the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bite</th>
<th>catch</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>pay</th>
<th>sting</th>
<th>swim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>quit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I broke a tooth when I ________________ into a piece of hard candy.
2. The little boy ________________ his mother’s hand as they walked toward the school bus.
3. Maria promised to help us. I hope she ________________ what she said.
4. Arthur ________________ out all of the candles on his birthday cake.
5. We both ________________ eating fried foods three months ago, and we already feel much better.
6. Douglas ________________ the outside of his pocket to make sure his wallet was still there.
7. A bee ________________ me on the hand while I was working in the garden.
8. Matthew Webb was the first person who ________________ across the English Channel.
9. Paul ________________ much more for his bike than I spent for mine.
10. Rita threw the ball high in the air. Daniel ________________ it when it came down.
Practice 15. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-5)
Complete the sentences. Write the simple past form of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

bet freeze*  sink  split
choose lead  ✓ spend  upset
fly ring  spin  weep

1. Dr. Perez _________ ten hours in the operating room performing delicate surgery.
2. On my first day at the university, my English teacher ___________ the class to our classroom. We all followed him.
3. Sally and I made a friendly bet. I ___________ her that my grade on the math test would be higher than hers.
4. I ___________ when I heard the tragic news. Everyone else cried too.
5. As she got up, Lina ___________ the table, and everything on top of it fell to the floor.
6. Paul wanted to make a fire, but the logs were too big. So he ___________ them with his axe.
7. When I threw a piece of wood from the shore, it floated on top of the water. When I threw a rock, it ___________ immediately to the bottom of the lake.
8. In 1927, Charles Lindbergh ___________ from New York to Paris in 33 hours and 30 minutes.
9. When the children ___________ around and around, they became dizzy.
10. The telephone ___________ several times and then stopped before I could answer it.
11. William had trouble deciding which sweater he liked best, but he finally ___________ the blue one.
12. The cold temperatures ___________ the water in the pond, so we can go ice-skating today.

Practice 16. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-7 and 2-8)
Complete the sentences. Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Maria (call) ___________ me as soon as she got the good news.
2. Last night at about nine o’clock we (watch) ___________ TV when someone knocked at the door.
3. During the study period in class yesterday, it was hard for me to concentrate because the student next to me (hum) ___________.
4. When Harry (meet) ___________ Jenny, he immediately fell in love with her.
5. Jack was rushing to catch the bus when I (see) ___________ him.

*freeze = stop moving completely.
6. Last Saturday while Sandy (clean) ________ out the attic, she found her grandmother’s wedding dress.

7. It started to rain while I (drive) ________ to work this morning. I didn’t have an umbrella with me. I (get) ________ very wet when I stepped out of my car.

8. When we looked outside during the storm, we saw that the wind (blow) ________ very hard, and the trees (bend) ________ over in the wind.

9. When the teacher came into the room, most of the children (play) ________ together nicely. But over in the corner, Bobby (pull) ________ Annie’s hair. The teacher quickly ran over and pulled Bobby away from Annie.

► Practice 17. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-7 and 2-8)
Write “1” before the action that started first. Write “2” before the action that started second.

1. When the alarm clock rang, I was sleeping. 
   2. The alarm clock rang. 
   1. I was sleeping.

2. When I saw Dr. Jarvis yesterday evening, he was waving at me. 
   2. I saw Dr. Jarvis yesterday evening. 
   1. He was waving at me.

3. When I saw Dr. Jarvis yesterday evening, he waved at me. 
   2. I saw Dr. Jarvis yesterday evening. 
   1. He waved at me.

4. I closed the windows when it was raining. 
   2. I closed the windows. 
   1. It was raining.

5. I was closing the windows when it began to rain.
   2. I was closing the windows. 
   1. It began to rain.

6. The server brought the check when we were eating our desserts. 
   2. The server brought the check. 
   1. We were eating our desserts.

7. When the doorbell rang, Sam went to the door. “Who is it?” he asked. 
   2. The doorbell rang. 
   1. Sam went to the door.

8. Sam was going to the door when the doorbell rang. “I’m coming, Bob,” he said. “I saw you walking up the sidewalk.”
   2. The doorbell rang. 
   1. Sam was already going to the door.
Practice 18. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-7 and 2-8)
Circle the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. We (had / were having) a wonderful dinner last night to celebrate our 25th wedding anniversary.
2. We (had / were having) a wonderful time when suddenly the electric power went out.
3. When Richard (stopped / was stopping) his car suddenly, the groceries (fell / were falling) out of the grocery bags and (spilled / were spilling) all over the floor of the car.
4. When I was a child, my mother always (served / was serving) cookies and milk to my friends and me when they (came / were coming) home with me after school.
5. When we (looked / were looking) in on our baby last night, he (slept / was sleeping). I think he (dreamt / was dreaming) about something nice because he (smiled / was smiling).

6. A: Why is Henry in the hospital?
   B: He (worked / was working) on his car in the garage when the gas tank exploded (exploded / was exploding).
   A: Oh! What (caused / was causing) the explosion?
   B: Henry (dropped / was dropping) a match too near the gas tank.

Practice 19. Simple present, present progressive, simple past, past progressive. (Charts 2-1 → 2-4; 2-5, 2-7, and 2-8)
Underline the verbs. Decide which of the following phrases best describes the action of each sentence. Write the appropriate number.

1. actions occurring now or today
2. habitual / everyday actions
3. actions completed in the past (non-progressive)
4. one action in progress when another occurred

1. 2 I take the bus to school when it rains.
2. 4 I was riding the bus when I heard the news on my radio.
3. 3 I am riding the bus because my friend is repairing my bike.
4. 4 I rode the bus home yesterday because you forgot to pick me up.
5. 4 Dennis was having coffee this morning when a bird crashed into his kitchen window.
6. 6 Dennis had a big breakfast, but his wife didn’t eat anything.
7. 6 Dennis is having a big breakfast this morning.
8. 6 Dennis generally has coffee with breakfast.
9. 9 My mother and I celebrate our birthdays together because they are just a few days apart.
10. 10 We were working when you called on our birthdays last week.
11. 11 One year we celebrated our birthdays apart because my mom was away on business.
Practice 20. Using progressive verbs with *always*. (Chart 2-9)

Complete the dialogues. Write either the simple present or present progressive form of the verbs in the list and the given words in parentheses. If the speaker is expressing annoyance, use the present progressive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>interrupt</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>lose</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>talk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. A: Why won’t you go out with Carlo anymore?
   B: He *(always)* is always complaining about something. It was really irritating for me to hear all those complaints!

2. A: How do you like your new roommate?
   B: I don’t. He *(always)* is playing loudly on his phone. I can’t have any peace and quiet in the room!

3. A: Why don’t you come to our Friday night get-togethers, Al?
   B: I’d like to, but I *(always)* live on the other side of town. It’s too far.

4. A: Why are you so upset with Lisa?
   B: Oh, she *(forever)* loses the towels on the bathroom floor. She never hangs them up.

5. A: What’s the matter now? Why are you angry at me?
   B: Because you *(always)* interrupt me! I never get a chance to finish a sentence!

6. A: Uh-oh. I can’t find the keys to the car.
   B: Again? You *(always)* lose them! You should tie them around your neck on a string.

7. A: What radio station do you listen to when you’re in your car?
   B: I don’t listen to the radio. I *(usually)* play my English lessons in the car. It’s a good way to learn.

8. A: Sorry I can’t join you tonight. I have to prepare for a test tomorrow.
   B: Oh, you *(always)* lose your temper. Can’t you take a break?
Practice 21. Chapter review.
Complete the crossword puzzle. Use the clues under the puzzle. Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Across
2. Shhh. I’m (listen) _______ to the radio.
5. Good idea! I (think) _______ your suggestion is great.
7. What was that? I just (hear) _______ a loud noise.
8. I am (think) _______ about going home early today.

Down
1. We (go) _______ to Mexico last year.
3. I was in my room (study) _______ when you called.
4. I (eat) _______ lunch with friends yesterday.
6. This is fun. I’m (have) _______ a great time here.
7. I only (have) _______ a little money right now.
Practice 1. Preview. (Chapter 3)
Read the graph and the passage.

Tokyo has been increasing in population since 1960. In fact, Tokyo has been the only city that has remained among the world’s three largest cities since 1950. New York had once been the world’s largest city. By the year 2000, it had dropped from the list. São Paulo and Mexico City were once among the largest cities too. Asian cities have been growing, and experts have estimated that in 2015, the three largest cities will be in Asia.

Part I. Look at the passage.

1. Write the three verbs in the present perfect tense.

2. Write the two verbs in the present perfect progressive tense.

3. Write the two verbs in the past perfect tense.

4. Write the one verb in the simple past tense.

5. Write the one verb in the future tense.
Part II. Circle “T” if the statement is true according to the graph and the passage, and “F” if it is false.

1. New York has been the largest city in the world since 1950. T F
2. Tokyo has been the largest city in the world for more than 50 years. T F
3. London had once been one of the three largest cities of the world. T F
4. In 1950, one city in India was one of the top three cities in world population. T F
5. In 2015, two cities in India will be among the three largest cities of the world. T F

> Practice 2. The present perfect. (Chart 3-1)
Complete the sentences using the present perfect tense. Write the correct past participle of the verbs in bold.

1. I often eat Thai food. I have ________________ Thai food three times this week.
2. I sometimes visit my cousins on weekends. I have ________________ them twice this month.
3. I work at the Regional Bank. I have ________________ there for eleven years.
4. I like card games. I have ________________ card games since I was a child.
5. I know Professor Blonsky. She’s my next-door neighbor. I have ________________ her all my life.
6. I wear glasses. I have ________________ glasses since I was ten years old.
7. I take piano lessons. I have ________________ piano lessons for several years.
8. I go to Unisex Haircutters once a month. I have ________________ to the same shop for twenty years.
9. I ride a bicycle for exercise. I have ________________ a bicycle for about twenty years.
10. I am in a bicycle-riding club. I have ________________ a member of this club for fifteen years.

> Practice 3. The present perfect. (Chart 3-1)
Complete each sentence with for or since.

1. I haven’t seen Elvira .
   a. __________ several years.
   b. __________ a long time.
   c. __________ the holiday last year.
   d. __________ she was in college.
   e. __________ more than a month.
   f. __________ she got married.
   g. __________ she became famous.

2. Mehdi and Pat have been friends .
   a. __________ they were in college.
   b. __________ about twenty years.
   c. __________ 1990.
   d. __________ a long time.
   e. __________ they began to work together.
   f. __________ they met.
   g. __________ their entire adult lives.
Practice 4. The present perfect. (Chart 3-1)

Complete the sentences with the present perfect tense of the appropriate verb from the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

1. A: How about more pie?
   B: No, but thanks. I can’t swallow another bite. I (already) have already eaten too much.

2. Our football team is having a great season. They all but one of their games so far this year and will probably win the championship.

3. Jane is expecting a letter from me, but I (not) to her yet.
   Maybe I’ll call her instead.

4. Jack is living in Spain now. His Spanish used to be terrible, but it greatly since he moved there.

5. A: Let’s hurry! I think the movie is beginning!
   B: No, the movie (not) yet. They’re just showing previews of the coming attractions.

6. A: I hear your parents are coming to visit you. Is that why you’re cleaning your apartment?
   B: You guessed it! I (already) the floor, but I still need to dust the furniture. Want to help?

7. A: I understand Tom is a good friend of yours? How long (you) him?
   B: Since we were kids.

8. Everyone makes mistakes in life. I lots of mistakes in my life. The important thing is to learn from one’s mistakes. Right?

9. A: I (never) the subways in New York City. Have you?
   B: I’ve never even been to New York City.

10. A: (you, ever) in the Atlantic Ocean?
    B: No, only the Pacific — when I was in Hawaii. I even went snorkeling when I was there.
Practice 5. The present perfect with since, for, and ago. (Chart 3-1)
Complete the sentences with the correct time expression.

1. Today is ______ the 21st of April ______. I started this job on April 1st. I started this job ______ three weeks ______ ago. I have had this job since ______ April 1st ______. I have had this job for ______ three weeks ______.

2. I made a New Year’s resolution on January 1st: I will get up at 6:00 A.M. every day instead of 7:00 A.M. Today is March 1st, and I have gotten up every morning at 6:00 A.M. I made this resolution ______ ___________________ ago. I have gotten up at 6:00 A.M. since ______ ___________________. I have gotten up at 6:00 A.M. for ______ ___________________.

3. Today is February 28th. Valentine’s Day was on February 14th. I sent my girlfriend some chocolates on Valentine’s Day, and she phoned to say “Thank you.” After that, I did not hear from her again. I have not heard from her for ______ ___________________. I have not heard from her since ______ ___________________.

4. Today is October 27th, 2009. Sue works for Senator Brown. She began to work for him right after she first met him in October, 2000. She began to work for Senator Brown ______ ___________________ ago. Sue has worked for Senator Brown for ______ ___________________. She has worked for Senator Brown since ______ ___________________.

Practice 6. The present perfect with since and for. (Chart 3-1)
Rewrite the sentences using since and for.

1. We know Mrs. Jones. We met her last month.
   a. for ______ We have known Mrs. Jones for one month. ______
   b. since ______

2. They live in New Zealand. They moved there in 2001.
   a. for ______
   b. since ______

3. I like foreign films. I liked them five years ago.
   a. since ______
   b. for ______

4. Jack works for a software company. He started working there last year.
   a. for ______
   b. since ______
Practice 7. *Is* vs. *has*. (Chart 3-2)

In spoken English, *is* and *has* can both be contracted to *'s*. Decide if the verb in the contraction is *is* or *has*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spoken English</th>
<th>Written English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. He’s absent.</td>
<td><em>is</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sue’s been a nurse for a long time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Her brother’s in the hospital.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. He’s not happy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. He’s felt bad this past week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Here is a newspaper. Take one. It’s free.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The manager’s taken some money.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mira’s taking a break.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mira’s taken a break.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 8. The present perfect and the simple past. (Chart 3-3)

Circle the correct verb.

1. Botswana (*became / has become*) an independent country in 1966.
2. Botswana (*was / has been*) an independent country for more than 40 years.
3. It’s raining. It (*was / has been*) raining since noon today.
4. It’s raining. It’s the rainy season. It (*rained / has rained*) every day since the first of the month.
5. I grew up in Scotland until I moved to Argentina with my family. I was 12 then. Now I am 21. I (*lived / have lived*) in Scotland for 12 years.
6. Now I live in Argentina. I (*lived / have lived*) in Argentina for 9 years.
7. Claude and Pierre worked together at the French restaurant for 30 years. They retired three years ago. They (*worked / have worked*) together for 30 years.
8. Claude and Pierre (*didn’t work / haven’t worked*) for the last three years.

Practice 9. The present perfect and the simple past. (Chart 3-3)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. (*know*) I ______ knew ______ Tim when he was a child, but I haven’t seen him for many years. I ______ have known ______ Larry, my best friend, for more than 20 years.
2. (*agree*) The company and the union finally ___________ on salary raises two days ago. Since then, they ___________ on everything, and the rest of the negotiations have gone smoothly.
3. (*take*) Mark ___________ a trip to Asia last October. He ___________ many trips to Asia since he started his own import-export business.
4. (*play*) Ivan ___________ the violin at several concerts with the London Symphony since 1990. Last year he ___________ Beethoven’s violin concerto at one of the concerts.
5. (write) When she was in college, Julia ________________ emails to her parents a few times a week. Now she has a job and is living in Chicago. In the last six months she ________________ only three emails to her parents.

6. (send) Our university ________________ 121 students to study in other countries last year. In total, we ________________ 864 students abroad over the last ten years.

7. (fly) Masaru is a pilot for JAL. He ________________ nearly 8 million miles during the last 22 years. Last year he ________________ 380,000 miles.

8. (oversleep) Mark missed his physics examination this morning because he ________________. He ________________ a lot since the beginning of the semester. He’d better buy a new alarm clock.

► Practice 10. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive.  
(Charts 3-1 and 3-4)

Circle the correct verb.

1. Sam and Judy began talking on the phone at 9:00 P.M. Now it is 11:00 P.M., and they are still talking. They (have talked / have been talking) for two hours.

2. Sam and Judy speak to each other on the phone several times a day. They are speaking on the phone now, and they might speak again later. Today they (have spoken / have been speaking) to each other on the phone at least seven times.

3. England (has won / has been winning) the World Cup only once since 1930.

4. How long (have you sat / have you been sitting) here in the sun? You look like burnt toast! You’d better get out of the sun.

5. The chair in the president’s office is very special. Sixteen presidents (have sat / have been sitting) in it.

► Practice 11. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive.  
(Charts 3-1 and 3-4)

Complete the sentences. Write either the present perfect or the present perfect progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. The children are at the park. They (play) ________________ ball for the last two hours, but they don’t seem tired yet.

2. Jim (play) ________________ soccer only a couple of times, so he’s not very good at it. He’s much better at tennis.

3. Karl (raise) ________________ three children to adulthood. Now they are educated and working in productive careers.

4. Sally is falling asleep at her desk. Dr. Wu (lecture) ________________ since ten o’clock, and it’s now past noon.

5. Jenna is a law student. Ever since she enrolled in law school, she (miss, never) ________________ a class due to illness.
6. Tim  (sleep) ____________________ in the downstairs bedroom only once. He usually sleeps upstairs in the bedroom he shares with his brother.

7. A: How much longer until we arrive at the Singapore airport?
   B: Let me see. It’s about 9:15. We  (fly) ____________________ for almost six hours. We should be there in another couple of hours.

8. A: Janice  (sleep) ____________________ for almost eleven hours. Don’t you think we should wake her up?
   B: I guess we probably should.

9. A: Is the rescue crew still looking for survivors of the plane crash?
   B: Yes, they  (search) ____________________ the area for hours, but they haven’t found anybody else. They’ll keep searching until nightfall.

► Practice 12. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive.
(Charts 3-1 and 3-4)

Write the present perfect or the present perfect progressive of the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cook</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>✓ understand</th>
<th>want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Bill and Mike have never gotten along with each other. I  (never) have never understood why they agreed to be roommates in the first place.

2. Al just introduced me to his sister. Now I  ______________ everyone in his family.

3. Ms. Erickson is a salesclerk in a large department store. It’s almost closing time. Her feet hurt, as they do every day, because she  ______________ at the sales counter since eight o’clock this morning.

4. My uncle  ______________ the outside of his house for three weeks, and he’s still not finished. He’s being very careful. He wants his house to look just right.

5. I’m surprised that George apologized for what he said. As far as I can remember, I  ______________ him say “I’m sorry” before.

6. The Smiths are presently in Tunisia. They  ______________ throughout North Africa since the middle of May. They’ll return home in another month.

7. My brother’s daughter  ______________ nearly six inches (15 cm) since I last saw her two years ago.

8. I have always  ______________ to travel abroad. Now the company I work for is going to send me on a sales trip to several countries.
9. A: How much money do you have to buy clothes with?
   B: Sixty dollars.
   A: I thought you had a hundred dollars.
   B: I did. But I (already) ________________ forty.

10. A: Isn’t the rice ready to eat yet? It __________________ for over an hour, hasn’t it? Are you sure you know how to cook rice?
    B: Of course I do! I’ve been watching the chefs on the cooking shows for years!

**Practice 13. Simple past vs. the present perfect progressive.** (Charts 2-7 and 3-4)

Look at the information about Janet and write sentences with the given words. Use the simple past or present perfect progressive as necessary.

In 1998, Janet received her English teaching degree. Here is what happened to Janet after that:

1999 | 2000 | 2001 | now

- move to Canada
- join Lingua Schools as a teaching assistant
- become a teacher
- be a teacher

1. (move to Canada) ________________
   In 1999, Janet moved to Canada.

2. (join Lingua Schools) ________________

3. (live in Canada) ________________

4. (be a teacher) ________________

5. (teach her own class) ________________

6. (work at Lingua Schools) ________________

**Practice 14. The simple past and the past perfect.** (Charts 2-6 and 3-5)

Underline each event. Write “1” over the event that happened first and “2” over the event that happened second.

1. We had driven only two miles when we got a flat tire.

2. Alan told me that he had written a book.

3. By the time we arrived at the airport, the plane had already left.

4. The dog had eaten the entire roast before anyone knew it was gone.

5. We didn’t stand in line for tickets because we had already bought them by mail.

6. Carl played the guitar so well because he had studied with a famous guitarist.

7. By the time the movie ended, everyone had fallen asleep.

8. After the professor had corrected the third paper, he was exhausted from writing comments on the students’ papers.

9. I had just placed an order at the store for a new camera when I found a cheaper one online.
Practice 15. The past perfect. (Chart 3-5)
Complete the sentences. Write the correct form of the past perfect.

1. Yesterday, John got 100% on a math exam. Before yesterday, he \((\text{get, not})\) __________________________ 100%.

2. Last week, Sonya met her fiancé’s parents. Before that, she \((\text{meet, not})\) __________________________ them.

3. Today, Dan used a camera phone. Before today, he \((\text{take, not})\) __________________________ pictures with one.

4. A few days ago, Bakir cooked a frozen dinner. Prior to that, he \((\text{eat, not})\) __________________________ a frozen dinner.

5. Last week, I had to have a tooth pulled. Until then, I \((\text{have, not})\) __________________________ any problems with my teeth.

Practice 16. The simple past and the past perfect. (Charts 2-7 and 3-5)
Complete the sentences with the simple past or past perfect form of the verb. Write the letter of the correct verb.

1. By the time Jason arrived to help, we \(\underline{\text{a. already finished}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had already finished}}\) moving everything.

2. The apartment was hot when I got home, so I \(\underline{\text{a. turned on}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had turned on}}\) the air conditioner.

3. The farmer’s barn caught on fire some time during the night. By the time the firefighters arrived, the building \(\underline{\text{a. burned}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had burned}}\) to the ground. It was a total loss.

4. The dinner I had at that restaurant was expensive! Until then, I \(\underline{\text{a. never spent}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had never spent}}\) so much on one meal.

5. When I saw that Mike was having trouble, I \(\underline{\text{a. helped}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had helped}}\) him. He was very appreciative.

6. My wife and I went to Disneyland when we visited Los Angeles last spring. Prior to that time, we \(\underline{\text{a. never visited}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had never visited}}\) such a big amusement park. It was a lot of fun.

7. Last year I experienced how tedious long plane trips can be. I \(\underline{\text{a. traveled}} \quad \underline{\text{b. had traveled}}\) on airplanes for fairly long distances before, but never as long as when I went to Australia in June.

Practice 17. The simple past and the past perfect. (Charts 2-6 and 3-5)
Write the simple past or the past perfect of the verbs in parentheses. In some cases, both forms are correct.

1. Yesterday I \((\text{go})\) \(\underline{\text{went}}\) to my daughter’s dance recital. I
\((\text{be, never})\) \(\underline{\text{had never been}}\) to a dance recital before. I
\((\text{take, not})\) \(\underline{\text{didn’t take}}\) dancing lessons when I \((\text{be})\) \(\underline{\text{was}}\) a child.
1. Last night, I **ate** four servings of food at the “all-you-can-eat” special dinner at The Village Restaurant. Until that time, I **never** ate so much in one meal. I've felt miserable all day today.

2. A: I **saw** you in the school play last night. You **did** a terrific acting job. (you, act, ever) **did** in a play before this one?
   B: Yes. I **started** acting when I was in elementary school.

> **Practice 18. The present perfect progressive and the past perfect progressive.** (Charts 3-4 and 3-7)

Circle the correct verb.

1. I’m studying English. I **have been studying / had been studying** English for several years now.

2. I came from Malaysia to live in New Zealand in 2002. I **have been studying / had been studying** English for three years before that.

3. Shhh! I want to see the end of this TV show! I **have been waiting / had been waiting** to find out who the murderer is.

4. Laura finally called me last night. I hadn’t heard from her in four months. I **have been waiting / had been waiting** for that call for a long time!

5. Before Ada became a veterinarian last year, she **has been working / had been working** as a veterinarian’s assistant while she was in school.

6. Li is going to quit his job. He **has been working / had been working** too many hours for too little money in this job. He is probably going to hand in his resignation next week.

> **Practice 19. The present perfect progressive and the past perfect progressive.** (Charts 3-4 and 3-7)

Complete the sentences. Write the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Anna **listened / had been listening** to loud rock music when her friends arrived, but she turned it off so all of them could study together. When they finished, she turned it back on, and now they **danced / have been dancing** and **sang / singing** for two hours.

2. We **waited / had been waiting** for Ali for the last two hours, but he still hasn’t arrived.

3. We **waited / had been waiting** for Ali for over three hours before he finally arrived yesterday.

4. Oscar **trained / had been training** for the Olympics for the last three years and wants to make the national team next year.

5. The marathon runner **ran / had been running** for almost two hours when he collapsed to the pavement. He received immediate medical attention.
6. Tom had a hard time finding a job. He (try) _______ to get a new job for six months before he finally found a position at a local community college. Now he has a two-year contract. He (teach) _______ there for only a few weeks, but he likes his new job very much.

7. Dr. Sato (perform) _______ specialized surgery since she began working at the university hospital ten years ago. She still does many operations each year, but now her work is so famous that she travels all over the world lecturing to other surgeons on her technique.

8. The Acme Construction Company is having problems. They (work) _______ _______ on a new office building for the last seven months, and everything seems to be going wrong. Earlier, they stopped work on a smaller structure that they (build) _______ _______ so they could take on this job. Now both projects are in jeopardy.

► Practice 20. Chapter review.
There is one verb error in each item. Correct the error.

1. Citizen Kane is a great classic movie. I’ve been seeing it ten times.

2. War and Peace is a long novel. I’m reading it for two months, and I am still not finished with it!

3. Our guests have left yesterday.

4. We were studying all night. Let’s take a break now.

5. Let’s not leave yet. I’d been having such a wonderful time at this party.

6. By the time I got home, the rest of the family has eaten.

7. I was late for my nine o’clock class, so I had run all the way from my dorm to my class.

8. Mrs. Wang isn’t in the hospital anymore. She had left early this morning.

9. I was born on February 29th in 1960, a leap year. February 29th occurs only once every four years. So by the time the 21st century began, I celebrated only ten birthdays!

10. A: Are you still on the telephone? Are you holding on for someone?

   B: Yes, I am. I am still holding for the technical help department. I am holding for more than half an hour!
Practice 1. Simple future: will. (Chart 4-1)
Correct the errors with will. Two sentences have no errors.

1. Harry’s birthday is tomorrow. He wills be fifty years old.
2. The store will stays open tomorrow night until 11:00 P.M.
3. Seventeen people will to be at the marketing meeting.
4. The new senator will make her first speech in Congress tomorrow.
5. Our teacher don’t will be here tomorrow.
6. Will you call me tonight?

Practice 2. Simple future: be going to. (Chart 4-1)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of be going to + the verb in parentheses.

1. Ben (visit) ___________________________ his roommate’s home for the holidays.
2. Delfina is a great tennis player. She (win) ___________________________ the tennis tournament.
3. Which history course (you, take) ___________________________ next semester?
4. The weather forecasters are saying it (not, be) ___________________________ a cold winter this year.
5. What about Marta and Bob? (they, join) ___________________________ us Saturday night?
6. I (not, lie) ___________________________ to you. I (tell) ___________________________ you the truth.
Practice 3. Simple future: will and be going to. (Chart 4-1)

Complete the sentences in two ways. Write sentence a. with will and sentence b. with be going to. Use the correct verb from the list.

arrive  buy  end  rain  take  bloom  set

1. a. The sun rose at 5:46 this morning, and it __________________ at 6:52 tonight.
   b. The sun rose at 5:46 this morning, and it __________________ at 6:52 tonight.

2. a. The flight left Bangkok at noon today, and it __________________ in Mumbai at midnight.
   b. The flight left Bangkok at noon today, and it __________________ in Mumbai at midnight.

3. a. There are dark clouds over the mountain. It __________________ later today.
   b. There are dark clouds over the mountain. It __________________ later today.

4. a. We planted the flowers in March, and they __________________ in June.
   b. We planted the flowers in March, and they __________________ in June.

5. a. Our semester began in January, and it __________________ in May.
   b. Our semester began in January, and it __________________ in May.

6. a. When ______________ you ______________ a new computer?
   b. When ______________ you ______________ a new computer?

7. a. I ______________ not ______________ a vacation this year. Maybe next year.
   b. I ______________ not ______________ a vacation this year. Maybe next year.

Practice 4. Will vs. be going to. (Chart 4-2)

Read the sentences. Then check the box that describes the sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prediction</th>
<th>Prior Plan</th>
<th>Willingness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I’ll help you change your tire, Ms. Olsen.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. It’s going to rain tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. It will rain tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Louise is going to help us next week.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Wait. I’ll help you carry your luggage.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. We’re going to see a movie tonight.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The moon will rise at 8:10 this evening.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 5. Will vs. be going to. (Chart 4-2)
Circle a. if the meaning describes a prior plan. Circle b. if the meaning describes a decision of the moment.

1. I can’t have lunch with you on Friday because I’m going to give a speech at noon to the Chamber of Commerce.
   a. prior plan                       b. decision of the moment
2. My computer just crashed. I’ll call the technical department to fix it right now.
   a. prior plan                       b. decision of the moment
3. It’s very icy and slippery on my street this morning. I’ll go out and clear the sidewalk.
   a. prior plan                       b. decision of the moment
4. Roberto and Sandy are going to get married next Saturday.
   a. prior plan                       b. decision of the moment
5. Jimmy is going to have a tonsillectomy on Monday. The doctors are going to take out his tonsils because they are infected.
   a. prior plan                       b. decision of the moment
6. Look at the price of the airport limo. It’s too much money. We’ll go to the airport by bus.
   a. prior plan                       b. decision of the moment

Practice 6. Will vs. be going to. (Chart 4-2)
Circle the correct response(s) to the questions or statements. More than one response may be correct.

1. A: What about Dominick? Doesn’t he want to come with us?
   B: Nobody knows! (I’ll call him / I’m going to call him) tonight to find out.
2. A: Jessica practices her violin for ten hours a day!
   B: I know! (She’s going to be / She’ll be) a famous violinist some day.
3. A: How about dinner and a movie on Friday?
   B: Sorry, I can’t. (I’m going to fly / I’ll fly) to London on Friday evening.
4. A: Do you and Paul have tickets for any of the hockey games this season?
   B: Yes, we do. (We’re going to the game / We’ll go to the game) tomorrow night.
5. A: I can’t open this jar!
   B: Give it to me. (I’m going to open it / I’ll open it) for you.
6. A: So you’re leaving to go to another university, Professor Hu!
   B: Yes, (I’m going to teach / I will teach) at Emory University. They’ve made me a great offer.

Practice 7. Will vs. be going to. (Chart 4-2)
Complete the sentences with will or be going to as appropriate. Include any words in parentheses.

1. A: Excuse me, waiter! This isn’t what I ordered. I ordered a chicken salad.
   B: Sorry, sir. I will take this back and get your salad.
   A: Thank you.
2. A: Would you like to join Linda and me tomorrow? We are going to visit the natural history museum.
   B: Sure. I’ve never been there.
3. A: Where’s the mustard?
   B: In the refrigerator, on the middle shelf.
   A: I’ve looked there.
   B: OK. I ___________ get it for you.

4. A: What’s all this paint for? (you) ___________ paint your house?
   B: No, we ___________ paint my mother’s house.

5. A: Paul, do you want to go to the mall with me?
   B: No thanks. I already have plans. I ___________ wash my car and then clean out the basement.

6. A: Someone needs to take this report to Mr. Day’s office right away, but I can’t leave my desk.
   B: I ___________ do it.
   A: Thanks.

7. A: Who’ll pick up Uncle Jack at the airport?
   B: I ___________.

8. A: Why is Carlos wearing a suit and tie? He usually wears jeans to class.
   B: He ___________ give a speech at the faculty lunch today.

9. A: Let me ask you something, Toshi.
   B: Sure. What’s up, Andy?
   A: I ___________ interview for a job this afternoon, and . . . well, do I need a tie? I don’t have a decent one!
   B: Yes, you need a tie. I ___________ lend you one of mine.
   A: Thanks.

10. A: You’re going out?
    B: Yes. I ___________ stop at the grocery store for some fruit and some rice. Can you think of anything else we need?
    A: How about getting some chocolate-covered nuts?
    B: Good idea! I ___________ get some of those too.

▶ Practice 8. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)
Underline the time clause in each sentence and circle its verb.

1. I’ll see you when you (return) from your trip.
2. After the rain stops, we’ll go out.
3. We’re going to keep driving until it gets dark.
4. As soon as the baby is born, we’ll let you know!
5. When he retires, Barry is going to take painting classes.
6. You will be able to vote when you are eighteen years old.
7. I’m going to go to bed as soon as the late news is over.
8. The students will return to campus when the new semester begins.

**Practice 9. Expressing the future in time clauses.** (Chart 4-3)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb.

1. Grandma and Grandpa are planning to travel often when they [retire] ________________.
2. I’ll wake up tomorrow morning when the alarm clock [ring] ________________.
3. The students will relax after they [finish] ________________ their final exams.
4. You’ll feel a lot better after you [take] ________________ this medicine.
5. The residents of the coastal areas will prepare for the hurricane before it [arrive] ________________.
6. Mark will work in a law firm as soon as he [graduate] ________________ from law school.
7. We’ll have dinner as soon as the rice [be] ________________ ready.
8. I’ll tell you as soon I [hear] ________________ any news.
9. Before we [leave] ________________ on vacation, we’ll stop our newspaper delivery.
10. We’ll start our newspaper delivery again after we [get] ________________ back from vacation.

**Practice 10. Expressing the future in time clauses.** (Chart 4-3)
Write the letter of the clause from either Column A or Column B to complete the sentences correctly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>When I see Irina later, _<strong>b</strong>.</td>
<td>a. I give her the news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>I’ll call you tomorrow ____.</td>
<td>a. after I talk to Rita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>As soon as I hear from Tom, _____.</td>
<td>a. I call you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>We’ll all be very happy ____.</td>
<td>a. when you get here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>I’ll save my files ____.</td>
<td>a. before I shut down my computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>The passengers will get off the plane ____.</td>
<td>a. after it lands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>My cell phone won’t work ____.</td>
<td>a. until I unlock it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>After the party is over tonight, _____.</td>
<td>a. we call a taxi to go home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>I’m not going to pay for the refrigerator ____.</td>
<td>a. until they fix the broken door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>I’ll take this new medicine ____.</td>
<td>a. before I go to bed tonight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 11. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)

Complete the sentences with the following: the simple present, the future with will, or the future with a form of be going to. In some sentences, both will and be going to may be possible.

1. The strike has been going on for over two months now. The strikers
   (return, not) __________ will not / are not going to return _______ to work until they (get) __________ a raise and the benefits they are demanding.

2. When Rita (get) ______________ her driver’s license next week, she (be) ______________ ______________ able to drive to school every day.

3. A: Mr. Jackson called. He’ll be here at the garage to pick up his car in a few minutes. He (be, not) ______________ very happy when he (learn) ______________ about the bill for repairs on his car. Do you want to talk to him when he (come) ______________ in and (ask) ______________ about his bill?
   B: Not especially, but I will.

4. After Ali (return) ______________ to his country next month, he (start) ______________ ______________ working at the Ministry of Agriculture.

5. According to the newspaper, the Department of Transportation (build) ______________ ______________ a new four-lane highway into the city next year. In my opinion, it (be) ______________ ______________ obsolete before they (complete) ______________ it.
   It seems to me that a six-lane highway is needed to handle the heavy traffic.

6. A: Have you heard any news about Barbara since her car accident?
   B: No, I’ve heard nothing. As soon as I (hear) ______________ something, I (let) ______________ you know.

7. A: I see you’re reading The Silk Road.
   B: I (lend) ______________ it to you as soon as I (finish) ______________ it.
   A: Really? Thanks!

8. A: Relax. The plumber is on his way. He (be) ______________ here before long to fix that leak in the pipe under the kitchen sink.
   B: Oh, good. I (be) ______________ happy to get that pipe fixed.
Practice 12. Using the present progressive and the simple present to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Complete the second sentence with a form of the present progressive to express the same meaning as the first sentence.

1. I’m going to see the dentist tomorrow.
   I __________________ the dentist tomorrow.

2. She will have a baby in July.
   She ______________________ _______ a baby in July.

3. The new store will open in September.
   The new store ______________________ in September.

4. The office staff is going to work late tonight.
   The office staff ______________________ late tonight.

5. We’re going to have a graduation party for Miriam on Saturday.
   We ______________________ a graduation party for Miriam on Saturday.

6. Shelley and Sue are going to attend the conference in New York next April.
   Shelley and Sue ______________________ the conference in New York next April.

Practice 13. Using the present progressive and the simple present to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Circle the letter of the phrases which can complete the sentences correctly. More than one completion may be correct for each sentence.

1. We have tickets for a puppet show today. The show ____.
   a. starts at 2:00 P.M.
   b. is starting at 2:00 P.M.
   c. is going to start at 2:00 P.M.

2. Look at those black clouds! Pretty soon it ____.
   a. rains
   b. is raining
   c. is going to rain

3. This afternoon I have a lunch date with a friend. After that, we ____.
   a. are going to visit her aunt
   b. are visiting her aunt
   c. visit her aunt

4. I’m hurrying to catch a plane. It ____!
   a. leaves in an hour
   b. is going to leave in an hour
   c. is leaving in an hour

5. Sorry I can’t meet with you tomorrow, Helen. I have an important appointment. ____ with the president at noon.
   a. I’m meeting
   b. I’m going to meet
   c. I will meet
6. A: Nobody has volunteered to bring the drinks for the festival Saturday night. Olga, how about you? Harry, how about you? Please . . . can somebody help us out?

   B: OK, OK. ____ it.
      a. I'll do
      b. I'm doing
      c. I'm going to do

**Practice 14. Using the present progressive to express future time.** (Chart 4-4)
Change the verbs in italics to a form of the present progressive in the sentences that express a planned event or definite intention. For the sentences where no change is possible, write “NC.”

1. A: The package has to be there tomorrow. Will it get there in time?
   B: Don’t worry. I'm going to send it by express mail.
      ____ I'm sending it by express mail.

2. A: What’s the weather report?
   B: It is going to rain tomorrow morning.
      ____ NC

3. A: Would you like to have dinner with me tonight, Pat?
   B: Thanks, but I'm going to have dinner with my sister and her husband.

4. A: What are you going to do this evening?
   B: I'm going to study at the library.

5. A: Oh, I spilled my coffee on the floor.
   B: I'll help you clean it up.

6. A: Did you know that Kathy and Paul are engaged?
   B: No. That’s great! When are they going to get married?
   A: In September.

7. A: You're going to laugh when I tell you what happened to me today!
   B: Oh? What happened?

8. A: Have you lived here long?
   B: No, not long. Only about a year. But we're going to move again next month. My father's company has reassigned him to Atlanta, Georgia.
9. A: I tried to register for Professor Stein’s economics class, but it’s full. *Is he going to teach it again next semester?*
B: I think so.

10. A: Son, *I’m not going to send* you any money this month. You’re spending far too much. You need to learn to be more careful.

B: But Dad . . . !
A: Just do the best you can. *I am going to come* to visit you next month. We can talk about it then.

---

**Practice 15. Future progressive.** *(Chart 4-5)*

Complete the sentences. Write the future progressive form of the verbs in **bold**.

1. Every night at 7:00 I **sit** down to **have** dinner. Tomorrow at 7:10, I **will be sitting** to **have** dinner.

2. We **fly** to Italy tomorrow night. Tomorrow night at this time, we **will be flying** over the Atlantic Ocean.

3. On Sunday mornings, I **sleep** late. Next Sunday morning at 9:00 A.M., I **will be sleeping** early.

4. It always **snows** in December in Moscow. We’re going to Moscow in December. At that time, it **will be snowing** in Moscow.

5. Ellen always **watches** late movies on TV. I’m sure that tonight she **will be watching** an old movie on TV around 2:00 A.M.

---

**Practice 16. Future progressive.** *(Charts 4-3 and 4-5)*

Complete the sentences with the future progressive or the simple present form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Just relax, Antoine. As soon as your sprained ankle (**heal**) **heals**, you can play soccer again. At this time next week, you (**play**) **will be playing** soccer again.

2. I’ll meet you at the airport tomorrow. After you (**clear**) **clear** customs, look for me just outside the gate. I (**stand**) **is standing** right by the door.

3. Ingrid and Ruth won’t be at this school when classes (**start**) **start** next semester. They (**attend**) **will attend** a new school in Taiwan.

4. Please come and visit today when you (**have**) **have** a chance. I (**shop**) **will be shopping** from 1:00 to about 3:00, but I’ll be home after that.

5. I won’t be here next week, students. I (**attend**) **will attend** a seminar in Los Angeles. Ms. Gomez will be the substitute teacher. When I (**return**) **will return**, I will expect you to be ready for the midterm examination.
Practice 17. Future perfect and future perfect progressive. (Chart 4-6)
Complete the sentences with the future perfect or the future perfect progressive form of the verbs in the list. Include any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

drink  land  ride  save  
fly  listen  rise  teach

1. By the time I get up tomorrow morning, the sun (already) _____________ will already have risen ____________.
2. This is a long trip! By the time we get to Miami, we _________________ on this bus for over 15 hours.
3. We’re going to be late meeting my brother’s plane. By the time we get to the airport, it (already) _________________.
4. He’s never going to stop talking. In 15 more minutes, we _________________ to him lecture for three solid hours. I don’t even know what he’s saying anymore.
5. I drink too much coffee. I have already had two cups this morning, and I will probably have two more cups. This means that before lunch, I _________________ four cups of coffee.
6. This is the longest flight I have ever taken. By the time we get to New Zealand, we ________________ for 13 hours. I’m going to be exhausted.
7. Douglas has been putting some money away every month to prepare for his trip to South America next year. By the end of this year, he _________________.
8. Can you believe it? According to our grammar teacher, by the end of this semester, she ________________ more than 3,000 students from 42 different countries. She has been teaching for nearly 20 years — and she still loves it!

Practice 18. Chapter review.
These sentences describe typical events in a day in the life of a woman named Kathy. The sentences are in the past, but all of these things will happen in Kathy’s life tomorrow. Change all of the sentences to the future. Use will.

1. When Kathy got up yesterday morning, the sun was shining. The same thing will happen tomorrow. When Kathy ______gets________ up tomorrow morning, the sun ____________ will be shining _____________.
2. Yesterday she brushed her teeth and showered. Then she made a light breakfast. Tomorrow will be the same. She _________________ her teeth and _________________. Then she _________________ a light breakfast.
3. After she ate breakfast yesterday, she got ready to go to work. And tomorrow after she _________________ breakfast, she _________________ ready to go to work.
4. By the time she got to work yesterday, she had drunk three cups of coffee. Tomorrow she’ll do the same. By the time she __________ to work, she ______________ three cups of coffee.

5. Between 8:00 and 9:00, Kathy answered her email and planned her day. She has the same plans for tomorrow. Between 8:00 and 9:00, Kathy ____________ her e-mail and ____________ her day.

6. By 10:00 yesterday, she had called three new clients. Tomorrow, by 10:00, she ________________ three new clients.

7. At 11:00 yesterday, she was attending a staff meeting. She plans to do the same tomorrow. At 11:00, she ______________ a staff meeting.

8. She went to lunch at noon and had a sandwich and a bowl of soup. Tomorrow she ______________ to lunch at noon and ______________ a sandwich and a bowl of soup.

9. After she finished eating, she took a short walk in the park before she returned to the office. Tomorrow she’ll do the same. After she ______________ eating, she ______________ a walk in the park before she ______________ to the office.

10. She worked at her desk until she went to another meeting in the middle of the afternoon. And tomorrow she ______________ at her desk until she ______________ to another meeting in the middle of the afternoon.

11. By the time she left the office, she had attended three meetings. Tomorrow she’ll follow the same schedule. By the time she ______________ the office, she ______________ three meetings.

12. When Kathy got home, her children were playing in the yard, and Grandma was watching them from the porch. Tomorrow will be the same. When Kathy ______________ home, her children ______________ in the yard, and Grandma ______________ them from the porch.

13. The children had been playing since 3:00 in the afternoon. And tomorrow they ______________ since 3:00 in the afternoon.

14. The family had dinner together and talked about their day. Tomorrow will be the same. They ______________ dinner together, and they ______________ about their day.

15. They watched television for a while, and then Kathy and her husband put the kids to bed. The same thing will happen tomorrow. They ______________ television for a while, and then they ______________ the kids to bed.

16. By the time Kathy went to bed yesterday, she had had a full day and was ready for sleep. Tomorrow will be the same for Kathy. By the time she ______________ to bed, she ______________ a full day and ______________ ready for sleep.
Chapter 5
Review of Verb Tenses

Practice 1. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Circle the correct verb.

1. My grandfather (has never flown / had never flown) in an airplane, and he has no intention of ever doing so.

2. Jane isn’t here yet. I (am waiting / have been waiting) for her since noon, but she still (didn’t arrive / hasn’t arrived).

3. In all the world, there (have been / are) only 14 mountains that (reach / are reaching) above 8,000 meters (26,247 feet).

4. When my parents were teenagers, people (hadn’t owned / didn’t own) computers. By the time I was a teenager, I (was owning / had owned) a computer for several years.

5. Right now we (are having / have) a heat wave. The temperature (is / has been) in the upper 90s Fahrenheit (30s Celsius) for the last six days.

6. I have a long trip ahead of me tomorrow, so I think I’d better go to bed. Let me say good-bye now because I won’t see you in the morning. I (will leave / will have left) by the time you (get / will get) up.

7. Last night I (went / was going) to a party. When I (get / got) there, the room was full of people. Some of them (danced / were dancing) and others (talked / were talking). One young woman (was standing / has been standing) by herself. I (have never met / had never met) her before, so I (introduced / was introducing) myself to her.

8. About three o’clock yesterday afternoon, Jessica (was sitting / had sat) in bed reading a book. Suddenly, she (heard / was hearing) a loud noise and (got / was getting) up to see what it was. She (has looked / looked) out the window. A truck (has just backed / had just backed) into her new car!

Practice 2. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Circle the correct verb.

1. Next month I have a week’s vacation. I (take / am taking) a trip. I (leave / left) on Saturday, July 2nd. First, I (’ve gone / ’m going) to Madison, Wisconsin, to visit my brother. After I (will leave / leave) Madison, I (am going to go / have gone) to Chicago to see a friend who (is studying / will have studied) at the university there. She (has lived / lives) in Chicago for three years, so she (knows / knew) her way around the city. She (has promised / will be promising) to take me to many interesting places. I (had never been / have never been) to Chicago, so I (am looking / have looked) forward to going there.
2. The weather is beautiful today, but until this morning, it (has been raining / had been raining) steadily for almost a week. A week ago, the temperature suddenly (was dropping / dropped), and after that we had bad weather for a week. Now the weather forecaster says that tomorrow it (is going to be / is) very warm. The weather certainly (was changing / changes) quickly here. I never know what to expect. Who knows? When I (wake / will wake) up tomorrow morning, maybe it (snows / will be snowing).

► Practice 3. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

On June 20th, I returned home. I (be) _______ away from home for two years. My family (meet) _______ me at the airport with kisses and tears. They (miss) _______ me as much as I had missed them. I (be) _______ very happy to see them again.

When I (get) _______ the chance, I (take) _______ a long look at them. My little brother (be) _______ no longer little. He (grow) _______ a lot. He (be) _______ almost as tall as my father. My little sister (wear) _______ a green dress. She (change) _______ quite a bit too, but she (be, still) _______ mischievous and inquisitive. She (ask) _______ me a thousand questions a minute, or so it seemed.

My father (gain) _______ some weight, and his hair (turn) _______ a little grayer, but otherwise he was just as I had remembered him. My mother (look) _______ a little older, but not much. The wrinkles on her face (be) _______ smile wrinkles.

► Practice 4. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

On June 20th, I will return home. I (be) _______ away from home for two years by that time. My family (meet) _______ me at the airport with kisses and tears. They (miss) _______ me as much as I have missed them. I (be) _______ very happy to see them again.

When I (get) _______ a chance, I (take) _______ a long look at them. My little brother (be, no longer) _______ so little. He (grow) _______ at least a foot. He (be) _______ almost as tall as my father. My little sister (wear, probably) _______ a green dress because that’s her favorite color. She (change) _______ quite a bit too, but she
mischievous and inquisitive. She (ask) me a thousand questions a minute, or so it will seem.

My father (gain, probably) some weight, and his hair (turn) a little grayer, but otherwise he will be just as I remember him. My mother (look) a little older, but not much. The wrinkles on her face (be) smile wrinkles.

Practice 5. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Complete the sentences in each part with verbs from the list. Use any appropriate tense.

Part I.

be break do happen have play recuperate see

A: Where’s Sonia? I (not) her lately.
B: She’s at home from an accident.
A: An accident? What to her?
B: She her arm while she volleyball last week in the game against South City College.
A: Gosh, that’s too bad. I’m sorry to hear that. How she ?
B: OK, I guess. Actually, she a cast on her arm, but she is not in any pain. I think that she back in class next week.
A: Hello. Computer Data Magazine. How can I help you?

B: Well, I _________ in my money for a subscription to your magazine, Computer Data, two months ago, but to date I (not) _________ any issues.

A: I’m sorry to hear that. Unfortunately, one of our main computers (not) _________ at the moment. However, our computer specialists _________ very hard to fix it at the present time. Your new subscription _________ as soon as possible.

B: Thank you.

Practice 6. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

A: Have you ever heard of the Socratic method?

B: No, I haven’t. What is it?

A: It’s a method of teaching that Socrates (use) _________ in ancient Greece more than two thousand years ago. Some teachers still (use) _________ this kind of method today.

B: Really? What (it, consist) _________ of today? How (teachers, use) _________ this method now?

A: Well, the teacher (not, give) _________ any information to the students. She or he just asks a series of questions, but (not, make) _________ any statements. The teacher (know) _________ what the important questions to ask the students are. Then the students have to think about the answers.

B: That (sound) _________ good to me! When I was in high school, I had a lot of teachers who just (talk) _________ too much. Sometimes the students even (fall) _________ asleep in class!

A: I (agree) _________ with you. You will learn faster after you (think) _________ about something than if you just have to remember facts.
B: That’s true. I (take) 13 a philosophy class now with a wonderful professor. She (always, ask) 14 questions! I guess she (use) 15 the Socratic method for the whole semester, and I (not, realize) 16 it!

► Practice 7. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Nora is at the hospital because her cousin is having surgery today. The surgery began at 7:00 and is expected to end at noon. Nora arrived at the hospital at 8:00 A.M.
   a. It’s 8:10 A.M. Nora (wait) 17 in the waiting room.
   b. It is now 9:00 A.M. Nora (wait) 18 for one hour.
   c. By 11:00, the surgery will still be going on, and Nora will still be waiting in the waiting room. At that time, Nora (wait) 19 in the waiting room for three hours.

2. Hundreds of passengers are in the security line at the airport. Jaime entered the security line at 8:00 A.M.
   a. It’s 8:15 A.M. Jaime (stand) 20 in the security line at the airport.
   b. It is now 9:00 A.M. Jaime (stand) 21 for an hour.
   c. Jaime is probably going to be standing in the security line for another hour. By 9:30 A.M., he (stand) 22 in the security line for an hour and a half.
   d. Jaime is probably going to be finished standing in the security line by 10:00 A.M. If he is finished at 10:00 A.M., he (stand) 23 in line for a total of two hours!

► Practice 8. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Complete the sentences. Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. A: Hurry up! We’re waiting for you. What’s taking you so long?
   B: I ___ for an important phone call. Go ahead and leave without me.
   a. wait        c. have waited
   b. will have waited
   d. am waiting

2. A: Robert is going to be famous someday. He ___ in three movies already.
   B: I’m sure he’ll be a star.
   a. has been appearing  c. has appeared
   b. had appeared
   d. appeared

3. A: Where’s Polly?
   B: She ___.
   a. is in her room studying  c. studies in her room
   b. in her room is studying d. has studied in her room
4. A: What ____ of the new simplified tax law?
   B: It’s more confusing than the old one.
     a. are you thinking        b. do you think
     c. have you thought       d. have you been thinking

5. A: When is Mr. Fields planning to retire?
   B: Soon, I think. He ____ here for a long time. He’ll probably retire either next year or the year after that.
     a. worked          b. had been working
     c. has been working    d. is working

6. A: Why did you buy all this sugar and chocolate?
   B: I ____ a delicious chocolate cake for dinner tonight.
     a. make        b. will make
     c. ’m going to make    d. will have made

7. A: Let’s go! What’s taking you so long?
   B: I’ll be there as soon as I ____ my keys.
     a. find        b. will find
     c. ’m going to find    d. am finding

8. Next week when there ____ a full moon, the ocean tides will be higher.
     a. is being       b. will be
     c. is          d. will have been

9. While I ____ TV last night, a mouse ran across the floor.
     a. have watched
     b. was watching
     c. watched       d. have been watching

10. Fish were among the earliest forms of life. Fish ____ on earth for ages and ages.
     a. existed
     b. are existing
     c. exist       d. have existed

11. The phone ____ constantly since Jack announced his candidacy for president this morning.
     a. has been ringing
     b. rang
     c. had rung       d. had been ringing

12. The earth ____ on the sun for its heat and light.
     a. depended
     b. depending
     c. was depending
     d. depends

13. I don’t feel good. I ____ home from work tomorrow.
     a. ’m staying
     b. will have stayed
     c. stay       d. stayed

14. Today there are weather satellites that beam down information about the earth’s atmosphere.
    In the last several decades, space exploration ____ great contributions to weather forecasting.
     a. is making
     b. has made
     c. makes       d. made
15. On July 20th, 1969, astronaut Neil Armstrong ___ down onto the moon. He was the first person ever to set foot on another celestial body.
   a. was stepping  
   b. has stepped  
   c. stepped  
   d. has been stepping

16. The plane’s departure was delayed because of mechanical difficulties. When the weary passengers finally boarded the aircraft, many were annoyed and irritable because they ___ in the airport for three and a half hours.
   a. are waiting  
   b. were waiting  
   c. have been waiting  
   d. had been waiting

17. If coastal erosion continues to take place at the present rate, in another fifty years this beach ___ anymore.
   a. doesn’t exist  
   b. isn’t going to exist  
   c. isn’t existing  
   d. won’t be existing

18. Homestead High School’s football team ___ a championship until last season when the new coach led them to win first place in their league.
   a. has never won  
   b. is never winning  
   c. had never been winning  
   d. had never won

19. Nonnative speakers need many years of intensive language study before they can qualify as interpreters. By the end of this year, Chen ___ English for three years, but he will still need more training and experience before he masters the language.
   a. will be studying  
   b. has studied  
   c. will have been studying  
   d. has been studying

Practice 9. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Complete the sentences. Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. A: May I speak to Dr. Paine, please?
   B: I’m sorry, he ___ a patient at the moment. Can I help you?
   a. is seeing  
   b. sees  
   c. was seeing  
   d. has been seeing

2. A: When are you going to ask your boss for a raise?
   B: ___ to her twice already! I don’t think she wants to give me one.
   a. I’ve talked  
   b. I was talking  
   c. I’ve been talking  
   d. I’d talked

3. A: Do you think Harry will want something to eat after he gets here?
   B: I hope not. It’ll probably be after midnight, and we ___.
   a. are sleeping  
   b. will be sleeping  
   c. have been sleeping  
   d. be sleeping

4. Paul, could you please turn off the stove? The potatoes ___ for at least 30 minutes.
   a. are boiling  
   b. boiling  
   c. have been boiling  
   d. were boiling
5. A: Is it true that spaghetti didn’t originate in Italy?
   B: Yes. The Chinese ____ spaghetti dishes for a long time before Marco Polo brought it back to Italy.
   a. have been making  c. had been making
   b. have made d. make
6. A: I once saw a turtle that had wings. The turtle flew into the air to catch insects.
   B: Stop kidding. I ____ you!
   a. don’t believe c. didn’t believe
   b. am not believing d. wasn’t believing
7. A: Could someone help me lift the lawnmower into the pickup truck?
   B: I’m not busy. I ____ you.
   a. help  c. am helping
   b. ’ll help d. am going to help
8. My family loves this house. It ____ the family home ever since my grandfather built it 60 years ago.
   a. was c. will be
   b. has been d. is
9. Here’s an interesting statistic: On a typical day, the average person ____ about 48,000 words.
   How many words did you speak today?
   a. spoke c. is speaking
   b. was speaking d. speaks
10. It’s against the law to kill the black rhinoceros. They ____ extinct.
    a. became c. are becoming
    b. have become d. become
11. After ten unhappy years, Janice finally quit her job. She ____ along with her boss for a long time before she finally decided to look for a new position.
    a. hadn’t been getting c. didn’t get
    b. isn’t getting d. hasn’t been getting
12. The National Hurricane Center is closely watching a strong hurricane over the Atlantic Ocean. When it ____ the coast of Texas sometime tomorrow afternoon, it will bring with it great destructive force.
    a. reaches c. reaching
    b. will reach d. is reaching
13. At one time, huge prehistoric reptiles dominated the earth. This Age of Dinosaurs ____ much longer than the present Age of Mammals has lasted to date.
    a. lasted c. had lasted
    b. was lasting d. has lasted
    a. worked c. have been working
    b. work d. were working
15. The city is rebuilding its dilapidated waterfront, transforming it into a pleasant and fashionable outdoor mall. Next summer when the tourists arrive, they ____ 104 beautiful new shops and restaurants in the area where the old run-down waterfront properties used to stand.
   a. will found
   b. will be finding
   c. will find
   d. will have found

16. A minor earthquake occurred at 2:07 A.M. on January 3rd. Most of the people in the village ____ at the time and didn’t even know it had occurred until the next morning.
   a. slept
   b. had slept
   c. sleep
   d. were sleeping

17. The little girl started to cry. She ____ her doll, and no one was able to find it for her.
   a. has lost
   b. had lost
   c. was lost
   d. was losing

18. According to research, people usually ____ in their sleep 25 to 30 times each night.
   a. turn
   b. are turning
   c. turned
   d. have turned
Practice 1. Preview. (Chapter 6)

Correct the errors in the use of singular and plural forms of nouns and verbs. Don’t add any new words.

1. My mother wear glasses.
2. Elephants is large animals.
3. Your heart beat faster when you exercise.
4. Healthy hearts needs regular exercise.
5. Every child in the class know the alphabet.
6. Some of the magazine at the dentist’s office are two year old.
7. A number of the students in my class is from Mexico.
8. One of my favorite subject in school is algebra.
9. There’s many different kind of insects in the world.
10. Writing compositions are difficult for me.
11. The United States have a population of over 300 million.
12. Most of the movie take place in Paris.
13. Most of the people in my factory division likes and gets along with one another, but a few of the worker doesn’t fit in with the rest of us very well.
Practice 2. Final -s on nouns and verbs. (Chart 6-1)
Look at the words that end in -s. Are they nouns or verbs? Are they singular or plural? Check the correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A boat floats.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Boats float.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>My friend lives in my neighborhood.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>My friends live in my neighborhood.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Helen eats a cookie every morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Donuts contain a lot of sugar.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Babies cry when they are hungry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>My baby cries every night.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 3. Pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es. (Chart 6-1)
Add -s or -es to these words to spell them correctly. Then write /s/, /z/, or /əz/ to show the pronunciation of the endings.

1. ball _s_ /z/ 6. touch_____ ___ 11. industry_____ ___
2. wish _es_ /əz/ 7. month_____ ___ 12. swallow_____ ___
3. aunt _s_ /ə/ 8. tree_____ ___ 13. cliff_____ ___
4. flower_____ ___ 9. dress_____ ___ 14. bath_____ ___
5. park_____ ___ 10. valley_____ ___ 15. bathe_____ ___

Practice 4. Basic subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-2)
Circle the correct verb.

1. The weather (is / are) cold.
2. Vegetables (is / are) good for you.
3. Each boy (has / have) his own locker in the gym.
4. A dog (barks / bark).
5. Dogs (barks / bark).
6. Ann (is / are) at home.
7. Ann and Sue (is / are) at home.
8. Every boy and girl (is / are) here.
9. A boy and a girl (is / are) in the street.
10. Eating vegetables (is / are) good for you.
Practice 5. Subject-verb agreement: using expressions of quantity. (Chart 6-3)
Complete the sentences with is or are.
1. Some of Highway 21 ______ closed due to flooding.
2. Some of the highways ______ closed due to flooding.
3. A lot of that movie ______ full of violence.
4. A lot of movies ______ full of violence.
5. Half of the pizza ______ for you and half ______ for me.
6. Half of the pizzas ______ vegetarian.
7. Most of my friends ______ people I met in school.
8. Every one of my friends ______ a sports fan.
9. The number of desks in that classroom ______ thirty-five.
10. A number of stores ______ closed today because of the holiday.

Practice 6. Subject-verb agreement: using expressions of quantity. (Chart 6-3)
Circle the correct verb.
1. A large part of our town (have / has) been badly damaged by a big fire.
2. Most of the houses (was / were) destroyed by the fire.
3. Most of the house (was / were) destroyed by the fire.
4. One of the houses (was / were) destroyed by the fire.
5. Each of the houses (is / are) in ruins.
6. Each house (is / are) in ruins.
7. Every one of the houses (has / have) serious damage.
8. Every house (has / have) serious damage.
9. None of the houses (has / have) escaped damage.

Practice 7. Subject-verb agreement: using there + be. (Chart 6-4)
Circle the correct verb.
1. There (is / are) a cup on the table.
2. There (is / are) some cups on the table.
3. There (is / are) a lot of people in the line for the movie.
4. There (is / are) a snack bar in the lobby of the theater.
5. There (wasn't / weren't) any hurricanes in Florida last year.
6. There (was / were) a terrible tsunami in Asia in 2004.
7. Why (isn't / aren't) there any windows in the classroom?
8. Why (isn't / aren't) there a teacher in the classroom?
9. There (has / have) been an ongoing problem with the color printer.
10. There (has / have) been a lot of problems with the color printer.
Practice 8. Subject-verb agreement: some irregularities. (Chart 6-5)

Circle the correct verb.

1. States (is / are) political units.
2. The United States (is / are) in North America.
3. The news in that newspaper (is / are) biased.
4. Economics (is / are) an important area of study.
5. Diabetes (is / are) an illness. Mumps (is / are) another kind of illness. Rabies (is / are) a disease you can get from being bitten by an infected animal.
6. One hundred meters (isn’t / aren’t) a long distance to travel by car.
7. Five minutes (isn’t / aren’t) too long to wait.
8. Six and four (is / are) ten.
9. People (is / are) interesting.
10. English (is / are) a common language.
11. The English (is / are) friendly people.
12. The elderly in my country (is / are) given free medical care.
13. Four colorful fish (is / are) swimming in the fish tank.
14. The police (is / are) coming to investigate the accident.

Practice 9. Subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 → 6-5)

Complete the sentences with the present tense of the appropriate verb from the list. Some verbs may be used more than once.

be  contain  cost  drive  like  make  remind

1. There _______________ an old barn near our town. The barn has been converted to a bookstore, and its name is The Old Barn Bookstore.
2. It’s a very popular place, especially on weekends. People _______________ it a lot. They _______________ out to the barn on weekends.
3. It's about twenty miles from downtown. Twenty miles ______________ a long drive, but the bookstore is worth the drive.

4. A lot of the books in The Old Barn Bookstore ______________ not new books. There ______________ a lot of used books, old books, and even valuable antique books.

5. There ______________ a large number of beautiful art books too. Each one ______________ excellent photographs of famous pieces of art. Most of these books ______________ quite expensive.

6. I'm thinking about buying a few nice art books there. One of the books ______________ over a hundred dollars because it is very valuable. It has an autograph and an inscription by Ernest Hemingway.

7. There ______________ a small café in The Old Barn Bookstore too. You can sit there for hours if you want, browsing through the books you are thinking of buying. The number of food items on the menu ______________ very small, but about twenty different kinds of coffee ______________ served.

8. Last Sunday I was browsing through some books when suddenly I heard several people speaking French. When I looked up, I saw six people at the next table, all speaking excitedly. I used to understand French, but now French ______________ very difficult for me to understand. However, hearing French always ______________ me of my days as a student and ______________ me feel young again.

Practice 10. Subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 → 6-5)
Circle the correct verb.

1. Each skater in the competition (has / have) trained since childhood.

2. A convention of English teachers from all over the world (take / takes) place every spring.

3. Some of the new movies (is / are) good, but a lot of them (have / has) too much violence.

4. We saw a film about India last night. Some of the movie (was / were) fascinating, and there (was / were) a lot of beautiful mountain scenes.

5. Three-fourths of the patients who (take / takes) this new medicine report improvement.

6. Almost three-quarters of the surface of the earth (is / are) covered by water.

7. There (is / are) 100 senators in the United States Senate. The number of votes necessary for a simple majority (is / are) 51.

8. There (has / have) been some encouraging news about pandas in recent years. There (is / are) more pandas living today than there (was / were) ten years ago.

9. The United Arab Emirates (is / are) a country in the Middle East.

10. The New York Times (is / are) an important newspaper.

11. Economics (is / are) impossible for me to understand.

12. Diabetes (is / are) an illness. People who (has / have) it must be careful with their diet.

13. Five dollars (is / are) too much to pay for a pencil!

14. The English (speak / speaks) with an accent that is different from the American accent.

15. The handicapped (use / uses) a special entrance in this building.
Practice 11. Subject-verb agreement. (Chapters 1–6)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the given verb. Use any appropriate tense.

1. Nearly 90 percent of the people in our town always (vote) ______________ in local elections.
2. In recent years, a number of students (participate) ______________ in language programs abroad.
3. The number of students who knew the answer to the last question on the exam (be) __________ very low.
4. Every one of the boys and girls in the school (know) ______________ what to do if the fire alarm rings.
5. A lot of people in the United States (speak) ______________ and (understand) ______________ ______________ Spanish.
6. Why (be) ______________ the police standing over there right now?
7. Why (broadcast) _________ most of the television stations ______________ news at the same hour every night?
8. Some of the most important books for my report (be) __________ not available in the school library, so I'll have to look for information on the internet.
9. Recently there (be) ______________ times when I have seriously considered dropping out of school.
10. Not one of the women in my office (receive) ______________ a promotion in the past two years. All of the promotions (go) ______________ to men.
11. The news on the radio and TV stations (confirm) ______________ that a serious storm is approaching our city.
12. Geography (be) _________ fascinating. Mathematics (be) _________ fascinating. I love those subjects!
13. Mathematics and geography (be) _________ my favorite subjects.
14. By law, every man, woman, and child (have) __________ the right to free speech. It is guaranteed in our constitution.
15. (Be, not) __________ sugar and pineapple the leading crops in Hawaii now?
16. Why (be) __________ there a shortage of certified school teachers at the present time?
17. How many states in the United States (begin) ______________ with the letter “A”?
18. The United States (consist) ______________ of 50 states.
19. What places in the world (have) ______________ no snakes?
20. Politics (be) __________ a constant source of interest to me.
21. (Be) ______________ there ever any doubt in your mind about the outcome of the election? You were sure that Garcia was going to win, weren't you?

*See the Answer Key for the answer to this question.
Practice 1. Regular and irregular plural nouns. (Chart 7-1)
Write the plural forms of the given nouns.

1. one car, two _________________
2. one woman, two _________________
3. one match, two _________________
4. one mouse, two _________________
5. one city, two _________________
6. one donkey, two _________________
7. one half, two _________________
8. one chief, two _________________
9. one class, two _________________
10. one foot, two _________________
11. one hero, two _________________
12. one piano, two _________________
13. one video, two _________________
14. one basis, two _________________
15. one bacterium, two _________________
16. one series, two _________________

Practice 2. Regular and irregular plural nouns. (Chart 7-1)
Complete the sentences with the correct plural form of the nouns in the list. Use each word once.

belief fish monkey radio thief
child kilo potato species tooth

1. I had my favorite vegetable for dinner: delicious fried _________________.
2. At the zoo, we saw a lot of ________________ jumping around in the trees.
3. The police caught the two ________________ who had stolen over 100 ________________ from people’s cars.
4. The shopping mall has a playground for _________________.
5. Our baby got two new _________________ this week!
6. The two families found that they hold the same _______________; they believe in the same things.
7. Some people think that whales are a species of ________________, but they are not; they are mammals.
8. The adult male of some _________________ of bears weighs about 600 ________________.
**Practice 3. Final -s / -es.** (Chapter 6 and Chart 7-1)
Add final -s / -es where necessary. Do not change, add, or omit any other words in the sentences.

1. A bird care____ for its feather____ by cleaning them with its beak.
2. There are many occupation in the world. Doctor take care of sick people. Pilot fly airplane.
   Farmer raise crop. Shepherd take care of sheep.
3. An architect design building. An archeologist dig in the ground to find object from past civilizations.
4. The first modern computer were developed in the 1930s and 1940s. Computer were not commercially available until the 1950s.
5. There are several factory in my hometown. The glass factory employ many people.
6. Kangaroo are Australian animal. They are not found on any of the other continent, except in zoo.
7. Mosquito are found everywhere in the world, including the Arctic.
8. At one time, many people believed that tomato were poisonous.

**Practice 4. Possessive nouns.** (Chart 7-2)
Answer the questions for each sentence.

1. My parents’ house is over 100 years old.
   a. What is the possessive noun? _________________________________
   b. How many parents are there, one or two? _______________________
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (s’) connect? _________ + _________
2. Safety is a parent’s concern.
   a. What is the possessive noun? _________________________________
   b. How many parents are there, one or more than one? _______________
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (’s) connect? _________ + _________
3. Cats’ eyes shine in the dark.
   a. What is the possessive noun? _________________________________
   b. How many cats are there, one or many? _______________________
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (s’) connect? _________ + _________
4. My cat’s eyes are big and green.
   a. What is the possessive noun? _________________________________
   b. How many cats are there, one or several? ______________________
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (’s) connect? _________ + _________
5. Do you know Mary’s brother?
   a. What is the possessive noun? 
   b. What belongs to Mary? 
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (’s) connect? +

6. Do you know Mary’s brothers?
   a. What is the possessive noun? 
   b. What belongs to Mary? 
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (’s) connect? +

7. My brothers’ team won the game.
   a. What is the possessive noun? 
   b. How many brothers do I have, one or more than one? 
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (’s) connect? +

8. My brother’s team won the game.
   a. What is the possessive noun? 
   b. How many brothers do I have, one or more than one? 
   c. What two nouns does the possessive (’s) connect? +

► Practice 5. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)
Check the correct number for the words in bold.

1. The teacher’s office is down the hall. □ one □ more than one
2. The teachers’ office is down the hall. □ one □ more than one
3. My sisters’ clothes are all over my bed. □ one □ more than one
4. I visited the boy’s house. □ one □ more than one
5. I agree with the judges’ decision. □ one □ more than one
6. The customer service representative must listen to the customers’ complaints. □ one □ more than one
7. The professor discussed the student’s assignment. □ one □ more than one
8. The flight attendant put the passenger’s bags in the overhead compartment. □ one □ more than one

► Practice 6. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)
Make the italicized nouns possessive by adding apostrophes and final -s / -es. Cross out and change a letter if necessary.

1. He put the mail in his secretary’s mailbox. □ one □ more than one
2. There are three secretaries in our office. The secretary’s mailboxes are in the hallway. □ one □ more than one
3. Tom has two cats. The cat’s food and water dishes are on a shelf in the laundry room. □ one □ more than one
4. I have one cat. My cat’s feet are white, but the rest of her is black. □ one □ more than one
5. My supervisor’s names are Ms. Anderson and Mr. Gomez. □ one □ more than one
6. Your supervisor’s name is Ms. Wright.
7. My twin baby _____ eyes are dark blue, just like their father’s eyes.
8. My baby _____ eyes are dark blue, just like her father’s eyes.
9. Olga’s child _____ name is Olaf.
10. José and Alicia’s children _____ names are Pablo and Gabriela.
11. I’m interested in other people _____ ideas.
12. All of the performers in the play did well. The audience applauded the actor _____ excellent performances.
13. An actor _____ income is uncertain.

➤ Practice 7. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)
Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. My (mother’s / mothers’) name is Maria.
2. Both my (grandmother’s / grandmothers’) names were Maria too.
3. The (teacher’s / teachers’) class is so big that the students in the back of the room can’t hear her when she talks.
4. My (bosses’ / boss’) name is Carl.
5. An (employee’s / employees’) wallet was found under a table at the (employee’s / employees’) cafeteria yesterday.
6. Here’s the directory for the department store: the (men’s / men’s) department is on the first floor; the (women’s / women’s) department is on the second floor; the (children’s / children’s) department is on the third floor. On the third floor, the (girl’s / girls’) clothes are on the right side, and the (boy’s / boys’) clothes are on the left side.

➤ Practice 8. Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 7-3)
Underline the adjective. Check the sentences where a noun is used as an adjective.

   1. _____ It’s an expensive ticket.  6. _____ They are family movies.
   2. _____ It’s a theater ticket.  7. _____ It’s a computer desk.
   3. _____ It’s a small theater.  8. _____ It’s a hair dryer.
   4. _____ It’s a movie theater.  9. _____ They are window washers.
   5. _____ It’s a family movie. 10. _____ It’s a gas station.

➤ Practice 9. Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 7-3)
Complete the sentences with the given nouns. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate.

   1. They sell ____________ grocires ____________ at that store. It is a ____________ grocery ____________ store. (grocery)
   2. They raise ____________ chickens ____________ on their farm. It’s a ____________ chicken ____________ farm. (chicken)
   3. I like ____________ salads. I like salads that contain _____________. (tomato)
   4. A friend gave us a wooden frame for _____________. It’s a very attractive wooden _____________. frame. (picture)
   5. I have a _____________. garden. I grow several different kinds of _____________. (flower)
6. Some people are addicted to ________. They are ________ addicts. (drug)
7. This carton holds one dozen ________. It’s an ________ carton. (egg)
8. We drove down an old, narrow highway that had only ________. We drove down a ________ highway. (two + lane)
9. I gave a ________ speech in class. My speech lasted for ________. (five + minute)
10. The Watkins family lives in a ________ house. Any house that is ________ usually needs a lot of repairs. (sixty + year + old)
11. You need a special license to drive a ________. Ed has been a ________ driver for twenty-five years. (truck)
12. Susan programs ________. There are good jobs for ________ programmers everywhere. (computer)

► Practice 10. Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 7-3)
Choose the correct completion.

1. A table in a kitchen is a ________.
    a. kitchen table    b. table kitchen    c. kitchen’s table
2. The two tables in my bedroom are my ________.
    a. bedrooms tables    b. tables bedroom    c. bedroom tables
3. I have an office at home. It is my ________.
    a. office home    b. home office    c. office of home
4. A lot of people have offices in their homes. They have ________.
    a. home offices    b. homes offices    c. homes office
5. There are two phone lines in my house, one for my home and one for my office. One is my home phone and the other is my ________.
    a. phone office    b. office phone    c. offices phone
6. There is a sink in the kitchen and one in each bathroom. We have two bathrooms. So we have one kitchen sink and two ________.
    a. bathrooms sinks    b. bathroom sink    c. bathroom sinks
7. In the back of our house, we grow vegetables in a garden. It’s a ________.
    a. vegetable garden    b. vegetables garden    c. garden vegetables
8. We have two trees that grow cherries. They are ________.
    a. tree cherries    b. cherry trees    c. cherries trees

► Practice 11. Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 7-3)
Complete the sentences. Write the correct phrase using the two nouns in italics.

1. That handbook is for students. It is a ________ student handbook ________.
2. There was a party to celebrate Lynn’s birthday. There was a ________ for Lynn.
3. The retirees receive checks from the government every month. They receive a [ ] every month.

4. The seats in the airplane are very small. The [ ] are very small.

5. The pajamas are made of cotton. They are [ ] .

6. There were no rooms in the local hotels that were available. There were no available [ ] .

7. Their baby is ten months old. They have a [ ] .

8. Our trip lasted for three days. We took a [ ] .

9. Their apartment has three rooms. It is a [ ] .

10. The professor asked us to write a paper of five pages. She asked us to write a [ ] .

11. Luigi is a singer. He sings in operas. He’s a famous [ ] .

12. A convention for people who collect stamps is being held at City Center. My uncle is a collector. He has been a [ ] since he was a boy.

 ► Practice 12. Count and noncount nouns. (Chart 7-4)
Look at the italicized nouns. Write “C” above the count nouns and “NC” above the noncount nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NC</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>NC</th>
<th>NC</th>
<th>NC</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. We bought a lot of food. We bought some eggs, bread, milk, coffee, and bananas.

2. I get a lot of mail. I get some letters, magazines, catalogs, and bills almost every day.

3. Euros, pounds, and dollars are different kinds of money.

4. Alma doesn’t wear much jewelry. She wears a ring and sometimes earrings.

5. A language consists of vocabulary and grammar.

6. We need some furniture for the patio: a table, six chairs, and an umbrella.

 ► Practice 13. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-4 → 7-6)
Circle the correct completion.

1. Every day I learn some more new (word / words) in English.

2. Olga knows (an / some) American slang.

3. There are a lot of (car / cars) on the highway at rush hour.

4. We got here so fast! There wasn’t (much / many) traffic on the highway.

5. We ate a tuna (sandwich / sandwiches) for lunch.

6. We got only (some / one) good picture on our trip.

7. That website contains (an / some) excellent information.

8. That is (a very / very) good news!
Practice 14. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-4 → 7-6)
Add final -s / -es to the nouns in italics if necessary. Do not add, omit, or change any other words. Some sentences have no errors.

1. Jackie has brown hair and gray eyes.

2. My parents gave me some good advice.

3. I always drink water when I’m hot and thirsty.

4. Do winning athletes need luck?

5. Our country has made a lot of progress in the last 25 years.

6. How many class are you taking this semester?

7. Yesterday we received some fax from our lawyer.

Practice 15. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-4 → 7-6)
Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. It takes (courage / a courage) to be an astronaut.

2. We bought (some / a) new clothing.

3. The baby needs a new pair of (shoe / shoes).

4. The garbage truck comes on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday mornings to pick up the (garbage / garbage).

5. I ordered twelve (glass / glasses) from a site on the internet. When they arrived, one (glass / glasses) was broken.

6. Many people need to wear (glass / glasses) to see better. The lenses should be made of (glass / glasses) that doesn’t break easily.

7. I filled out a report for (a lost luggage / some lost luggage) at the airport, but I’m not optimistic. I wonder if they find (much / many) lost suitcases.

8. Would you like to go out tonight? I don’t have (much / many) homework, and I’d like to go out and have (some / a) fun.

9. Ireland is famous for its beautiful green (hill / hills). Ireland has (a lovely / lovely) scenery, but it often has (a damp / damp) weather.

10. The four-leaf clover is a symbol of (a good / good) luck in Ireland.
Practice 16. Basic article usage. (Chart 7-7)
Complete the sentences with a, an, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.

1. A car has wheels.
2. An airplane has wings.
3. Energy is necessary to move cars and airplanes.
4. A banana has a long, narrow shape.
5. An apple is round.
6. A fruit is nutritious.
7. Sodium is a mineral.
8. Air is a gas.
9. Rice is a kind of grass.
10. An elephant lives a long time.
11. A zebra has black and white stripes.
12. Football is an international sport.
13. Football is oval in the United States and round in the rest of the world.
14. A football player has to be strong.

Practice 17. Basic article usage. (Chart 7-7)
Complete the sentences with a, an, or some.

1. I asked a question.
2. The students asked some questions.
3. I got an answer.
4. I received information.
5. Chess is a game.
6. The children played games at the party.
7. I heard news about the hurricane.
8. I read a newspaper.
9. My professor wrote a letter to the newspaper.
10. I wrote an email to my professor.
11. I got mail from the university.
12. Susan left things in her car.
13. Matt bought a printer.
14. The printer needs ink.

Practice 18. General article usage. (Chart 7-8)
Read each conversation. Circle the letter of the sentence that explains what the speakers are talking about.

1. A: Where’s the teacher? I have a question.
   B: I’m not sure.
   a. Speaker A is asking about any teacher.
   b. Speaker A is asking about a teacher Speaker B is familiar with.

2. A: I put down the phone and now I can’t find it.
   B: I do that a lot!
   a. Speaker A is referring to a phone Speaker B is familiar with.
   b. Speaker A is referring to any phone.
3. A: Could you pick up some eggs and rice at the store? We’ll have the rice for dinner.
   B: Sure.
   a. In the first sentence, rice is general. In the second sentence, rice is specific.
   b. In both sentences, rice is specific.

4. A: Bananas have a lot of potassium.
   B: They’re very healthy.
   a. Speaker A is referring to a specific group of bananas.
   b. Speaker A is referring to bananas in general.

5. A: Does Saturn have a moon that orbits it?
   B: I don’t know!
   a. Speaker A is talking about a specific moon.
   b. Speaker A is talking about any moon.

6. A: Have you seen the moon tonight?
   B: Yes! It’s spectacular.
   a. The speakers are referring to the moon that goes around the Earth.
   b. The speakers are referring to any moon in the solar system.

Practice 19. General article usage. (Chart 7-8)
Correct the errors.

1. It’s beautiful today. Sun is shining and sky is clear.

2. There’s a boy on a swing, and a girl is pushing him. Boy is about five years old, and girl is about eight years old.

3. The penguins live in Antarctica. The polar bears don’t live in Antarctica.

4. Which is more important — the love or the money?

5. A: What does this word mean?
   B: Do you have dictionary? Look up word in dictionary.

6. A: Watch out! There’s a bee buzzing around!
   B: Where? I don’t see it. Ouch! It stung me! I didn’t see bee, but I felt it!

Practice 20. Using articles. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)
Complete the sentences with a / an or the.

1. A: Let’s take ______ break. Do you want to go to ______ movie?
   B: That’s ______ good idea. Which movie do you want to see?
   A: ______ movie at the Rialto Theater is a comedy. Let’s see that one.

2. A: So, students, who knows ______ answer to this question?
   B: I do!
3. A: Professor Li, I have _____ question about the assignment.
   B: What's your question?

4. A: There's _____ spot on my shirt!
   B: Here. Take out _____ spot with this spot remover.

5. A: Listen! I hear _____ noise! Do you hear it?
   B: Yes, I hear something.

6. A: What was _____ noise that you heard?
   B: I think it was _____ mouse.
   A: But we don't have any mice in _____ house!
   B: Well, maybe it was just _____ wind.

► Practice 21. Using articles. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)
Complete the sentences with a / an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.

1. _____ lightning is _____ flash of light. It is usually followed by _____ thunder.

2. Last night we had _____ terrible storm. Our children were frightened by _____ thunder.

3. _____ circles are _____ round geometric figures.

4. _____ circle with _____ slash drawn through it is an international symbol meaning “Do not do this!” For example, _____ circle in _____ illustration means “No Smoking.”

5. _____ inventor of _____ modern cell phone was Dr. Martin Cooper. He made the first call on the first portable handset in 1973 when he was _____ employee of the Motorola company.

6. Frank Lloyd Wright is _____ name of _____ famous architect. He is _____ architect who designed the Guggenheim Museum in New York. He also designed _____ hotel in Tokyo. _____ hotel was designed to withstand _____ earthquakes.

7. There was _____ small earthquake in California last year. _____ earthquake caused _____ damage to several buildings, but fortunately, no one was killed.
Practice 22. Expressions of quantity with count and noncount nouns. (Chart 7-9)

Draw a line through the expressions that cannot be used to complete the sentences. Item 1 has been started for you.

1. Linda did ___ work last Saturday.
   a. three
   b. several
   c. some
   d. a lot of
   e. too much
   f. too many
   g. a few
   h. a little
   i. a number of
   j. a great deal of
   k. hardly any
   l. no

2. Henry is planning ___ projects for next month.
   a. three
   b. several
   c. some
   d. a lot of
   e. too much
   f. too many
   g. a few
   h. a little
   i. a number of
   j. a great deal of
   k. hardly any
   l. no

Practice 23. Expressions of quantity with count and noncount nouns. (Chart 7-9)

Complete the sentences with much or many. Also write the plural forms of the nouns as necessary. In some sentences, you will need to circle the correct verb in parentheses.

1. How ___ many ___ computer___ are there in the language lab?

2. How ___ much ___ equipment is there in the language lab?

3. How ___ many ___ child___ (is / are) in Ms. Thompson’s class?

4. How ___ tooth ___ do babies usually have when they’re born?

5. Ellen and Rick have traveled widely. They’ve visited ___ country___

6. I don’t know ___ American slang.

7. Enrique hasn’t made ___ progress in learning to play the piano. That’s because he doesn’t spend ___ time practicing.

8. How ___ DVDs do you usually rent during a month?

9. My hair is all frizzy today. There (is / are) ___ humidity in the air.

10. I haven’t done ___ reading lately.

11. There (was / were) ___ smog in Los Angeles yesterday that you couldn’t see any of the hills or mountains from the city.

12. I didn’t know ___ grammar before taking this course.
13. How _______ active volcano (is / are) there in the world today?

14. Politicians give _______ speech during their careers.

**Practice 24. Expressions of quantity with count and noncount nouns.**

(Chart 7-9)

Circle the letter of all the possible completions.

1. Pat bought a few ___ at the art show.
   a. pictures  c. ceramic bowls
   b. photographs  d. art

2. Mike bought some ___ at the supermarket.
   a. milk  c. magazines
   b. orange  d. flashlight battery

3. There were several ___ on the plane.
   a. child  c. babies
   b. people  d. passenger

4. There was a little ___ on the table.
   a. food  c. coffee
   b. cream  d. sandwiches

5. We have plenty of ___ for everyone.
   a. food  c. drinks
   b. pizza  d. hot dog

6. Can you bring a couple of ___ with you when you come to the party?
   a. ice  c. bottles of soda
   b. hamburger  d. water

7. I don’t have many ___ about this.
   a. thoughts  c. ideas
   b. knowledge  d. information

8. Do Charlie and Kate have much ___?
   a. problems  c. fun
   b. children  d. work

9. I know a number of ___.
   a. people  c. professors
   b. things  d. news

10. They don’t have a great deal of ___.
    a. intelligence  c. facts
    b. information  d. education
Practice 25. Using a few and few; a little and little. (Chart 7-10)
In each pair of sentences, check the sentence that has the larger number or quantity of something.

1. a. We have a little money. ✓
b. We have little money. ___
4. a. I speak some Spanish. ___
b. I speak little Spanish. ___

2. a. They know few people. ___
b. They know a few people. ___
5. a. Marta asked few questions. ___
b. Marta asked a few questions. ___

3. a. She has very little patience. ___
b. She has a little patience. ___

Practice 26. Using a few and few; a little and little. (Chart 7-10)
Complete the sentences. Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. Belinda learned to skate very quickly. At first, she fell down ___ times, but now she very rarely falls down.
   a. few                   b. a few                   c. a little

2. The police didn’t have a good description of the bank robber. ___ witnesses actually saw his face.
   a. few                   b. a few                   c. little

3. Please pass the cream. I like ___ cream in my coffee. It tastes better.
   a. a few                 b. a little                 c. very few

4. You’d better know the answers when Professor Simpson calls on you in class tomorrow. He has ___ patience with students who are not prepared.
   a. very little           b. very few                 c. a little

5. Before the hurricane, the stores were crowded with people buying supplies. By the time I got to a store, ___ flashlight batteries were left, and ___ bottled water was available.
   a. very few / very little b. very little / very little c. very little / very few

6. Come over to our house tonight. Peter is bringing his guitar. He’ll play ___ folk music, and we’ll sing ___ old songs.
   a. few / little          b. a few / a little         c. a little / a few

7. To make this sauce, first cook ___ onions in ___ oil.
   a. few / little          b. a few / a little         c. little / few

Practice 27. Using a few and few; a little and little. (Chart 7-10)
Without changing the meaning of the sentences, replace the italicized words with a few, few, a little, or little.

*a little*
1. If you put some sugar on those berries, they will taste sweeter.
   a few

2. Many people live to be more than 100 years old, but only some people live to be 110 years old.
   some

3. Many cities in the world have a population of over a million, and some cities have a population of more than ten million.
   some

4. You might reach your goal if you put forth some more effort.
   some

5. The professor lectured very clearly. At the end of the class, not many students had questions.
6. I have to go to the post office because I have some letters to mail.

7. Every day Max goes to his mailbox, but it is usually empty. He gets almost no mail.

8. My friend arrived in the United States some months ago.

9. I think you could use some help. Let me give you some advice.

10. Margaret likes sweet tea. She usually adds some honey to her tea. Sometimes she adds some milk too.

► Practice 28. Singular expressions of quantity: one, each, every. (Chart 7-11)
Choose the correct word from the list. Write the correct singular or plural form. Some words may be used more than once.

child  goose  neighbor  state
chimpanzee  man  puppy  woman

1. There is only one ___________ in the United States that is completely surrounded by water: Hawaii.

2. One of the ___________ in the United States that shares a border with Canada is Vermont.

3. Our dog had six puppies. I wanted to keep them all, but I couldn’t. I kept one of the ___________, but I gave away the other five.

4. There were six puppies. One ___________ was black and white, and five were all black.

5. The children enjoyed the zoo. One of the ___________ wandered away from the group, but she was quickly found at the snack bar.

6. The children particularly liked watching the chimpanzees. One ___________, a boy named Kevin, seemed to be having a conversation with one of the ___________.

7. One of our ___________ gave a welcoming party for a new family who had just moved to our neighborhood from Ecuador.

8. There were several men riding on motorcycles together. One ___________ seemed to be their leader. He was riding in front of the group.

9. The geese are flying in a V-formation. One ___________ is at the point of the V, apparently leading the whole flock.

10. Our book club consists of fifteen women who have been together in the club for more than twenty years. One of the ___________ was just elected mayor of our town.
Practice 29. One, each, every. (Chart 7-11)
Correct the errors in the italicized words. Not every sentence has an error.

1. According to the Constitution of the United States, every persons has certain rights.

2. One of rights is the right to vote.

3. Each of states is represented by two senators in the U.S. Senate.

4. Each of senator is elected for a six-year term.

5. The number of representatives in the House of Representatives depends on the population of each state.

6. For example, Nevada, one of the very small state, has only three representatives, but New York, a populous state, has 29 representatives.

7. Every one of citizen is eligible to vote for president, but not every citizen exercises this right.

8. In some countries, voting is compulsory. Every citizens must vote.

Practice 30. Using of in expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-12)
Complete the sentences with of or Ø.

1. Several ______ my colleagues are going to the lecture at the library tonight.

2. I have several ______ colleagues who have PhDs.

3. Many ______ the houses in New Orleans were lost to the floods that occurred after Hurricane Katrina.

4. These days, ______ new houses are being built with stronger materials to withstand hurricanes.

5. A few ______ children are born with exceptional musical talent.

6. Some ______ the children in Mr. McFarlane's music class are playing in a recital.

7. Most ______ people like to hear compliments.

8. My cousin won a million ______ dollars on a game show.

9. Many ______ places in the world use wind as a source of energy. Some ______ these places supply energy to thousands ______ homes and businesses.

10. There was hardly any ______ rain this spring. As a result, hardly any ______ my flowers bloomed.

11. To form the plural of most ______ the words in English, we add an -s or -es at the end. Not every word forms its plural in this way, however. Some ______ words have irregular endings.
Practice 31. Chapter review.

Complete the crossword puzzle. Use the clues under the puzzle and the words in the list. All the words in the puzzle are from the charts in Chapter 7. All the sentences are well-known sayings in English.

Across
3. ______ good things must come to an end.
4. You can’t make an omelet without breaking ______ eggs.
6. A ______ is known by his friends.
8. ______ cloud has a silver lining.

Down
1. ______ heads are better than one.
2. ______ picture is worth a thousand words.
3. ______ apple a day keeps the doctor away.
5. When the cat’s away, the ______ will play.
6. Too ______ cooks spoil the broth.
7. Dead ______ tell no tales.
Practice 1. Personal pronouns. (Chart 8-1)
Draw a circle around each pronoun that has an antecedent. Draw an arrow from the pronoun to its antecedent.

1. Bob works for Trans-Ocean Airlines. He flies cargo across the Pacific Ocean.

2. Mr. and Mrs. Nobriega are moving. They have bought a house in the suburbs.

3. There goes my English teacher. Do you know her?

4. The baby just began to walk. She is eleven months old.

5. A new kind of car is being advertised. It runs on a battery.

6. There are two hawks up there on the telephone wire. Do you see them?

7. Sorry, Mr. Frank is not in the office now. Please call him at home.

8. We have a dog and a cat. They are part of our family.

Practice 2. Personal pronouns. (Chart 8-1)
Circle the words in italics that are grammatically correct.

1. Sarah and I/me are taking a yoga class.

2. I'm going to tell you something, but don't tell anyone. It's just between you and I/me.

3. Carlos and Julia were at the movies together. I saw they/them. They/Them were holding hands.

4. Where are my papers? I left it/Them right here on the table.

5. I have my/mine problems, and you have your/yours.

6. Jim and Helena both work from home. He works at he/his computer all day, and she works at her/hers. At five o'clock sharp they both stop they/their work.

7. My aunt is only five years older than I am. She and I/Her and me are very close. We are like sisters. Our/Ours friends and relatives treat our/us like sisters.

8. I studied Latin when I was in high school. Of course, nobody speaks Latin today, but Latin was very useful to me/I. Because I understand it/its grammar, I can understand grammar in other languages. And my vocabulary is bigger because of it/its too.

9. When baby giraffes are born, they/its are six feet tall, taller than the average person. They/It sometimes grow an inch a day, and they double its/their height in one year.
10. Did you know Mauna Kea in Hawaii is actually the tallest mountain in the world? If you measure it from (its / it’s) base at the bottom of the Pacific Ocean to (its / it’s) peak, it has a height of 33,476 feet (10,203 meters). (Its / It’s) taller than Mount Everest.

Practice 3. Personal pronouns: agreement with generic nouns and indefinite pronouns. (Chart 8-2)

Circle the letter of the correct completions. In some sentences, both choices are correct.

1. All students must bring ____ books to class every day.
   a. his           b. their

2. Each girl in the class must bring ____ books to class every day.
   a. her           b. his or her

3. Everyone on the tennis team must leave ____ cell phone number with the coach.
   a. his or her    b. their

4. Everybody on the men’s bowling team brings ____ own bowling ball to the bowling alley.
   a. his           b. his or her

5. Everyone should know how to do ____ job.
   a. his or her    b. their

6. Girls, whose keys are these? Somebody left ____ keys on the table.
   a. their         b. her

   a. his           b. their

Practice 4. Personal pronouns: agreement with collective nouns. (Charts 8-2 and 8-3)

Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the list. You may use an item more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>her</th>
<th>his</th>
<th>his or her</th>
<th>its</th>
<th>their</th>
<th>them</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Tonight’s audience is special. Everyone in _________ is a member of the fire department or the police department. The show is being performed especially for _________.

2. When the play was over, the audience arose from _________ seats and applauded wildly.

3. The actors bowed to the audience’s applause. The leading man took _________ bow first, and then the leading lady took _________ bow.

4. The faculty of the philosophy department is very small. In fact, _________ has only two professors. _________ share an office.

5. Well, Mia, I’m sorry you’re having problems. Everyone has _________ problems, goodness knows!
6. A notice sent home with each girl on the girls’ volleyball team said: “The girls’ volleyball team is playing at Cliffside on Friday of this week. This will be __________ final game of the season. Each girl must have a signed consent form for a field trip from __________ mother or father.”

7. Instructions on an application for admission to a university said: “Each student must submit __________ application by December 1st. The admissions committee will render __________ final decision before April 1st.”

Practice 5. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)
Complete the sentences with appropriate reflexive pronouns.

1. In our creative writing class, we all had to write short biographies of __________.

2. Anna wrote a biography of ____________.

3. Tom wrote a biography of ____________.

4. Larry and Harry, who are twins, wrote biographies of ____________, but surprisingly, they were not similar.

5. I wrote a biography of ____________.

6. After our teacher had read them all, he asked us, “Did all of you enjoy writing about ____________?”

7. One student replied. He said, “Well, yes, I think we did. But now we would like to know something about you. Will you tell us about ____________?”

Practice 6. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)
Complete the sentences with one of the words or phrases from the list, and add a reflexive pronoun.

feeling sorry for help ✓ is angry at pat
fix introduce laugh at talks to

1. John overslept and missed his plane to San Francisco. Now he ____________ is angry at himself ____________ for not checking his alarm clock before going to bed.

2. I didn’t know anyone at the party. I stood alone for a while; then I decided to walk over to an interesting-looking person and ____________ to him.

3. Sue, please ____________ to some more cake. And would you like some more coffee?

4. You did a great job, team. You should all ____________ on the back for playing the game so well.

5. Sabrina is a lonely little girl. She doesn’t have any brothers or sisters, or live near any friends. Sometimes she ____________ or to an imaginary friend.
6. The sink is not going to ______________. We have to call a plumber to repair it.

7. Come on, Kim. Don’t be so hard on yourself. Everyone makes mistakes. We have to ______________ sometimes and keep a sense of humor!

8. I told Tommy he couldn’t buy a new toy today. He’s mad at me. He’s in his bedroom ______________.

► Practice 7. Using you, one, and they as impersonal pronouns. (Chart 8-5)
Choose the correct pronoun to complete each sentence. Write the letter of the pronoun.

1. People make New Year’s resolutions at the beginning of a new year. They promise ___ that they will do something to improve their well-being, or to benefit their community or the world.
   a. them    b. oneself    c. themselves

2. One should be honest with ___.
   a. one    b. oneself    c. yourself

3. Parents tell their children, “You should be polite to ___ elders.”
   a. your    b. one’s    c. their

4. How do ___ start this car?
   a. you    b. one    c. he

5. How does ___ make a complaint in this store? Is there a customer-service department?
   a. you    b. they    c. one

6. If you are a student, ___ can get a discount at shops in the mall.
   a. they    b. you    c. one

7. Students can get discounts at the mall. ___ just have to show their student ID.
   a. They    b. Themselves    c. One

► Practice 8. Forms of other. (Chart 8-6)
Complete each sentence. Write the letter of the correct form of other.

1. One of the biggest problems in the world is global warming. ___ problem is AIDS.
   a. Another    b. The another    c. Other

2. Some cities have strict anti-pollution laws, but ___ cities do not.
   a. other    b. others    c. the others

3. New York is a multilingual city. In addition to English, many people speak Spanish. ___ speak French, Chinese, Portuguese, or Russian.
   a. Others    b. Other    c. Another

4. In addition to these languages, there are 40 ___ languages spoken in New York City, according to the U.S. Census Bureau.
   a. other    b. others    c. another

5. Istanbul lies on both sides of the Straits of Bosporus. One side is in Europe, and ___ side is in Asia.
   a. another    b. the other    c. other
6. There are 47 countries in Africa. Of these, 35 countries have coastlines. ____ do not have coastlines; they are landlocked.
   a. Others  
   b. The other  
   c. The others

7. There are several countries that have a king or a queen. One is Thailand. ____ is England.
   a. Another  
   b. The other  
   c. The another

8. There are a few ____ countries that have a king or a queen, but I can’t remember which ones.
   a. others  
   b. other  
   c. another

9. Scandinavia consists of four countries. One is Denmark. ____ are Finland, Norway, and Sweden.
   a. The other  
   b. The others  
   c. Others

10. Canada has ten provinces. French is the official language of Quebec province. English is the language of ____ provinces.
    a. others  
    b. another  
    c. the other

11. Washington is one of the five states of the United States with borders on the Pacific Ocean. What are ____ states?*
    a. other  
    b. the other  
    c. the others

► Practice 9. Forms of other. (Chart 8-6)
Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. A: How much longer until we get home?
   B: We’re almost there. We have (other / another) twenty minutes.

2. A: This road is expensive! I see we have to pay more money at the next toll booth.
   B: Right. I think we have to pay (another / others) three dollars.

3. A: So you didn’t buy that house way out in the country?
   B: No, it’s too far from work. I have to drive ten miles to work now. I don’t want to add (another / the another) ten miles to the trip.

4. A: I heard you moved out of your apartment.
   B: That’s right. They raised the rent by 100 euros. I didn’t want to pay (other / another) 100 euros.

5. A: How was the test?
   B: I am sure that I failed. I didn’t finish. I needed (the other / another) ten or fifteen minutes to finish.

6. A: Who won the game?
   B: The other team. In the last minute of the game, our team scored six points, not enough to win; we needed (another / other) eight points.

*See the Answer Key for the answer to this question.
Practice 10. Common expressions with other. (Chart 8-7)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a phrase from Column B.

**Column A**

1. John loves Mary and Mary loves John. They love ____.  
   a. every other  
   b. after another  
   c. the other day  
   d. each other  
   e. in other words  
   f. other than

2. Nobody in my class understands this poem ____ Ron, who seems to understand everything.
   a. every other  
   b. after another  
   c. the other day  
   d. each other  
   e. in other words  
   f. other than

3. The discussion group doesn’t meet every week; it meets ____ week, that is, twice a month.
   a. every other  
   b. after another  
   c. the other day  
   d. each other  
   e. in other words  
   f. other than

4. A tiger is a feline; ____, it’s a cat, a big cat.
   a. every other  
   b. after another  
   c. the other day  
   d. each other  
   e. in other words  
   f. other than

5. The children jumped into the water one by one, in a line, one ____.
   a. every other  
   b. after another  
   c. the other day  
   d. each other  
   e. in other words  
   f. other than

   He seemed happy.
   a. every other  
   b. after another  
   c. the other day  
   d. each other  
   e. in other words  
   f. other than

Practice 11. Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 → 8)
Correct the errors. The first paragraph has 4 errors. The second paragraph has 12 errors. The third paragraph has 13 errors.

(1) The potatoes are grown in most country. They are one of the most widely grown vegetable in the world. They are very versatile; they can be prepared in many different way.

(2) French fry are popular almost everywhere. Besides frying it, you can boil or bake potato. Other way people use potatoes is to make potato flour for bread and another kinds of dishes. Its also possible to make alcoholic beverages from potato. There are still others ways potatoes are used by commercial food processor to make product such as potatoes chips and freeze-dried potato.

(3) Potato originated in South America, where it were cultivated by the Incas as early as 5,000 year ago. It is believed that potatoes were the worlds first freeze-dried food. Over 4,000 years ago, the Incas carried his harvested potato up into the mountains and spread them on the ground to freeze overnight. The next day, after sun came up and heated the potatoes, the Incas squeezed the water out of them by stepping on it. This process were repeated for four or five day until almost all the moisture was gone from the potatoes. The Incas then dried the potatoes and stored it in pot. An Indians of South America still do this today.
Practice 1. Basic modal introduction. (Chart 9-1)
Correct the errors in verb forms. Not all sentences have errors.

1. He can to hear it.
2. He can hear it.
3. He can heard it.
4. Can you help me?
5. Do you can help me?
6. They can’t help me.
7. He oughts to help you.
8. He is able to help you.
9. He supposed to help you.
10. They have to do it.
11. We have got to do it.
12. She should to tell the truth.

Practice 2. Polite requests with "I" as the subject; polite requests with "you" as the subject. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)
Complete the sentences with a phrase from the list. Write the letter of the phrase that fits the sentence.

a. Can I help you
d. Could you please repeat
b. Can you hurry
e. May I borrow
c. could you help me f. Would you please give me

1. A: Omigosh! I've lost my passport. Rick, ___ find it?
   B: OK. I'll be right there.

   B: ____ , Jenny? Maybe I can find it for you.

3. A: I'm sorry. Mr. Robbins isn't in today. Do you want to leave a message on his voice mail?
   B: Well, it's very important. ____ his cell phone number?

4. A: ____ your dictionary, please?
   B: Sure.

5. A: OK, sir. I'll be there some time today to fix your refrigerator.
   B: ____ , please? All the food is melting fast!

6. A: Students, do you understand the assignment?
   B: Not really, Dr. Johnson. ____ what you said?
Practice 3. Polite requests with *Would you mind.* (Chart 9-4)

Complete the sentences with *if I* + the present tense or the *-ing* form of the verb.

1. a. I want you to cook dinner. Would you mind ____ cooking ____ dinner?
   b. I want to cook dinner. Would you mind ____ if I cooked ____ dinner?

2. a. We want you to take us to the airport. Would you mind ____________ us to the airport?
   b. We want to take you to the airport. Would you mind ____________ you to the airport?

3. a. I want to open the windows. Would you mind ____________ the windows?
   b. I want you to open the windows. Would you mind ____________ the windows?

4. a. We want you to join us for lunch. Would you mind ____________ us for lunch?
   b. We want to join you for lunch. Would you mind ____________ you for lunch?

5. a. I want you to write a letter to the boss. Would you mind ____________ a letter to the boss?
   b. I want to write a letter to the boss. Would you mind ____________ a letter to the boss?

Practice 4. Polite requests with *Would you mind.* (Chart 9-4)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Write *if I* + the past tense or the *-ing* form of the verb. In some sentences, either response is possible, but the meaning is different.

1. A: It’s cold in here. Would you mind *(close)* ____________ the window?
   B: Not at all. I’d be glad to.

2. A: It’s cold in here. Would you mind *(close)* ____________ if I closed ____________ the window?
   B: Not at all. Go right ahead. I think it’s cold in here too.

3. A: You’re going to the library? Would you mind *(take)* ____________ this book back to the library for me?
   B: Not at all.

4. A: I’m not feeling well at all. Would you mind *(go)* ____________ home now?
   B: Oh, I’m sorry. I hope you can come back when you feel better.

5. A: I’m not feeling well at all. Would you mind *(leave)* ____________ now before the visiting hours are over?
   B: Oh, of course not. We shouldn’t stay more than a short time for a hospital visit anyway.

   B: I’d be happy to. About what time do you think you’ll be home?
7. A: We have a lot of chicken left over from dinner last night. Would you mind (make) __________ a chicken salad from the leftovers for dinner tonight?  
B: No, that'll be good. You make a great chicken salad.

8. A: I'm feeling kind of worn out. Chopping wood in the hot sun is hard on me. Would you mind (finish) _______________ the work yourself?  
B: No problem, Grandpa. Why don't you go in and rest? I'll finish up.

9. A: Would you mind (use) ______________ your name as a reference on this job application?  
B: Not at all. In fact, ask them to call me.

10. A: I'd like to apply for the job as department manager. Would you mind (recommend) ______________ me to the boss?  
B: No. As a matter of fact, I was thinking of recommending you myself.

---

**Practice 5. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition.**  
 *(Charts 9-5 and 9-6)*

Read the statements. Then check the box that describes each item.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Necessity</th>
<th>Lack of Necessity</th>
<th>Prohibition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Taxpayers must pay their taxes by April 15th.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. You must not touch electrical wires.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Students don't have to register on campus. They can register by computer.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. We've got to hurry! We don't want to miss our flight!</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. You don't have to pay for the car all at once. You can pay month by month.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Passengers must show their boarding passes and their IDs when they go through security.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. A person has to be seventeen years old to obtain a driver's license in many states.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Doctors have to graduate from medical school and pass special exams before they can practice medicine.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Soldiers must not disobey a superior officer.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Nobody has to come to work tomorrow! The company has given everybody a day off.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 6. Past tense of must and have to. (Chart 9-5)
Rewrite the sentences using the past tense.

1. I must be on time for my job interview.

2. The students have to memorize 100 new words a week.

3. Sylvia has to cancel her summer vacation. She has too much work to do.

4. Who do you have to call?

5. The children must get vaccinations.

6. The passengers have to fasten their seat belts because of the turbulent weather.

Practice 7. Expressing necessity and prohibition. (Charts 9-5 and 9-6)
Write the letter of the correct word or phrase.

1. Plants ____ have water in order to live.
   a. must       b. don’t have to    c. must not

2. A lot of people ____ leave their homes to go to work. They can work from their home offices.
   a. must       b. don’t have to    c. must not

3. To stay alive, people ____ breathe oxygen.
   a. must       b. don’t have to    c. must not

4. People who have diabetes will have serious health problems if they eat foods with a lot of sugar.
   They ____ eat foods with a lot of sugar.
   a. must       b. don’t have to    c. must not

5. A salesperson ____ motivate people to buy his/her product.
   a. has to     b. doesn’t have to   c. must not

6. You ____ finish your work on this project before you go on vacation. Your job is at risk.
   a. must       b. must not         c. don’t have to

7. My room is a mess, but I ____ clean it before I go out tonight. I can do it in the morning.
   a. have got to b. must not         c. don’t have to

8. I ____ get some help with my statistics course. If I don’t, I won’t pass it.
   a. have got to b. must not         c. don’t have to

9. Yoko ____ study for her English tests. She understands everything without studying.
   a. has to     b. must not         c. doesn’t have to

10. Everywhere in the world, stealing is against the law. People ____ steal.
    a. must       b. must not         c. don’t have to
Practice 8. Verb form review: have to. (Charts 9-5 and 9-6)
Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of have to. Include any words in parentheses.

1. Richard travels to Russia on business frequently. Luckily, he speaks Russian, so he (not) _________________ rely on an interpreter when he’s there.

2. Jackie _________________ go to an important meeting in Sydney last month.

3. I (not) _________________ water the garden later today. Joe has agreed to do it for me.

4. I _________________ write three term papers for my history class last semester.

5. Matt has been nearsighted all his life. He _________________ wear glasses even when he was a child.

6. In your country, _________________ children _________________ attend school?

7. Years ago, there weren’t laws to keep children in school. If poor families needed the money, children _________________ work to contribute income to the family. Children (not) _________________ stay in school in those days.

8. High school graduates (not) _________________ attend college, but of course, many want to.

9. Anyone who wants to drive a truck _________________ get a special truck driver’s license.

10. A: You’re leaving so early!
    B: Yes. I’m sorry. I _________________ finish some work for tomorrow before I go to bed tonight.

Practice 9. Advisability: should, ought to, had better. (Chart 9-7)
Which sentence in each pair has a stronger meaning? Circle the letter.

1. a. I should study.
   b. I’d better study.

2. a. You must turn right here.
   b. You should turn right here.

3. a. He’s got to get a warmer jacket.
   b. He ought to get a warmer jacket.

4. a. You should get new tires for your car.
   b. You’d better get new tires for your car.

5. a. They shouldn’t say those words.
   b. They must not say those words.

6. a. Jane had better not tell anyone about this.
   b. Jane shouldn’t tell anyone about this.

7. a. You must not drink the water here.
   b. You shouldn’t drink the water here.

8. a. We don’t have to vote for John Turner.
   b. We shouldn’t vote for John Turner.

Practice 10. Advisability: should, ought to, had better. (Chart 9-7)
Cross out the ideas that are not good advice for each situation, or are not relevant to the situation.

1. José wants to lose weight.
   a. He should exercise regularly.
   b. He should eat a lot of sweets.
   c. He should go on a diet.
2. Ludmila wants to go to medical school in a few years.
   a. She should study poetry now.
   b. She should take science and math courses now.
   c. She should start saving money for tuition.

3. Ikira is a concert pianist.
   a. He should take good care of his hands.
   b. He should go bowling often.
   c. He should visit his grandmother often.

4. Mia is failing her math class.
   a. She should drink a lot of black coffee.
   b. She should get a tutor to help her.
   c. She should study more.

5. Beth wants her flowers to grow.
   a. She should water them.
   b. She should take any weeds out of her garden.
   c. She should give the flowers plant food as directed.

6. Ira sprained his ankle.
   a. He should practice standing on it.
   b. He should rest his ankle.
   c. He should put ice on it.

► Practice 11. **Should, ought to, had better.** (Chart 9-7)
Give advice to the people in the following situations. Write the letter of the piece of advice that fits each situation.

   a. call home and talk to his family quite often
   b. change his clothes before he goes
   c. clean it up right away
   d. get his roommate a set of earphones
   e. join some clubs to meet people with similar interests
   f. make her own decisions about her career
   g. stop for gas as soon as we see a station
   h. take it back now so you won’t have to pay any more money

1. Ann would like to make some new friends. She should ____.
2. We’re running out of gas! We had better ____.
3. Sam and Tim, both teenagers, have messed up the house, and their parents are coming home soon. They had better ____.
4. You are going to have to pay a fine because your library book is overdue. You ought to ____.
5. Ron is wearing jeans. He has to go to a formal reception this evening. He had better ____.
6. Mary’s parents expect her to work in the family business, a shoe store, but she is an adult and wants to be an architect. She should ____.
7. Richard’s roommate, Charlie, stays up very late studying. While Charlie is studying, he listens to loud music, and Richard can’t get to sleep. Richard ought to ____.
8. Pierre is feeling really homesick these days. He should ____.
Practice 12. The past form of should. (Chart 9-8)
Give advice about the situation using the past form of should. Complete each sentence with a verb from the list. Use any words in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>change</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>order</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>visit</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. A: We’re having hamburgers? I thought you were cooking a turkey for the holiday.
   B: Well, I did, but I cooked it for too long. It burned up in the oven! I ________________ it out after three hours, but I forgot.

2. A: Where are we? Are we lost?
   B: I think we are. We ________________ left instead of right at the last intersection.

3. A: I’m tired this morning! What time did we finally go to bed last night?
   B: Around 2:00 A.M. We (not) ________________ that late movie.

4. A: Is Lionel angry at you?
   B: He is. I ________________ his mother when she was so sick, but I didn’t.

5. A: Beautiful shoes! Where did you buy them?
   B: I bought them at Norwalk’s, but I ________________ them at Pansy’s Discount Store. They were a lot cheaper there.

6. A: How was dinner at Henri’s?
   B: Not so good. I had the fish, but it didn’t taste fresh. I ________________ something else.

7. A: Why are you upset with Frank?
   B: He came to work today with his terrible cold, coughing and sneezing all over us! He (not) ________________ to work today. He ________________ home.

8. A: Are you glad you took the new job?
   B: No, actually, I’m not. I (not) ________________ jobs. I ________________ my old job.

Practice 13. Present and past forms of should. (Charts 9-7 and 9-8)
Give advice in each situation. Complete each sentence with the present or past form of should and the verb in parentheses.

1. Travel broadens one’s horizons. Everyone (travel) ________________.

2. We did not travel to Africa when we had the opportunity last year. We (go) ________________
   ________________ at that time.
3. Our house will look much better with a fresh coat of paint. It will look good in a yellow color.
   I think we (paint) ______________ our house, and the color (be) ____________ yellow.

4. We painted our house. Now it’s white and has beige shutters. It doesn’t look good. We
   (not, paint) ______________ our house in such dull colors.

5. Ernie is allergic to shellfish. Last night he ate shellfish, and he broke out with terrible hives.
   Ernie (not, eat) ______________ that shellfish.

6. Some people are sensitive to caffeine. They cannot fall asleep at night if they drink coffee in
   the afternoon. These people (not, drink) ______________ coffee after 12:00
   P.M. They (drink) ______________ decaffeinated coffee or tea instead.

7. Years ago, people did not realize that some species were dying off because of human activity.
   For example, many buffalo in North America were killed because of human thoughtlessness.
   As a result, there are few buffalo left in North America. People (not, kill) ______________
   ______________ those buffalo.

8. Today, people are making efforts to save the environment and to save endangered species. We
   (make) ______________ strong efforts to recycle, conserve our resources, and
   nourish endangered species.

► Practice 14. Obligation: be supposed to. (Chart 9 - 9)

Rewrite the sentences. Use a form of be supposed to + verb.

1. Allen is expected to arrive at seven o’clock. Will he?
   Allen ______________ at seven o’clock. Will he?

2. I’m expected to go hiking with Beth on Saturday, but I’d really rather sleep late.
   I ______________ hiking with Beth on Saturday, but I’d really rather sleep late.

3. The weather is expected to be nice over the weekend.
   It ______________ nice over the weekend.

4. The plane was expected to arrive at 6:35, but it didn’t.
   The plane ______________ at 6:35, but it didn’t.

5. I was expecting my friends to come over tonight, but they didn’t.
   They ______________ tonight, but they didn’t.

6. Our dog is very independent. We expect him to run to us when we call his name, but he
   completely ignores us.
   Our dog ______________ to us when we call his name, but he completely
   ignores us.
Practice 15. Unfulfilled intentions: was / were going to. (Chart 9-10)
Circle yes if the sentence expresses intention. Circle no if not.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Intention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. We are going to visit our cousins on Saturday.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. We were going to visit our cousins on Saturday, but Jack got sick.</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Ann was going down the stairs when she fell down and sprained her ankle.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I had planned to finish writing this document tonight, but I couldn’t.</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I was going to finish writing this document tonight, but I can’t.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I was just finishing the document when my computer crashed.</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I had planned to wash my car, but it rained.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I was going to wash my car, but it rained.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I was washing my car when it began to rain.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. I was going to the car wash when it began to rain.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 16. Obligation: be supposed to and unfulfilled intentions: was / were going to. (Charts 9-9 and 9-10)
Complete the sentences with a logical phrase from the list. Write the letter of the phrase.

a. he’ll be late  
b. I didn’t want to upset you  
c. I fell asleep  
d. it’s already two hours late  
e. she lost her voice  
f. the audience was applauding wildly  
g. the bus broke down  
h. the weather report was terrible  
i. there was no lettuce in the fridge  
j. they saw a train wreck

1. The plane was supposed to arrive at noon, but _____.
2. The students were going to go by bus to the TV station, but _____.
3. Tim was supposed to be here by 6:00, but _____.
4. The students were going by bus to the TV station when _____.
5. I was going to tell you the bad news, but _____.
6. Elena was going to sing at the concert, but _____.
7. Jenny was singing at the concert, and _____.
8. I was planning to watch the movie from beginning to end, but _____.
9. Dan was going to make a salad, but _____.
10. We were going to go sailing last weekend, but _____.

Practice 17. Making suggestions: could vs. should. (Chart 9-12)
Write could or should as appropriate.

1. PATIENT: I don’t know what to do about my noisy neighbors. They play their music so loud that it’s driving me crazy.

PSYCHOLOGIST: Well, you ________________ play your own music louder, or you ________________ call the police.

PATIENT: No, seriously. I don’t like those ideas. I want you to give me some good advice.
PSYCHOLOGIST: OK, if you insist. Then I think you ____________ try to talk to them about the situation in a nonthreatening manner. That’s the best way.

PATIENT: I agree. That’s exactly what I ____________ do, and I will.

2. WAITER: Good evening. My name is Walter, and I’ll be your server tonight.
CARL: Good evening. What kind of fish is fresh tonight?
WAITER: The snapper is excellent. It’s the best.
CARL: Well, I ____________ order snapper, but . . . do you have wild salmon? I ____________ order that, perhaps, or . . .
WAITER: The snapper is out of this world. You ____________ have the snapper.
CARL: OK, if you say that I ____________ have the snapper, I will take your advice. I’ll have the snapper with lemon and garlic.

3. SAM: The bridge is closed for repairs. How can we get across the lake into the city?
MARY: Well, you ____________ take the Lincoln Bridge — that’s five miles south of here, or you ____________ drive north about fifteen miles and take the Longman Tunnel.
BOB: No, no, those routes are too long and not scenic. Here’s what you ____________ do, Sam: You ____________ drive north for about thirty miles, and head east. You’ll be entirely north of the lake then, and you won’t need a bridge.

Practice 18. Chapter review.
Correct the modal verb errors.

1. Our teacher can to speak five languages.
2. Oh, this table is heavy! Jim, may you help me move it?
3. We come to class on weekdays. We are not have to come to class on weekends.
5. When you speak in court, you must to tell the truth. You must not tell lies.
6. Pat looks tired. She should gets some rest.
7. I wanted tickets for the concert, but they were all sold out. I should ordered them sooner.
8. The children are suppose to be in bed by nine o’clock.
9. The Garcias supposed to be here at 7:00, but I think they will be late, as usual.
10. We’re going to make chicken for dinner. Why you don’t join us?
11. Here’s my advice about your diet, Mr. Jackson. You could not eat a lot of sugar and salt.
12. A: This is wonderful music. Will we dance?
   B: No, let’s don’t dance. Let’s just sit here and talk.
### Practice 1. Degrees of certainty: must and may / might / could. (Chart 10-1)

How certain is the speaker when making each of the following remarks? Check the appropriate box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>100%</th>
<th>About 95%</th>
<th>About 50% or less</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Charlotte might be home by now.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Phil must be home now.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Mr. Brown’s at home now.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lilly must know the answer to this question.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Fred might have the answer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Shelley knows the answer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Those people must have a lot of money.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. You may remember me from high school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. We could be related!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Traffic might be heavy on the interstate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practice 2. Degrees of certainty: must and may / might / could. (Chart 10-1)

Circle the letter of the correct word to complete each sentence. In some sentences, both are correct.

1. A: Drive slowly! This is a school zone. Children are crossing the street here.
   B: It ____ be three o’clock. That’s the time that school is out.
   a. must          b. might

2. A: Professor McKeon says that we’re going to have a very high inflation rate next year.
   B: He ____ be right. He knows more about economics than anyone I know.
   a. must          b. could

3. A: Have you heard anything from Ed? Is he still on safari in Africa?
   B: He ____ be, or he ____ already be on his way home. I’m just not sure.
   a. must ... must    b. may ... may
4. A: Is that a famous celebrity over there in the middle of that crowd?
   B: It ____ be. She’s signing autographs.
   a. must                 b. might

5. A: Isn’t Peter Reeves a banker?
   B: Yes. Why don’t you talk to him? He ____ be able to help you with your loan.
   a. must                 b. may

6. A: Is Margaret’s daughter sixteen yet?
   B: She ____ be. I saw her driving a car, and you have to be at least sixteen to get a driver’s license.
   a. must                 b. might

7. A: Overall, don’t you think the possibility of world peace is greater now than ever before?
   B: It ____ be. I don’t know. Political relationships can be fragile.
   a. must                 b. may

8. A: What’s the matter with my son, doctor? Why does he cough and sneeze every day?
   B: He’s allergic to something. It ____ dust in the house, or certain foods, or pollen in the air, or something else. It’s hard to know, so we’ll do some tests to find out.
   a. must be              b. may be

9. A: The speedometer on my car is broken. Do you think I’m driving over the speed limit?
   B: I can’t tell. It doesn’t seem like it, but you ____.
   a. must be              b. could be

10. A: You’ve been on the go all day. Aren’t you exhausted?
    B: Yes, I _____. I can’t remember when I’ve ever been this worn out.
        a. am                      b. must be

11. A: I thought this movie was a comedy!
    B: Me too, but it ____ sad. Look at the people leaving the theater. A lot of them are crying.
        a. might be              b. must be

12. A: How old do you think Roger is?
    B: I just saw his driver’s license. He ____ 33.
        a. could be              b. is

**Practice 3. Degrees of certainty: present time negative.** (Chart 10-2)
Complete the sentences with the correct phrase from the list. Write the letter of the phrase.

   a. can’t be him                d. may not speak
   b. can’t be true              e. must not get
   c. may not be               f. must not like

1. A: I can’t hear the singers! That man sitting behind us is snoring in his sleep!  
   B: I hear him! He ____ opera.

96  CHAPTER 10  www.languagecentre.ir
2. A: Look! Isn’t that our history professor over there? In the yellow sweater!
   B: No, that ___. He’s in Tokyo this week, giving a presentation.

3. A: This coffee doesn’t taste very good. It’s supposed to be 100 percent Arabica.
   B: It ___ 100 percent Arabica. Maybe they mixed it with something else. Maybe it’s a blend.

4. A: Who is that woman standing alone over there? She isn’t talking to anyone.
   B: Well, she ___ any English. Or maybe she’s very shy. Anyway, let’s go over and try to talk to her.

5. A: Jane has been accepted at Harvard, I heard.
   B: No way! That ___. She isn’t even a good student.

6. A: Did you see the new pickup truck that Mario’s driving?
   B: I sure did. It’s very big. It ___ good gas mileage.

**Practice 4. Degrees of certainty: past time. (Chart 10-3)**
Which sentence describes the given sentences? Circle the correct letter.

1. The little boy is crying. His knees are scraped and bleeding.
   a. He may have fallen down.
   b. He must have fallen down.

2. Someone called, but I don’t know who it was. Maybe it was Alice, but I’m not sure.
   a. It may have been Alice.
   b. It must have been Alice.

3. Nobody’s answering the phone at Juan’s apartment. I guess he has already left for the airport. He always likes to get to the airport early, you know.
   a. He might have already left for the airport.
   b. He must have already left for the airport.

4. I’ve lost track of my old friend Lola from high school. Maybe she moved away. Maybe she got married and has a different last name.
   a. She could have moved away.
   b. She must have moved away.

5. Irv looks unhappy today. Maybe his boss criticized him. Maybe he had an argument with his girlfriend. Maybe he lost a lot of money in the stock market.
   a. Irv might have had an argument with his girlfriend.
   b. Irv must have had an argument with his girlfriend.

6. I told Charles — only Charles — about my secret engagement, but now everyone is congratulating me! It’s clear that Charles can’t keep a secret.
   a. Charles may have told everyone.
   b. Charles must have told everyone.
Practice 5. Degrees of certainty: past time negative.  (Chart 10-3)
Write the past negative of an appropriate modal and the verb in parentheses.

1. Ann: I’ve called Howard ten times, I’m sure. He doesn’t answer his cell phone.
   Sam: He (remember) __________________________ you were going to call him.
   He’s a little forgetful, you know. I’ll bet he forgot to turn his phone on.

2. Lawyer: Mr. Jones, where were you on the night of June 24th?
   Mr. Jones: I was at home. I was at home all night.
   Lawyer: You (be) __________________________ at home on that night, Mr.
   Jones. Four witnesses saw you at the victim’s apartment.

3. Jim: Look! There are lights on in the Thompsons’ house. Didn’t they go away on vacation?
   Ann: They (leave) __________________________ yet. Or maybe they left the
   automatic timer on to deter burglars.

4. Bob: Hey, you guys! You are not supposed to ride your bikes on the sidewalk! You could
   crash into someone!
   Sue: They (hear) __________________________ you, Bob. Look! They just kept
   going.

5. Scientists are not sure why the Mayan civilization collapsed. The Mayans (have)
   __________________________ enough to eat, or perhaps their enemies became too
   strong for them.

6. After his voyage on the Kon Tiki, Thor Heyerdahl set forth the theory that modern Polynesians
   descended from ancient South Americans. However, later scientists believe this (happen)
   __________________________. They believe it was impossible because of recent
   DNA evidence to the contrary.

Practice 6. Degrees of certainty: present and past time.  (Charts 10-1 → 10-3)
Complete the dialogues with must and the verb in parentheses. Use the correct present or past
form. Use not if necessary.

1. A: You got here in twenty minutes! You (drive) __________________________ really fast.
   Normally it’s a forty-minute drive.
   B: No faster than usual.
2. A: Sally gave a speech at her graduation. I think I saw tears in her parents’ eyes.
B: Oh, that is touching. They (be) __________________________ very proud of her.

3. A: That’s strange. Oscar didn’t come to the meeting. He never misses a meeting.
B: He (know) __________________________ about it. He was out of town all last week, and probably no one told him.

4. A: How old do you think our teacher is?
B: Well, she was a couple of years ahead of my father in college, so she (be) __________________________ around 55 now.

5. A: Uh-oh! I can’t find my credit card.
B: You (leave) __________________________ it at the cash register at the grocery store.

6. A: Have you seen Clark? I can’t find him anywhere.
B: He was feeling terrible. He (go) __________________________ home a while ago.

7. A: Look! Do you see that big bird on top of the tree?
B: What big bird?
A: You can’t see that? You (need) __________________________ stronger glasses.

8. A: What happened to your knee?
B: I twisted it very badly in the tennis match.
A: Oh! That (hurt) __________________________ a lot!

**Practice 7. Must have vs. had to.** (Charts 9-5 and 10-3)
Circle the letter of the correct response.

1. ANN: Why didn’t you come to the party?
   BOB:  a. I had to study.
   b. I must have studied.

2. SAM: Where’s Sally? She’s still not here?
   DAN:  a. She must have overslept.
   b. She had to oversleep.

3. IRA: Thomas missed an important meeting this morning.
   JAN:  a. I just spoke with him and he’s very sick. He told me he...
   a. had to go to the doctor’s.
   b. must have gone to the doctor’s.

4. BUD: We’re out of coffee again.
   TOM:  a. Jane must have forgotten to get some.
   b. Jane had to forget to get some.

5. PAT: How were you able to stay awake during that long, boring lecture?
   ONA:  a. It was difficult!
   a. I must have drunk a lot of coffee!
   b. I had to drink a lot of coffee!

6. LIL: I can’t sleep again!
   MAX:  a. You must have drunk too much coffee today.
   b. You had to drink too much coffee today.
Practice 8. Degrees of certainty: future time. (Chart 10-4)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a phrase from Column B.

**Column A**

1. Keiko has always loved animals. She’s in veterinary school now. She should _____.
2. Most apple trees bear fruit about five years after planting. Our apple tree is four years old. It should _____.
3. Aunt Ella’s plane arrived an hour ago. She’s taking a taxi, so she should _____.
4. We could invest this money in a conservative stock fund. If we do that, we should _____.
5. Ali should _____. He’s been studying hard for it all semester.
6. The little horse is growing very fast. He should _____.
7. Bake the fish in the oven at 350 degrees. It should _____.
8. Take this medicine every morning. You should _____.
9. Luis is taking a heavy course load. He wants to finish school quickly. He should _____.
10. The mechanic is fixing the car now. It should _____.

**Column B**

a. be here just in time for dinner
b. do very well on the final exam
c. feel better
d. double his weight
e. make a great veterinarian
f. have about 5 percent more
g. be fixed before five o’clock
h. graduate next June
i. be moist and tender
j. give us some apples

Practice 9. Degrees of certainty: future time. (Charts 4-2, 10-1, and 10-4)
Circle the correct word.

1. Today is Monday. Tomorrow (should / will) be Tuesday.
2. Hello, Jack. This is Arturo in the tech department. I’m working on your computer now. Good news — I can fix it pretty easily and it (should / must) be ready by 5:00 P.M. today.
3. My son’s birthday is next month. He (should / will) be two years old.
4. It’s ten minutes to four. The next bus (must / should) arrive at four o’clock. The buses usually stop here every hour on the hour.
5. A: Don’t be late! They won’t let you into the theater after the play begins.
   B: OK. I (will / should) be at the theater at 7:15. I promise.
6. Your husband is resting comfortably, Ms. Robbins. I’m giving him some antibiotics, so the infection (must / should) be cleared up by next week.
7. A: Look up there. Is that Mars?
   B: I don’t think so. Mars isn’t visible right now. It (should / must) be Venus. Venus is visible now.
8. A: Who’s going to win the tennis tournament?
   B: Well, the Australian is highly rated, and she (must / should) win, but the Serbian is good too. Maybe she’ll surprise us and win.
Practice 10. Progressive forms of modals. (Chart 10-5)
Complete the sentences. Use the appropriate progressive forms of must, should, or may / might / could and a verb from the list. You may use a verb more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>date</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>hike</th>
<th>kid</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. A: Call Phil. He’s at his office now.
   B: Let’s email him instead. He __________________________ on something important at the moment. Or maybe he’s with a client.

2. A: When will Betty be back from Italy?
   B: Tonight. She __________________________ over the Atlantic at this very moment.

3. A: Helga must know the answer to this problem. Shall we call her?
   B: Not now. It’s 11:00 P.M. She __________________________.

4. A: Listen, I just heard this. Mr. Milner isn’t going to be our teacher anymore. He has joined the navy.
   B: You __________________________! That can’t be true. Who told you that?

5. A: Sara told me that she had won the lottery, and so she invited us all to dinner at Henri’s French restaurant.
   B: Oh, she __________________________ when she said that. She never plays the lottery!

6. A: What do you think Ann’s doing now on her vacation?
   B: Oh, she __________________________ in the mountains. Or maybe she’s relaxing at the pool.

7. A: I was hoping to go out with John, but I heard he’s dating Julia.
   B: Well, he (not) __________________________ Julia anymore. I think that they may have broken up.
1. A: Where’s Angie? Didn’t she come back after lunch?
   B: I’m not sure where she is. But she ____ the presentation that Human Resources is giving right now.
   a. is attending       b. could attend       c. could be attending

2. A: You’re taking Spanish at 8:00 A.M. every day? Why did you choose such an early class?
   B: Because Ms. Cardenas is the teacher. She ____ excellent. I’ve been in the class for a month now, and I don’t mind the early hour.
   a. should be       b. must be       c. is

3. A: The meteorologists predicted five major hurricanes for this hurricane season.
   B: They ____ wrong, you know. Sometimes they make mistakes.
   a. must be       b. might be       c. are

4. A: Is this chicken in the refrigerator still good?
   B: I don’t think so. It’s been in there for over a month! It ____ spoiled by now.
   a. may be       b. must be       c. could be

5. A: Can you tell me if Flight 86 is on time?
   B: It is on time, sir. It ____ at Gate B21 in about five minutes.
   a. might arrive       b. might be arriving       c. should be arriving

6. A: Did you know that Mike got a scholarship to State School of Engineering?
   B: Yes, I know that! I was the first one he told about it. He ____ very happy.
   a. might be       b. must be       c. is

7. A: Did you know that Li received a scholarship to the City School of Music?
   B: No, I didn’t. That’s great news! He ____ very happy.
   a. might be       b. must be       c. is

8. A: Who’s going to win the election?
   B: It’s a close call. The senator ____ with all his experience, but the opposition candidate is stronger than anyone expected.
   a. must win       b. must be winning       c. should win

9. A: Where’s Harold? He’s supposed to be at this meeting. Didn’t Jim tell him about it?
   B: Jim ____ to tell him.
   a. must forget       b. must have forgotten       c. should have forgotten

10. A: This soup has an interesting flavor, but there’s too much salt in it.
    B: Yes, it is too salty. I ____ so much salt in it.
    a. must not have put       b. shouldn’t have put       c. may not have put
Practice 12. Review of modals. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5)

Write modal sentences for the situations.

1. The plane is late, and we didn’t call the airport.
   a. I expect it will arrive soon. ____________________________
      *It should arrive soon.*
   b. Maybe it took off late. ____________________________
      *It may / might / could have taken off late.*
   c. It was a good idea to call the airport, but we didn’t. ____________________________
      *We should have called the airport.*

2. There’s a package in the mail.
   a. Maybe it’s for me. ____________________________
   b. I’m sure it’s for me. ____________________________
   c. It’s impossible that it’s for me. ____________________________

3. Tom didn’t respond to my email.
   a. I expected him to respond. ____________________________
   b. Maybe he didn’t get it. ____________________________
   c. I’m pretty sure he didn’t get it. ____________________________
   d. His email isn’t working. It was impossible for him to get it. ____________________________

4. There’s water all over the kitchen floor.
   a. Perhaps the dishwasher is leaking. ____________________________
   b. The dishwasher is new. It’s impossible that it’s the dishwasher. ____________________________
   c. I’m pretty sure a pipe is broken. ____________________________
   d. It’s a good idea for you to call a plumber. ____________________________
   e. It isn’t necessary for us to call a plumber. ____________________________

Practice 13. Ability: can and could. (Chart 10-6)

Complete the sentences with *can, can’t, could, or couldn’t.*

1. Fish ____________________________ talk.
2. My uncle was a wonderful craftsman. He made beautiful things out of wood. But he ____________________________ read or write because he never went to school.
3. An illiterate person is someone who ____________________________ neither read nor write.
4. I ____________________________ get to sleep last night because it was too hot in my room.
5. Why ____________________________ all the nations of the world just get along in peace? Why are there always wars somewhere on earth?
6. When I was younger, I ____________________________ stay up past midnight and get up at dawn feeling refreshed and ready to go. I ____________________________ do that any longer now that I’m middle-aged.
Practice 14. Repeated action in the past. (Chart 10-7)
Complete the sentences with would and a verb from the list. Use the words in parentheses.

bring  come  fall  listen  sleep  tell  throw  wipe  yell

1. I’ll always remember Miss Emerson, my fifth-grade teacher. Sometimes a student _______________ asleep in her class. Whenever that happened, Miss Emerson _______________ a piece of chalk at the student!

2. My father never liked to talk on the phone. Whenever it rang, he (always) _______________ _______________, “I’m not here!” Usually, he was only joking and _______________ to the phone when it was for him.

3. I have fond childhood memories of my Aunt Betsy. Whenever she came to visit, she (always) _______________ me a little present.

4. Some people have strange habits. For example, my Uncle Oscar, who lived with us when I was a child, (always) _______________ his plate with his napkin whenever he sat down to a meal.

5. When I was in college, I acquired some bad habits. I didn’t study until the night before a test, and then I _______________ up all night studying. Then the next day after the test, I _______________ all afternoon.

6. I’ll never forget the wonderful evenings I spent with my grandparents when I was a child. My grandmother _______________ stories of her childhood seventy years ago, and we _______________ intently and question her for every detail.

Practice 15. Expressing preference: would rather. (Chart 10-8)
Complete the sentences with a form of would rather and a verb from the list. Use the words in parentheses.

eat  go  have  sail  say  study

1. I know you want to know, but I (not) _______________ anything more about this topic. I told Marge that I’d keep it a secret.

2. Last night, I _______________ home right after dinner at the restaurant, but my friends insisted on going back to John’s apartment to listen to some music and talk.

3. I _______________ history and literature in college than study business as I did. I majored in business, and now that’s all I know. I might never again have the opportunity to learn about history and literature.
4. If you insist, we’ll go to the pizza place after the movie, but I (not) ___________ pizza again. I’m tired of it.

5. Do you think that young people _________________ a choice about whom to marry, or do you think that they prefer their parents to choose a mate for them?

6. I like my work a lot, but my favorite thing is sailing. I love sailing. At this moment, even though I have just been promoted to vice-president of my company, I _________________ right now instead of sitting here in my office.

Practice 16. Combining modals with phrasal modals. (Chart 10-9)
Complete each sentence with the given words in its list. Write the words in their correct order in the sentences.

1. to \ get \ have
   You _________________ a passport if you are going to travel in other countries.

2. be \ should \ to \ able \ complete
   Everyone _________________ this form easily.

3. have \ to \ won’t \ stand
   People _________________ in the line for a long time. The line is moving quickly.

4. you \ be \ able \ leave \ to \ will
   When _________________ here?

5. not \ able \ to \ graduate \ to \ going \ am \ be
   I _________________ with my class. I lost a complete semester when I was sick.

6. been \ must \ to \ get \ have \ not \ able
   Mike and Helen haven’t arrived yet. They were going to try to get on an earlier flight. They _________________ on the earlier flight.
Practice 1. Forming the passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)
Change the active to the passive by writing the correct form of be. Use the same tense for be in the passive sentence that is used in the active sentence.

Example: Mrs. Bell answered my question. My question was answered by Mrs. Bell.

1. simple present:
Authors write books. ...................... Books ...................... written by authors.

2. present progressive:
Mr. Brown is writing that book. ....... That book ...................... written by Mr. Brown.

3. present perfect:
Ms. Lee has written the report. ....... The report ...................... written by Ms. Lee.

4. simple past:
Bob wrote that letter. ...................... That letter ...................... written by Bob.

5. past progressive:
A student was writing the report. ..... The report ...................... written by a student.

6. past perfect:
Lucy had written a memo. ............... A memo ...................... written by Lucy.

7. simple future:
Your teacher will write a report. ........ A report ...................... written by your teacher.

8. be going to:
Tom is going to write a letter. .......... The letter ...................... written by Tom.

9. future perfect:
Alice will have written the report. ..... The report ...................... written by Alice.

10. The judges have made a decision. ..... A decision ...................... made by the judges.

11. Several people saw the accident. ... The accident ...................... seen by several people.

12. Ann is sending the letters. ............ The letters ...................... sent by Ann.

13. Fred will plan the party. ............... The party ...................... planned by Fred.

14. The medicine had cured my illness. .. My illness ...................... cured by the medicine.

15. The cat will have caught the mouse. .. The mouse ...................... caught by the cat.

16. Engineers design bridges. ............... Bridges ...................... designed by engineers.

17. The city is going to build a bridge. ..... A bridge ...................... built by the city.

18. A guard was protecting the jewels. .... The jewels ...................... protected by a guard.
Practice 2. Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)
Underline the subject of each sentence. Circle the complete verb. Then identify the sentences as active (A) or passive (P).

1. A Henry visited a national park.
2. P The park was visited by over 10,000 people last month.
3. ___ Olga was reading the comics.
4. ___ Philippe has read all of Tolstoy’s novels.
5. ___ Bambi has been read by children all over the world.
6. ___ Whales swim in the ocean.
7. ___ Whales were hunted by fishermen until recently.
8. ___ The answer won’t be known for several months.
9. ___ I know the answer.
10. ___ Two new houses were built on our street.
11. ___ A famous architect designed the new bank on First Street.
12. ___ Television was invented before I was born.
13. ___ The World Cup is seen on television all over the world.
14. ___ Television has expanded the knowledge of people everywhere.

Practice 3. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-2)
Complete the sentences. Change the verbs in italics from active to passive.

2. Sue is writing the book. → The book ____________ by Sue.
3. Sue has written the book. → The book ____________ by Sue.
5. Sue was writing the book. → The book ____________ by Sue.
7. Sue will write the book. → The book ____________ by Sue.
8. Sue is going to write the book. → The book ____________ by Sue.
9. Sue will have written the book. → The book ____________ by Sue.
10. Did Sue write the book? → ________ the book ____________ by Sue?
11. Will Sue write the book? → ________ the book ____________ by Sue?
12. Has Sue written the book? → ________ the book ____________ by Sue?

Practice 4. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-2)
Part I. Complete the sentences. Change the verbs from active to passive.

1. Picasso painted that picture.
   That picture ____________ Picasso.
2. Experienced pilots fly these planes.
   These planes ____________.
3. A famous singer is going to sing the national anthem.
   The national anthem ____________________________.

4. Yale University has accepted my cousin.
   My cousin ____________________________.

5. The doctor will examine the patient.
   The patient ____________________________.

6. The defense attorney is questioning a witness.
   A witness ____________________________.

7. A dog bit our mail carrier.
   Our mail carrier ____________________________.

8. The mother bird was feeding the baby bird.
   The baby bird ____________________________.

9. His words won’t persuade me.
   I ____________________________.

10. I didn’t paint this picture. Did Laura paint it?
    The picture ____________________________. Was it ____________________________?

11. Does Mrs. Crane own this restaurant? I know that her father doesn’t own it anymore.
    Is this restaurant ____________________________?
    I know that it ____________________________.

12. I didn’t sign these papers. Someone else signed my name.
    These papers ____________________________.
    My name ____________________________.

Part II. Change each sentence to the active voice. The subject of the new sentence is given. Keep the same tense of the verb.

13. My teeth are going to be cleaned by the dental assistant.
    The dental assistant ____________________________.

14. Was that email sent by Mr. Tyrol?
    _______ Mr. Tyrol ____________________________?

15. The Fourth of July isn’t celebrated by the British.
    The British ____________________________.

16. Has your house been sold by the realtor yet?
    _______ the realtor ____________________________?

17. The thief hasn’t been caught by the police.
    The police ____________________________.

18. The carpets are being cleaned by the carpet cleaners.
    The carpet cleaners ____________________________.
Practice 5. Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)
In these sentences, some of the verbs are transitive and some are intransitive. **Underline** the verb in each sentence. Then identify the object of the verb if there is one. If the verb has an object, change the sentence to the passive. If not, write Ø.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object Of Verb</th>
<th>Passive Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Al will pay the bill.</td>
<td>will pay</td>
<td>the bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Jane will arrive tomorrow.</td>
<td>will arrive</td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The hotel supplies towels.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Accidents happen every day.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Everyone noticed my error.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The train arrived at three.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The news didn’t surprise me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Did the news surprise you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Do ghosts exist?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mr. Lee died last year.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. An old man told the story.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. It hasn’t rained lately.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 6. Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)
Complete the sentences. Write the letter of the correct verb.

1. We’ll let you know about the job. You ____ by my secretary next week.
   - a. will notify
   - b. will be notified
   - c. will have notified

2. Last night I ____ to lock my front door.
   - a. wasn’t remembered
   - b. didn’t remember
   - c. hadn’t been remembered

3. This old wooden chest ____ by my grandfather over 40 years ago.
   - a. built
   - b. had built
   - c. was built

4. Disneyland is a world-famous amusement park in Southern California. It ____ by millions of people every year.
   - a. is visited
   - b. visited
   - c. has visited

5. I ____ with people who say space exploration is a waste of money. What do you think?
   - a. not agree
   - b. don’t agree
   - c. am not agree

6. Do you really think that we ____ by creatures from outer space in the near future?
   - a. will invade
   - b. be invaded
   - c. will be invaded

7. Had you already ____ by this university when you heard about the scholarship offer from the other school?
   - a. were accepted
   - b. accepted
   - c. been accepted

8. When Alex was only ten, his father ____.
   - a. was died
   - b. died
   - c. dead

9. Elephants ____ a long time, sometimes for 70 years.
   - a. live
   - b. were lived
   - c. have been lived
10. The impact of the earthquake yesterday ______ by people who lived hundreds of kilometers from the epicenter.
   a. felt  
   b. has felt  
   c. was felt

11. At one time, the entire world ______ by dinosaurs.
   a. ruled  
   b. was ruled  
   c. been ruled

12. Some dinosaurs ______ on their hind legs and were as tall as palm trees.
   a. walked  
   b. were walked  
   c. have stood

► Practice 7. Using the passive. (Chart 11-3)
Circle the letter of the sentence that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. In my dream, the monster is being chased.
   a. The monster is chasing someone in my dream.
   b. Someone is chasing the monster in my dream.

2. An airplane was delivered to a cargo facility last week.
   a. The airplane delivered some cargo.
   b. Someone delivered the airplane.

3. Witnesses are going to be asked for information.
   a. Someone will request information from witnesses.
   b. Witnesses will request information from someone.

4. Internet access will be provided free of charge.
   a. The internet will provide access.
   b. Someone will provide internet access.

5. All of the participants have been counted.
   a. Someone has finished counting the participants.
   b. The participants have finished counting.

► Practice 8. Using the passive. (Chart 11-3)
Complete each passage with the given verbs. Write the correct form of the verb, active or passive.

1. invent, tell
   The sandwich ________________ by John Montagu, an Englishman with the title of the Earl of Sandwich. In about 1762, he is reputed to have been too busy to sit down at a regular meal, so he ________________ his cook to pack his meat inside some bread in order to save him time.

2. attend, establish, give
   Al-Azhar University in Cairo, Egypt, is one of the oldest universities in the world. It ________________ at about the same time as the city of Cairo, in 969 A.D. The first lecture ________________ in 975 A.D. Students (still) ________________ the university today.
3. become, kill, know, live, relate, save

One animal that is famous in the history of the American West is
actually a bison, but it ________________ by the name of buffalo.
The American buffalo ________________ to a similar animal in
Asia, the water buffalo. Buffaloes ________________ in parks and flat
grasslands. At the end of the nineteenth century, they almost
_______________ extinct because thousands of them
_______________ by hunters. Fortunately, they ________________ by
the efforts of naturalists and the government.

4. believe, give, like, originate, treat, use, value

Garlic ________________ in Asia over 6,000 years ago, and it
spread throughout Europe and Africa. Today, people ________________
to use garlic not only for its strong flavor, but because it ________________
them physical strength and good health. In ancient times, garlic ________________
so highly that it ________________ as money. Injuries and illnesses
_______________ with garlic by the ancient Greeks. Even today, garlic
_______________ to be effective by some people in lowering cholesterol and in
treating other digestive disorders.

Practice 9. Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)
Write complete sentences with the given words. Use the simple past.

1. the chefs \ prepare \ the food ____________________________.
2. the food \ prepare \ yesterday ____________________________.
3. the rain \ stop ____________________________.
4. a rainbow \ appear \ in the sky ____________________________.
5. the documents \ send \ to you \ yesterday ____________________________.
6. my lawyer \ send \ the documents to me ____________________________.
7. the winner of the election \ announce \ on TV ____________________________.
8. I \ not agree \ with you about this ____________________________.
9. what \ happen \ yesterday ____________________________?
10. something wonderful \ happen \ to me ____________________________.
11. the trees \ die \ of a disease ____________________________.
12. the trees \ kill \ by a disease ____________________________.
13. a disease \ kill \ the trees ____________________________.
14. I \ accept \ at the University of Chicago ____________________________.
15. I \ recommend \ for a scholarship ____________________________.
Practice 10. The passive form of modals and phrasal modals. (Chart 11-4)
Circle the correct verb.

1. A language *(can’t be / couldn’t have been)* learned only by reading about it. You have to practice speaking it.

2. These jeans *(should be washed / should have been washed)* before you wear them. The material will be softer and more comfortable.

3. This shirt was washed in hot water, and it shrank. It *(should have washed / should have been washed)* in cold water.

4. The road is still being fixed. It is supposed *(to be finished / to finish)* by next month, but I’m not so sure it will be.

5. There’s an old house for sale on Route 411. They say that George Washington visited it, so it *(must be built / must have been built)* in the 1700s.

6. Taxes *(have to pay / have to be paid)* on or before April 15th. Payments *(must be sent / must have been sent)* to the government on or before April 15th.

7. The senator has made a good point, but I disagree. May I *(permit / be permitted)* to speak now?

8. Our kitchen is old and dark. We’re going to renovate it. It *(ought to be painted / ought to paint)* a light shade of green or white to make it look brighter.

Practice 11. The passive form of modals and phrasal modals. (Chart 11-4)
Complete the sentences with the given words. Write the appropriate form, active or passive.

1. The decision *(should + make)* __________________________ as soon as possible.

2. We *(should + make)* __________________________ our decision right now, without further discussion.

3. A decision *(should + make)* __________________________ before now.

4. They say that Einstein *(couldn’t + talk)* __________________________ until he was four years old.

5. I *(couldn’t + talk)* __________________________ to Mr. Forth this morning even if I had wanted to. It would have been impossible. He is in Europe on business all this week.

6. All vehicles *(must + register)* __________________________ with the Department of Motor Vehicles of this state.

7. You *(must + register)* __________________________ your car with the Department of Motor Vehicles.

8. This bill *(have to + pay)* __________________________ by tomorrow. I *(had better not + send)* __________________________ a check by mail. It won’t get there on time.

9. A: Who called?
   B: I don’t know who it was. They hung up. It *(must + be)* __________________________ a wrong number.
10. A: Was Yuri at the party? Did you see him?
   B: I didn’t see him, but he (may + be) ________________ there. There was a huge crowd, and I didn’t get to talk to many people.

**Practice 12. Non-progressive passive.** (Chart 11-5)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a verb from Column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Uh-oh. I forgot my key, and the door is _____.</td>
<td>a. finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The museum isn’t open today. It’s _____.</td>
<td>b. lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Finally! The report I’ve been writing for a week is _____.</td>
<td>c. crowded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The TV doesn’t work. It’s _____.</td>
<td>d. turned on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Do you know where we are? I think we’re _____.</td>
<td>e. closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Let’s go to another restaurant. This one is too _____.</td>
<td>f. gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. What happened to the cookies? They’re all _____.</td>
<td>g. locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. It’s freezing in this room! I guess the heat isn’t _____.</td>
<td>h. broken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice 13. Non-progressive passive.** (Charts 11-5 and 11-6)
Complete each sentence with a verb from the list. Use the present tense, active or passive. Add a preposition if necessary.

- bore
- compose
- do
- interest
- depend
- locate
- marry
- scare

1. Ismael ________________ the history of languages. He is studying linguistics.
2. We may have a picnic on Saturday. It ________________ the weather.
3. Sam ________________ Salma. They have been married for 24 years.
4. Our son ________________ the dark, so we keep a night light on in his room.
5. Golf ________________ me. There isn’t any action, and it is too slow.
6. These jeans ________________ cotton. They’re 100 percent organic cotton.
7. Our class is diverse. It ________________ people from nine countries.
8. The Hague ________________ the Netherlands.
9. We ________________ this exercise now.

**Practice 14. Common non-progressive passive verbs + prepositions.**
(Chart 11-6)
Circle the correct preposition.

1. Professor Wills is deeply involved (by/in) campus politics.
2. Who is qualified (for/in) this job?
3. Are you worried (for/about) your grade in this class?
4. A lot of people are interested (in/about) the astronauts in space.
5. Your last name is Mason? Are you related (with/to) Tony Mason?
6. Ann doesn’t travel on planes. She’s terrified (from/of) flying.
Practice 15. Passive vs. active. (Charts 11-1 → 11-6)
Correct the errors. One item doesn’t need to be changed.

1. The plane was arrived very late.
2. Four people injured in the accident.
3. Bella is married with José.
4. People are worried with global warming.
5. Astronomers are interesting in several new meteors.
6. We were surprise by Harold’s announcement.
7. Spanish is spoken by people in Mexico.
8. This road is not the right one. We lost.
9. Pat should try that new medicine. He might helped.
10. Lunch is been served in the cafeteria right now.
11. Something unusual was happened yesterday.
12. Will be fixed the refrigerator today?
13. Nobody knows how old my grandfather was when he died last year, but he must been over 100 years old. He remembers the flu epidemic of 1918.

Practice 16. The passive with get. (Chart 11-7)
Complete the sentences with the correct word from the list.

crowded
dressed
elected
fat
hungry
hurt
invited
lost
scared
stopped

1. At first, we were the only people in the restaurant, but it quickly got ________________.
2. We can eat soon if you’re getting ________________. 
3. Stan followed the map closely and didn’t get ________________.
4. When I heard those strange sounds last night, I got ________________.
5. Wake up and get ________________! We have to leave in five minutes.
6. Be careful on these old steps. You could fall and get ________________.
7. Lola is disappointed because she didn’t get _____________ to the party.
8. If children don’t get any exercise, they might get _____________.
9. Don’t drive so fast! You could get _____________ for speeding!
10. Dr. Sousa is going to get _____________ to the city government.

Practice 17. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)

Circle the correct word.

1. When their team scored the winning point, the fans were (exciting / excited).
2. The football game was very (exciting / excited).
3. The news I just heard was (shocking / shocked).
4. Everyone was (shocking / shocked) by the news.
5. Our forty-mile bike ride was (exhausting / exhausted). I was (exhausting / exhausted) at the end of it.
6. This work is so (boring / bored). I’m very (boring / bored) with my work.
7. I’m really (confusing / confused). Professor Eng’s explanation was (confusing / confused).
8. The ruins of the old city are very (interesting / interested).
9. Archeologists are (interesting / interested) in the ruins of the old city.
10. The experience of climbing Mount Kilimanjaro was (thrilling / thrilled). The climber’s family was (thrilling / thrilled) when she returned safely.

Practice 18. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)
Write one of the given words to complete each sentence.

1. fascinating, fascinated
   a. Your lecture was ________________________.
   b. I was ________________________ by your lecture.

2. exhausting, exhausted
   a. Listening to Mrs. Wilson complain is ________________________.
   b. I am ________________________ by Mrs. Wilson’s complaints.

3. disappointing, disappointed
   a. Your parents are ________________________ in your behavior.
   b. Your behavior is ________________________.

Practice 19. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)
Circle the letters of all the correct sentences in each group.

1. a. I am confused by these instructions.
   b. I am confusing by these instructions.
   c. These instructions are confused me.
   d. These instructions confuse me.
2. a. The history of civilization interests Professor Davis.
b. The history of civilization is interesting to Professor Davis.
c. The history of civilization is interested to Professor Davis.
d. Professor Davis is interesting in the history of civilization.

3. a. I was embarrassing by all the attention.
b. I was embarrassed by all the attention.
c. All the attention embarrassed me.
d. All the attention was embarrassed to me.

4. a. This is shocked news about your family.
b. This is shocking news about your family.
c. I was shocking by the news about your family.
d. I was shocked by the news about your family.

5. a. Fred is boring by spectator sports.
b. Spectator sports are boring to Fred.
c. Fred is bored by spectator sports.
d. Spectator sports are bored to Fred.

**Practice 20. Participial adjectives.** (Chart 11-8)
Complete each sentence with the present or past participle of the given verbs.

1. There was an emergency on campus. We were not allowed to leave the buildings. The situation was very (frustrate) _____________.

2. As a little boy, Tom’s jokes were cute, but as a (grow) ____________ man, his jokes irritate people. Both Tom and his jokes are (irritate) _____________.

3. The invention of the (wash) ____________ machine was a great help to households everywhere.

4. The pencil is a simple (write) ____________ instrument.

5. The history of these people is not a (write) ____________ one. The only history is oral.

6. This weather is (depress) _____________. I’ve been (depress) _____________.

7. You’re going to laugh a lot when you see that movie. The critics say that it is the most (entertain) ____________ movie of the year.

8. Here’s a well-(know) ____________ saying: “Don’t cry over (spill) ____________ milk.” It means that you shouldn’t worry about mistakes that you’ve made in the past.

9. Here’s a (comfort) ____________ saying: “(Bark) ____________ dogs seldom bite.” It means that things that seem dangerous often turn out not to be dangerous.

10. Here’s an (inspire) ____________ saying: “(Unite) ____________ we stand, (divide) ____________ we fall.” It means that we must stand together against an enemy in order to survive.
Practice 1. Introduction. (Chart 12-1)
Underline the noun clauses. Some sentences don’t have one.
1. I couldn't hear what he said.
2. What did he say?
3. I don’t know what happened.
4. Why are you calling me?
5. I wonder why Dora is calling me.
6. Do you know who that man is?
7. Do you know where Hank lives?
8. What are they doing?
9. What they are doing is wrong.
10. What should I say?
11. I don’t know what I should say.
12. Where will she live?

Practice 2. Questions and noun clauses beginning with a question word.
(Chart 12-2)
Complete the sentences with the given words.
1. they \ do \ want
   What ___________________________?
2. want \ they \ what
   I don’t know ____________________.
3. Stacy \ live \ does
   Where ___________________________?
4. lives \ where \ Stacy
   Can you tell me ____________________?
5. what \ Carl \ likes
   Do you know ________________________?
6. Carl \ does \ like
   What ______________________________?
7. is \ Lina \ going
   Where ______________________________?
8. is \ where \ going \ Lina
   I wonder ____________________________.
Practice 3. Questions and noun clauses beginning with a question word. (Chart 12-2)
Add punctuation and capitalization. Underline the noun clause if there is one.

1. Where does Lee live does he live downtown
   Where does Lee live? Does he live downtown?
2. I don’t know where he lives
   I don’t know where he lives.
3. What does Sandra want do you know
4. Do you know what Sandra wants
5. What Yoko knows is important to us
6. We talked about what Yoko knows
7. What do you think did you tell your professor what you think
8. My professor knows what I think
9. Where is the bus stop do you know where the bus stop is
10. What did he report what he reported is important

Practice 4. Noun clauses beginning with a question word. (Chart 12-2)
Change each question in parentheses to a noun clause.

1. (How far is it?) I don’t know how far it is
2. (What is that on the table?) I don’t know
3. (How much did it cost?) Ask her
4. (What did he say?) She says this is very interesting.
5. (When are they leaving?) Do you know when they are leaving?
6. (Which road should we take?) Can you tell us which road we should take?
7. (Who called?) Please tell me who called.
8. (What’s happening?) Do you know what’s happening?
9. (Why do they work at night?) Nobody knows why they work at night.
10. (What are they trying to do?) They are trying to do this is difficult.
11. (What kind of insects are these?) I don’t know what kind of insects these are.
12. (Whose keys are these?) I wonder whose keys these are.

Practice 5. Questions and noun clauses beginning with a question word.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)
Make a question from the given sentence. The words in parentheses should be the answer to the question you make. Use a question word (who, what, how, etc.). Then change the question to a noun clause.

1. That man is (Mr. Robertson).
   QUESTION: Who is that man?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know who that man is.
2. George lives (in Los Angeles).

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know ________________________

3. Ann bought (a new dictionary).

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know ________________________

4. It is (350 miles) to Denver from here.

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: I need to know ________________________

5. Jack was late for class (because he missed the bus).

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: The teacher wants to know ________________________

6. That is (Ann’s) pen.

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: Tom wants to know ________________________

7. Alex saw (Ms. Frost) at the meeting.

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know ________________________

8. (Jack) saw Ms. Frost at the meeting.

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know ________________________

9. Alice likes (this) book best, (not that one).

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know ________________________

10. The plane is supposed to land (at 7:14 P.M.).

QUESTION:

NOUN CLAUSE: Could you tell me ________________________

Practice 6. Noun clauses beginning with a question word. (Chart 12-2)

Write the letter of the phrase in the list to complete each conversation.

a. what did he say
b. what he said
c. where are you going
d. where you are going
e. which bus should we take to the stadium
f. which bus we should take to the stadium
g. why did she do that
h. why she did that

1. A: What did the professor just say?
   B: I don’t know _____. I couldn’t understand anything.

2. A: Hey, Kim, ____?
   B: Downtown. We’re going to the new show at the art museum.
3. A: Hello, there! You look lost. Can I help you?
   B: Yes, ____? We want to go to the football stadium in Fairfield.

4. A: Turn the TV up, please. I can’t hear the weather reporter. Linda, ____?
   B: He said that there will be a lot of rain tomorrow.

5. A: Hello! Can you please tell us ____?
   B: Sorry, I don’t know. I’m a stranger here myself.

6. A: I told you that we are going to Bermuda for a vacation, didn’t I?
   B: Well, you told us about the vacation, but you didn’t say ____.

7. A: Ms. Holsum just quit her job at the university.
   B: Oh, ____? That was such a good job!
   A: Nobody knows _____. It’s a mystery.

Practice 7. Noun clauses beginning with whether or if. (Chart 12-3)
Circle the letters of all the correct completions for each sentence.

1. We don’t know ____.
   a. whether it will snow
d. if it will snow
b. whether or not it will snow
e. if or not it will snow
c. whether it will snow or not
f. if it will snow or not

2. ____ doesn’t matter to me.
   a. Whether or not it snows
d. If or not it snows
b. Whether it snows or not
e. If snows or not
c. Whether does it snow or not
f. If does it snow

3. I wonder ____.
   a. whether or not does she know
d. if does she know
b. whether she knows or not
e. if she knows or not
c. whether does she know
f. if or not she does know

Practice 8. Review. (Charts 12-2 and 12-3)
Complete the questions using Do you know.

Do you know . . .

1. How much does this book cost?  

2. When is Flight 62 expected?  

3. Where is the nearest phone?  

4. Is this word spelled correctly?  

5. What time is it?  

6. Is this information correct?  

7. How much does it cost to fly from Toronto to London?  

8. Where is the bus station?  

9. Whose pen is this?  

10. Does this bus go downtown?
Practice 9. Question words followed by infinitives. (Chart 12-4)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a phrase from Column B.

Column A
1. Where can I find fresh fish?
   I don’t know ___.
2. Which person will be a better president?
   I don’t know ___.
3. Who can I get to repair the TV?
   I don’t know ___.
4. Should I get another job?
   I don’t know ___.
5. What’s good to eat here?
   I don’t know ___.
6. How far is the airport from here?
   I don’t know ___.
7. What should it cost?
   I don’t know ___.
8. Do we need a lot of sandwiches for the party?
   I don’t know ___.

Column B
a. who to vote for
b. how far the airport is from here
c. whether to look for one
d. how much to spend
e. how to fix it
f. what to order
g. where to buy it
h. how many to prepare

Practice 10. Noun clauses beginning with that. (Chart 12-5)
Complete the sentences. Choose a word from the list. More than one word may be appropriate.

angry          confident          lucky          relieved
aware          disappointed       proud          worried

1. We are __________ that our son graduated first in his class. We are not surprised — he is an excellent student.
2. I am ___________ that the store owner cheated me. That was awful!
3. Our teacher is ___________ that all the students did poorly on the test.
   However, she is encouraging them to do well on the next test.
4. I was not ___________ that our boss hired a new assistant. When did this happen?
5. It was ___________ that we got off the elevator when we did. Just after we got off, it got stuck between floors, and the other passengers were inside for three hours!
6. Lee always wins the Ping-Pong tournaments at our community center. He is ___________ that he will win the one next weekend.
7. We were very ___________ that the hurricane was coming our way. But it changed course and went out to sea instead. Now we are ___________ that the hurricane didn’t hit us.
Practice 11. Noun clauses beginning with that. (Chart 12-5)
Rewrite the sentences in italics in two ways. Use the words from the original sentence.

1. Nobody stopped to help Sam on the road. That is surprising.
   a. It ____ is surprising that ____ nobody stopped to help Sam on the road.
   b. The fact that ____ nobody stopped to help Sam ____ on the road is surprising.

2. People in modern cities are distrustful of each other. That is unfortunate.
   a. It __________________ people in modern cities are distrustful of each other.
   b. That __________________ distrustful of each other ____________________.

3. People in my village always help each other. That is still true.
   a. It __________________ in my village always help each other.
   b. That __________________ always _______ each other ________________.

4. People need each other and need to help each other. That is undeniably true.
   a. It __________________ people need each other and need to help each other.
   b. That __________________ and need to help each other ____________________.

5. People in cities live in densely populated areas but don’t know their neighbors. That seems strange to me.
   a. It __________________ me __________________ in densely populated areas but don’t know their neighbors.
   b. The fact that __________________ live in densely populated areas but __________________ seems strange to me.

Practice 12. Quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)
Add punctuation and capitalization.

1. Millie said there’s an important meeting at three o’clock today

2. There’s an important meeting at three o’clock today she said

3. There is said Millie an important meeting at three o’clock today

4. There is an important meeting today it’s about the new rules said Millie

5. Where is the meeting Carl asked

6. Robert replied it’s in the conference room

7. How long will it last asked Ali

8. I don’t know how long it will last replied Millie
9. I’ll be a little late said Robert I have another meeting until 3:00 P.M. today.

10. Who is speaking at the meeting asked Robert.

11. I am not sure who is speaking said Millie but you’d better be there everybody is supposed to be there.

Practice 13. Quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)
Read this familiar story about the rabbit and the turtle. Punctuate the quoted speech in the numbered sections.

One day a rabbit laughed at a turtle because the turtle was very slow.

(1) You are so slow Mr turtle said the rabbit and I am very fast.

(2) I don’t know about that said the turtle let’s have a race we will run for five miles and see who wins.

(3) I agree said the rabbit.

They started off, and the rabbit was so far ahead that he laughed and laughed. He said to himself:

(4) I am so far ahead of the turtle I am going to take a little nap right here it is going to take a long time before that turtle can catch up with me.

And so, while the rabbit was taking his nap, the turtle came along slowly but steadily. The turtle passed by the sleeping rabbit and won the race.

(5) The turtle looked back at the rabbit and exclaimed slow but steady wins the race who’s laughing now Mr rabbit.

Practice 14. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb.

1. Tom said, “I am busy.” Tom said that he was busy.

2. Tom said, “I need some help.” Tom said that he needed some help.

3. Tom said, “I am having a good time.” Tom said that he was having a good time.

4. Tom said, “I have finished my work.” Tom said that he had finished his work.

5. Tom said, “I finished it.” Tom said that he finished it.

6. Tom said, “I will arrive at noon.” Tom said that he would arrive at noon.

7. Tom said, “I am going to be there.” Tom said that he was going to be there.
8. Tom said, “I can solve that problem.”
   Tom said that he __________ that problem.
9. Tom said, “I may come early.”
   Tom said that he __________ early.
10. Tom said, “I might come early.”
    Tom said that he __________ early.
11. Tom said, “I must leave at eight.”
    Tom said that he __________ at eight.
12. Tom said, “I have to leave at eight.”
    Tom said that he __________ at eight.
13. Tom said, “I should go to the library.”
    Tom said that he __________ to the library.
    Tom told me __________ here.

**Practice 15. Reported speech.** (Chart 12-7)
Complete the sentences by changing the quoted speech to reported speech. Use formal sequence of tenses as appropriate. Pay attention to whether the reporting verb is past or present.

1. I asked Martha, “Are you planning to enter law school?”
   I asked Martha __________ if/whether she was planning __________ to enter law school.
2. Ed just asked me, “What time does the movie begin?”
   Ed wants to know __________.
3. Fred asked, “Can we still get tickets for the concert?”
   Fred asked __________ tickets for the concert.
4. Thomas said to us, “How can I help you?”
   Thomas wants to know __________ us.
5. Eva asked, “Can you help me, Mario?”
   Eva asked Mario __________ her.
6. Charles said, “When will the final decision be made?”
   Charles wanted to know __________.
7. Frank asked Carla, “Where have you been all afternoon?”
   Frank asked Carla __________ all afternoon.
8. Jaime just asked, “What is Kim’s native language?”
   Jaime wants to know __________.
9. I asked myself, “Am I doing the right thing?”
   I wondered __________ the right thing.
10. George asked me, “What time do I have to be at the lab in the morning?”
    George asked me __________ to be at the lab in the morning.
11. Yuki asked, “Who should I give this message to?”
    Yuki asked me __________ to.
12. Nancy asked, “Why didn’t you call me?”
    Nancy wanted to know __________ her.
Practice 16. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Complete the sentences using the information in the conversation. Use past verb forms in the noun clauses if appropriate and possible.

Conversation 1.

“Where are you going, Ann?” I asked.
“I’m on my way to the market,” she replied. “Do you want to come with me?”
“I’d like to, but I have to stay home. I have a lot of work to do.”
“OK,” Ann said. “Is there anything I can pick up for you at the market?”
“How about a few bananas? And some apples if they’re fresh?”
“Sure. I’d be happy to.”

When I asked Ann where she ____________, she said she ____________ on her way to the market and ____________ me to come with her. I said I ____________ to, but that I ____________ to stay home because I ____________ a lot of work to do. Ann kindly asked me if there ____________ anything she ____________ pick up for me at the market. I asked her to pick up a few bananas and some apples if they ____________ fresh. She said she’d be happy to.

Conversation 2.

“Where are you from?” asked the passenger sitting next to me on the plane.
“Chicago,” I said.
“That’s nice. I’m from Mapleton. It’s a small town in northern Michigan. Have you heard of it?”
“Oh yes, I have,” I said. “Michigan is a beautiful state. I’ve been there on vacation many times.”
“Were you in Michigan on vacation this year?”
“No. I went far away from home this year. I went to India,” I replied.
“Oh, that’s nice. Is it a long drive from Chicago to India?” she asked me. My mouth fell open.
I didn’t know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.

The passenger sitting next to me on the plane ____________ me where I ____________ from. I ____________ her I ____________ from Chicago. She ____________ that she ____________ from Mapleton, a small town in northern Michigan. She wondered if I ____________ of it, and I told her that I ____________. I went on to say that I thought Michigan ____________ a beautiful state and explained that I ____________ there on vacation many times. She ____________ me if I ____________ in Michigan on vacation this year. I replied that I ____________ and ____________ her that I ____________ far away, to India. Then she asked me if it ____________ a long drive from Chicago to India! My mouth fell open. I didn’t know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.
Practice 17. Using -ever words. (Chart 12-8)

Complete each sentence with the correct -ever word.

1. As vice-president of international sales, Robert has complete control over his travel schedule. He can travel ______ whenever ______ he wants.

2. Robert is free to decide which countries he will visit during his overseas trips. He can travel ______ ______ he wants.

3. The English professor told us that we could write our papers on ______ subject ______ we wanted as long as it related to the topics we discussed in class this semester.

4. I understand that the planes aren’t flying because of the weather, but you have to come anyway. Get here ______ ______ you can: take the train, take a bus, or drive. Just get here fast.

5. There are several appointment times available. You may select ______ ______ one you prefer.

6. Linda is very amiable and gregarious. She makes friends with ______ ______ she meets.

7. It doesn’t matter what class you take to fulfill this requirement. Just take ______ ______ one fits best into your schedule.

8. ______ ______ is the last to leave the room should turn off the lights and lock the door.

9. I know that Norman will succeed. He’ll do ______ ______ is required to succeed.

10. My wife and I are going to ride our bicycles across the country. We will ride for six to seven hours a day, and then we’ll stop ______ ______ we happen to be at the end of the day.
Chapter 13
Adjective Clauses

Practice 1. Adjective clause pronouns used as the subject. (Chart 13-1)
Underline the adjective clause in each sentence. Draw an arrow to the word it modifies.

1. We are looking for a person who fixes computers.
2. I know a man who lives on a boat.
3. In our office, there is a woman who speaks four languages.
4. There are several people who are bilingual in the office.
5. I work in an office that is in an old building.
6. The building which we work in was built in 1890.
7. Two trees that were over two hundred years old were struck by lightning last night.
8. Two other trees which were nearby were not harmed.
9. The traffic jam was caused by one truck that had broken down.
10. The truck which caused the problem was in the middle of the highway.

Practice 2. Adjective clause pronouns used as the subject. (Chart 13-1)
Circle the letter of all the possible completions for each sentence. Do not add any commas or capital letters.

1. I thanked the woman ____ brought back our lost cat.
   a. who       b. that       c. which       d. she
2. The aquarium is looking for new employees ____ know a lot about dolphins.
   a. who       b. that       c. which       d. they
3. What is the TV channel ____ has stories about animals?
   a. who       b. it         c. which       d. that
4. On my flight, there was a weight-lifter ____ didn’t fit into the airplane seat.
   a. who       b. that       c. he          d. which
5. None of the houses ____ have protective shutters were damaged in the typhoon.
   a. who       b. that       c. which       d. they
6. I’m transferring to a school ____ has a well-known program in cinematography.
   a. who       b. that       c. which       d. it
Practice 3. Adjective clause pronouns as the object of a verb. (Chart 13-2)

Underline the adjective clause in each sentence. Draw an arrow to the word it modifies.

1. There’s the man that I met last night.

2. There’s the woman that Sandro is going to marry.

3. All the people whom we invited have accepted the invitation.

4. The book which I just read is going to be made into a movie.

5. I can’t figure out how to use the software program that Jason installed.

6. We are still living in the house we built in 1987.

7. What happened to the cake I left on the table?

8. I bought the book my professor wrote.

Practice 4. Adjective clause pronouns as the object of a verb. (Chart 13-2)

Circle the letter of all the possible completions for each sentence.

1. That’s the woman ___ the people elected.
   a. who    b. whom    c. that    d. which    e. she    f. Ø

2. The man ___ the police arrested was not the thief.
   a. whom    b. he    c. that    d. which    e. who    f. Ø

3. I’d already seen the movie ___ we rented last night
   a. who    b. it    c. Ø    d. which    e. that    f. whom

4. Ms. McCarthy is a teacher ___ everyone loves.
   a. who    b. whom    c. Ø    d. which    e. that    f. her

5. Many of the people ___ we met on our vacation were very friendly.
   a. who    b. which    c. Ø    d. whom    e. Ø    f. they

6. A man ___ I know is going to be interviewed on a morning TV program.
   a. who    b. that    c. whom    d. which    e. him    f. Ø

Practice 5. Adjective clause pronouns used as the subject or object of the verb. (Charts 13-1 and 13-2)

Complete the sentences with the correct adjective clause.

1. The book was good. I read it.
   The book that ___ I read was good ___.

2. The movie was very sad. I saw it.
   The movie that ___

3. Elephants are animals. They can live a long time.
   Elephants are animals that ___

4. At the zoo, there were two fifty-year-old elephants. We photographed them.
   At the zoo, there were two fifty-year-old elephants which ___
5. Sarah is a person. She does many things at the same time.
   Sarah is a person who ____________________________.

6. Bill is a person. You can trust him.
   Bill is a person you ____________________________.

7. The painting was valuable. The thieves stole it.
   The painting ____________________________.

---

Practice 6. Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a preposition.
(Chart 13-3)

Circle the letter of all possible completions.

1. The person ___ was Bob Jones in the customer service department.
   a. which I spoke to                           f. to who I spoke
   b. to which I spoke                          g. that I spoke to
   c. whom I spoke to                           h. to that I spoke
   d. to whom I spoke                           i. I spoke to
   e. who I spoke to him                        j. I spoke to him

2. This is the explanation ____.
   a. which I was referring to                 f. that I was referring to
   b. to which I was referring                 g. to that I was referring
   c. whom I was referring to                  h. I was referring to
   d. to whom I was referring                  i. I was referring to it
   e. which I was referring to it

---

Practice 7. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Write all the possible completions for each sentence.

1. Mr. Green is the man ___ I was talking about.

2. She is the woman ___ sits next to me in class.

3. The hat ___ Tom is wearing is unusual.

4. Hunger and poverty are worldwide problems to ___ solutions must be found.
5. I enjoyed talking with the man I sat next to on the plane.

6. People fear flying avoid traveling by plane.

7. The people about the novelist wrote were factory workers and their families.

8. A barrel is a large container is made of wood or metal.

► Practice 8. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)
Correct the errors in the adjective clauses. Do not change any punctuation.

1. That’s a subject I don’t want to talk about it.

2. A person who he writes with his left hand is called a lefty.

3. Our family brought home a new kitten that we found it at the animal shelter.

4. What is the name of the radio program to that many people listen on Saturday nights?

5. The candidate for who you vote should be honest.

6. Here’s a picture of Nancy who I took with my cell phone.

7. People have high cholesterol should watch their diets.

8. Suzie is going to marry the man she has always loved him.

9. There’s an article in today’s newspaper about a woman that she is 7 feet tall.

10. Passengers which have children may board the plane first.

► Practice 9. Whose vs. Who’s. (Chart 13-4)
Complete the sentences. Write the letter of the correct pronoun.

1. This class is for students ____ English needs improvement.
   a. who’s  b. whose

2. Belinda is a student ____ good in both math and languages.
   a. who’s  b. whose

3. Will the student ____ cell phone is ringing please turn it off?
   a. who’s  b. whose
4. A customer ____ dissatisfied is not good for a business.
   a. who’s  b. whose

5. The customer ____ young son was crying tried to comfort him.
   a. who’s  b. whose

6. Life is sometimes difficult for a child ____ parents are divorced.
   a. who’s  b. whose

7. And now, I’d like to introduce the man ____ going to be our next senator ...
   a. who’s  b. whose
   ... and his wife, ____ his greatest asset.
   c. who’s  d. whose

---

**Practice 10. Using whose.** (Chart 13-4)

1. Circle the possessive pronoun.
2. Draw an arrow from the possessive pronoun to the noun it refers to.
3. Replace the possessive pronoun with whose.
4. Combine the two sentences into one.

1. Do you know the man? His car is parked over there.

2. I know a skin doctor. His name is Dr. Skinner.

3. The people were very hospitable. We visited their home.

4. Mrs. Lake is the teacher. I enjoy her class the most.

5. The teacher asked the parents to confer with her. Their children were failing.

---

**Practice 11. Understanding adjective clauses.** (Charts 13-1 and 13-4)

Choose the correct meanings for each sentence.

1. The secretary that trained my office assistant was arrested for ID theft.
   a. ____ My office assistant was arrested for ID theft.
   b. ____ A secretary trained my office assistant.
   c. ____ A secretary was arrested for ID theft.

2. The nurse who gave the patient her medication was unusually talkative.
   a. ____ The nurse was unusually talkative.
   b. ____ The patient was unusually talkative.
   c. ____ The patient received medication.

3. The taxi driver who turned in a lost wallet to the police received a large reward.
   a. ____ The taxi driver lost a wallet.
   b. ____ The police received a reward.
   c. ____ The taxi driver received a reward.
4. The math teacher whose methods include memorization and a focus on basic skills is very popular with parents.
   a. ____ The parents like the math teacher.
   b. ____ The parents focus on basic skills.
   c. ____ The math teacher requires memorization.

5. The computer that couldn’t read your files had a virus.
   a. ____ The computer couldn’t read your files.
   b. ____ The computer had a virus.
   c. ____ Your files had a virus.

6. A friend of mine whose husband is a firefighter accidentally started a fire in their kitchen.
   a. ____ My friend is a firefighter.
   b. ____ My friend started a fire.
   c. ____ The firefighter started a fire.

7. The surgeon who operated on my mother is undergoing surgery today.
   a. ____ The surgeon is having surgery today.
   b. ____ My mother is having surgery today.
   c. ____ My mother already had surgery.

► Practice 12. Using where in adjective clauses.  (Chart 13-5)
Complete the sentences in two different ways with the given words.

1. grew up, in, I, which, where,
   a. The town __________________________ has changed.
   b. The town __________________________ has changed.

2. I, where, lived, in,
   a. The house __________________________ isn’t there anymore.
   b. The house __________________________ isn’t there anymore.

3. on, lived, which, where, I
   a. The street __________________________ is now a parking lot.
   b. The street __________________________ is now a parking lot.

4. where, which, I, played, in
   a. The park __________________________ is now a mall.
   b. The park __________________________ is now a mall.

► Practice 13. Using when in adjective clauses.  (Chart 13-6)
Complete the sentences in three different ways with the given words.

1. on, which, when, I, go, that
   a. Saturday is the day __________________________ to the movies with my grandmother.
   b. Saturday is the day __________________________ to the movies with my grandmother.
   c. Saturday is the day __________________________ to the movies with my grandmother.
2. When, that, which, on, I play tennis
   a. Sunday is the day __________________ with my friend.
   b. Sunday is the day __________________ with my friend.
   c. Sunday is the day __________________ with my friend.

Practice 14. Using where and when in adjective clauses. (Charts 13-5 and 13-6)
Write the letter of the clause in the list to complete each conversation correctly.

   a. that George Washington slept in     f. which I start my new job
   b. when I spend time with my family     g. which people here celebrate their
   c. when they were really in love        independence
   d. where I was born                    h. which you can do all the things you never
   e. where we can sit and talk           could before

1. A: Where do you want to go after the movie?
   B: Let’s go to a place _____.

2. A: Sal and Lil broke up? That’s impossible!
   B: There was a time _____, but not anymore.

3. A: See you Monday!
   B: No. Don’t you remember? Monday is the day on _____.

4. A: Are you new in town?
   B: New? Are you kidding? This is the place _____.

5. A: Is there something special about that house? It looks historic.
   B: Yes. They say it’s a house _____ when he was on his way to Philadelphia.

6. A: Grandma is never home. Since she’s retired, she’s always doing something.
   B: Right. She says that retirement is the time in _____.

7. A: What’s the celebration here? Is it a holiday?
   B: Yes. It’s the day on _____.

8. A: Would you like to go out this weekend?
   B: No, thanks. Saturdays and Sundays are the days _____.

Practice 15. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-6)
Circle the letter of all the words that can complete each sentence correctly.

1. Yoko told me about students _____ have taken the entrance exam 13 times.
   a. who            b. whom            c. which            d. that

2. Is this the room _____ the meeting is going to be?
   a. which            b. where            c. that            d. Ø

3. Judge Savitt is a judge _____ people respect.
   a. whose            b. which            c. whom            d. Ø

4. I’ll never forget the day _____ I met Bobbi.
   a. Ø                b. that                c. when                d. which
5. We’re looking for a teacher ____ specialty is teaching dyslexic children.
   a. who       b. his       c. that       d. whose

6. I’m looking for an electric can opener ____ also can sharpen knives.
   a. who       b. which      c. that       d. Ø

7. The problems ____ Tony has seem insurmountable.
   a. what       b. whom      c. that       d. Ø

8. People ____ live in glass houses shouldn’t throw stones.
   a. who       b. whom      c. which     d. Ø

Practice 16. Using adjective clauses to modify pronouns. (Chart 13-7)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a clause from Column B.

Column A
1. May I ask you a question? There is something ____.
2. I don’t have any more money. This is all ____.
3. Anyone ____ must be a genius.
4. He’s a spoiled child. His parents give him everything ____.
5. I’m sorry I can’t help you. There’s nothing ____.
6. We need to hire someone ____.
7. The charity organization invited everyone ____.
8. Students ____ can take the advanced course.

Column B
a. who can understand Einstein’s theory of relativity
b. who doesn’t mind working long hours and on weekends
c. I’ve been wanting to ask you
d. who have taken the basic course
e. who had donated money to their cause
f. that he asks for
g. that I can do about the situation
h. I have with me today

Practice 17. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-8)
Circle yes if the adjective clause requires commas and add them in the appropriate places. Circle no if the adjective clause does not require commas.

1. I made an appointment with a doctor who is an expert on eye disorders. yes no
2. I made an appointment with Dr. Raven, who is an expert on eye disorders. yes no
3. Bogota which is the capital of Colombia is a cosmopolitan city. yes no
4. The city that is the capital of Colombia is a large, cosmopolitan city. yes no
5. South Beach which is clean, pleasant, and fun is known as a party town. yes no
6. The name Bogota comes from the word Bacata which was the Indian name for the site. yes no
7. The person who writes the best essay will win a prize. yes no
8. The first prize was given to Belinda Jones who wrote a touching essay about being an adopted child. yes no
9. On our trip to Africa we visited Nairobi which is near several fascinating game reserves and then traveled to Egypt to see the pyramids. yes no
10. To see wild animals, you have to fly to a city that is near a game reserve and then take a small plane to the reserve itself. yes no
11. Someone who understands physics better than I do is going to have to help you.
   yes  no
12. Violent tropical storms that occur in western Asia are called typhoons.
   yes  no
13. Similar storms that occur on the Atlantic side of the Americas are called hurricanes rather than typhoons.
   yes  no
14. A typhoon which is a violent tropical storm can cause great destruction.
   yes  no
15. According to the news report, the typhoon that threatened to strike the Indonesian coast has moved away from land and toward open water.
   yes  no
16. Hurricane Katrina which destroyed parts of New Orleans occurred in 2005.
   yes  no

Practice 18. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-8)
Circle the letter of the sentence that gives the correct meaning of the given sentence.

1. The students, who attend class five hours per day, have become quite proficient in their new language.
   a. All of the students attend class five hours per day.
   b. Some of the students attend class five hours per day.

2. The students who attend class five hours per day have become quite proficient in their new language.
   a. All of the students attend class five hours per day.
   b. Some of the students attend class five hours per day.

3. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists, who were to begin playing.
   a. All of the violinists were to begin playing.
   b. Some of the violinists were to begin playing.

4. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists who were to begin playing.
   a. All of the violinists were to begin playing.
   b. Some of the violinists were to begin playing.

5. I put the vase on top of the TV set, which is in the living room.
   a. I have more than one TV set.
   b. I have only one TV set.

6. I put the vase on top of the TV set that is in the living room.
   a. I have more than one TV set.
   b. I have only one TV set.

7. Trees which lose their leaves in winter are called deciduous trees.
   a. All trees lose their leaves in winter.
   b. Some trees lose their leaves in winter.

8. Pine trees, which are evergreen, grow well in a cold climate.
   a. All pine trees are evergreen.
   b. Some pine trees are evergreen.
Practice 19. Using expressions of quantity in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-9)
Combine the sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause. Add commas where necessary.

1. I received two job offers. I accepted neither of them.
   *I received two job offers, neither of which I accepted.*

2. I have three brothers. Two of them are professional athletes.

3. Jerry is engaged in several business ventures. Only one of them is profitable.

4. The two women have almost completed law school. Both of them began their studies at age 40.

5. Eric is proud of his success. Much of it has been due to hard work, but some of it has been due to good luck.

6. We ordered an extra-large pizza. Half of it contained meat and half of it didn’t.

7. The scientist won the Nobel Prize for his groundbreaking work. Most of his work was on genomes.

8. The audience gave a tremendous ovation to the Nobel Prize winners. Most of them were scientists.

Practice 20. Using *which* to modify a whole sentence. (Chart 13-10)
Combine the sentences. Include an adjective clause that begins with *which* in the new sentence.

1. Mike was accepted at the state university. This is surprising.

2. Mike did not do well in high school. This is unfortunate.

3. The university accepts a few students each year with a low grade-point average. This is lucky for Mike.

4. The university hopes to motivate these low-performing students. This is a fine idea.

5. Mike might actually be a college graduate one day. This would be a miracle!
**Practice 21. Reducing adjective clauses to adjective phrases.** (Chart 13-11)
Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases. Cross out the adjective clause and write the adjective phrase above it.

1. Do you see that man who is wearing a green hat?

2. The person who is in charge of this department is out to lunch.

3. The picture which was painted by Picasso is extremely valuable.

4. The professors who are doing research will not teach classes next year.

5. The students’ research projects which are in progress must be finished by the end of the year.

6. The students’ research projects which are scheduled to begin in September will have to be completed by the middle of next year.

7. Toronto, which is the largest city in Canada, is not the capital.

8. In our solar system, there are eight planets that orbit the sun.

9. Pluto, which was formerly known as a planet, was reclassified as a dwarf planet in 2006.

10. Now there is a slang verb, to pluto, which means “to devalue someone or something.”

**Practice 22. Reducing adjective clauses to adjective phrases.** (Chart 13-11)
Combine the sentences. Cross out the second sentence. Use it instead as an adjective phrase. Place the phrase in the sentence with a caret (^). Add commas as necessary.

1. Brasilia, officially inaugurated in 1960, is the capital of Brazil. It was officially inaugurated in 1960.

2. Rio de Janeiro used to be its capital. It is the second largest city in Brazil.

3. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are spoken in Helsinki. It is the capital of Finland.

4. In Canada, you see signs. They are written in both English and French.

5. Libya is a leading producer of oil. It is a country in North Africa.

6. Simon Bolivar led the fight for independence early in the nineteenth century. He was a great South American general.

7. Five South American countries are Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador, Panama, and Peru. They were liberated by Bolivar.

8. We need someone to design this project. He or she holds a degree in electrical engineering.

9. The project will be finished next year. It is being built in Beijing.

10. A lot of new buildings were constructed in Beijing in 2008. Beijing was the site of the summer Olympics that year.
Practice 23. Chapter review.
All of the following sentences contain one or two errors in adjective clauses, adjective phrases, or punctuation. Find the errors and correct them, using a correct adjective clause or adjective phrase, and the correct punctuation.

1. When we walked past the theater, we saw a lot of people waited in a long line outside the box office.

2. Students who living on campus are close to their classrooms and the library.

3. If you need any information, see the librarian sits at the central desk on the main floor.

4. My best friend is Anna who her birthday is the same day as mine.

5. Hiroko was born in Sapporo that is a city in Japan.

6. Patrick who is my oldest brother. He is married and has one child.

7. The person sits next to me is someone I’ve never met him.

8. My favorite place in the world is a small city is located on the southern coast of Thailand.

9. Dr. Darnell was the only person to that I wanted to speak.

10. There are eighty students, are from all over the world, study English at this school.

11. The people who we met them on our trip last May are going to visit us in October.

12. Dianne Baxter that used to teach Spanish has organized a tour of Central America for senior citizens.

13. I’ve met many people since I came here who some of them are from my country.

14. People can speak English can be understood in many countries.

15. Grandpa is getting married again. This is a big surprise.
Chapter 14
Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1

Practice 1. Gerunds: introduction. (Chart 14-1)
Circle the gerunds. Some sentences have no gerund.

1. Driving a car is not difficult.
2. We were tired of driving, so we stopped for a rest.
3. When I saw Bob, he was driving around and looking for a parking space.
4. I enjoy singing.
5. Singing songs is a good way to learn a language.

Practice 2. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)
Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Write the verb in its gerund form.

buy  fly  hear  lower
drink  go  improve  take

1. Thank you for __________________ care of my plants while I was in the hospital.
2. The children are excited about __________________ to the circus tomorrow.
3. Students who are interested in __________________ their English conversation skills can sign up for special private classes.
4. Psychiatrists say that dreaming about __________________ in the sky is quite common.
5. The candidate says he is committed to __________________ taxes.
6. We are thinking about not __________________ tickets for the opera this year. They have become so expensive.
7. I’m used to __________________ tea with my meals. I never drink coffee.
8. We look forward to __________________ from you soon.
Practice 3. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)
Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

Part I. Honest Henry...
1. believes _______ telling the truth.
2. is not capable _______ lying.
3. never thinks _______ cheating.
4. would never forgive himself _______ cheating.
5. prohibits his children _______ lying.

Part II. Devious Dan...
6. is often guilty _______ cheating his friends.
7. never apologizes _______ cheating.
8. is accustomed _______ cheating.
9. is used _______ stealing.
10. has been accused _______ stealing.

Practice 4. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)
Write the letter of the correct preposition.

1. We are talking ___ opening a vegetarian restaurant in our neighborhood.
   a. to b. about c. with
2. Don’t worry ___ being on time today. Everybody’s going to be late because of the weather.
   a. to b. about c. with
3. Aren’t you tired ___ studying? Let’s take a break.
   a. with b. about c. of
4. Beth is a chocoholic. Nothing can stop her ___ eating chocolate whenever she feels like it.
   a. of b. for c. from
5. We are looking forward ___ seeing you again.
   a. to b. of c. from
6. Let’s go dancing instead ___ going to the movies.
   a. with b. about c. of
7. Andy is still angry at me. He accused me ___ misplacing his iPod.
   a. of b. for c. in
8. He blames me ___ being too careless.
   a. of b. about c. for
9. I apologized ___ losing it, and I offered to replace it.
   a. of b. in c. for
10. Believe it or not, Andy is not interested ___ being my friend anymore.
   a. about b. in c. of
Practice 5. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)
Write the correct preposition and the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Henry is excited ______ (leave) __________________ for India.
2. I have no excuse ______ (be) __________________ late.
3. The rain prevented us ______ (complete) __________________ the work.
4. Fred is always complaining ______ (have) __________________ a headache.
5. Instead ______ (study) __________________, Margaret went to a ballgame with some of her friends.
6. The weather is terrible tonight. I don’t blame you ______ (want, not) ________________ to go to the meeting.
7. Who is responsible ______ (wash) ________________ and ______ (dry) ________________ the dishes after dinner?
8. The thief was accused ______ (steal) ________________ a woman’s purse.
9. I’m going to visit my family during the school vacation. I’m looking forward ______ (eat) ________________ my mother’s cooking and ______ (sleep) ________________ in my own bed.
10. I thanked my friend ______ (lend) ________________ me lunch money.

Practice 6. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)
Complete the sentences with a preposition and a verb from the list. Write the verb in its gerund form.

answer  change  live  waste
arrive  clean  save  write
buy  fail  take

1. I’m thinking ______ about taking ________________ a class in digital photography.
2. Are you interested ________________ a new computer?
3. Brrr! I don’t like this cold weather. I’m used ________________ in warmer climates.
4. Please forgive me (not) ________________ your email until now. I’ve been very busy.
5. If you are worried ________________ this class, why don’t you get a tutor?
6. Everybody talks ________________ the situation, but nobody does anything about it.
7. This room is a mess! Isn’t anyone responsible ________________ it up?
8. Bad weather prevented the plane ________________ on time.
9. Thank you ________________ a letter of recommendation for me.
10. The environmental group believes ________________ energy. They want to stop people ________________ electricity.

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1 141
Practice 7. Verbs followed by gerunds. (Chart 14-3)
Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Write the verb in its gerund form.

argue drive have play sell
read smoke

1. Boris’ hobby is chess. He enjoys __________________ chess.
2. Leon’s asthma is better now. He is breathing easier since he quit ________________ a year ago.
3. I don’t mind ________________ an hour to work every day. I always listen to a good audio book in my car.
4. I put off ________________ my taxes for too long; I missed the deadline and had to pay a penalty.
5. You should avoid ________________ with your boss.
6. Would you consider ________________ your house at a lower price than you are asking?
7. Our teacher is so great! We really appreciate ________________ a teacher like her.
8. When you finish ________________ that book, may I borrow it?

Practice 8. Go + gerund. (Chart 14-4)
Look at the pictures of the activities that the Green family and the Evans family enjoy. Use expressions in Chart 14-4 to describe the activities. Write the correct tense of go + a gerund.

Part I. The Green family enjoys the outdoors.

1. Every weekend they __________________ on the trails near their home.
2. In the summers they __________________ on the lake. They like to go out in boats that have no motors.
3. In the winters they __________________ in the mountains.
4. Last year they took a trip to Costa Rica, where they saw many colorful birds. They __________________.
5. On that trip, they also __________________ on a river.
6. On Friday nights, they __________________ at a social club near their home.

7. Every Monday night, they __________________ at an alley at the mall.

8. Next year they are going on a tour of Europe, where they __________________ in five major cities. They’ll see famous buildings, museums, and other landmarks.

9. Maybe they won’t buy anything, but they __________________ to see what’s in the shops.

Practice 9. Special expressions followed by -ing. (Chart 14-5)
Write the correct form of a verb from the list.

do  lie  locate  look  play  watch

1. A: How was the picnic?
   B: Great! We had a lot of fun _______________ volleyball on the beach.

2. A: What’s the matter with Katy?
   B: She’s very depressed. She spends all day _______________ in bed, and she cries easily.

3. A: Oh, wow! You actually got in touch with Mr. Gordon, our twelfth-grade English teacher.
   B: Yes, I had a hard time _______________ him, but I discovered that he was living in a retirement home in Florida.

   B: The boss caught him _______________ through her private papers in her files.

5. A: Do you ever see Wilma these days?
   B: No. She spends all her time _______________ research for her PhD.

6. A: Lillian doesn’t let her children waste time _______________ TV.
   B: It’s not all bad. There are many good educational programs.
Practice 10. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-6)
Circle the letter of all the possible completions.

1. I want ____ that movie.
   a. to see       b. seeing       c. him to see

2. They told ____ them as soon as I got home.
   a. to call      b. calling      c. me to call

3. I expect ____ there early.
   a. to be        b. being        c. you to be

4. The police ordered ____ the building.
   a. not to enter  b. not entering c. the people not to enter

5. We were asked ____ food and clothing for the hurricane victims.
   a. to contribute b. contributing c. them to contribute

6. Lisa expected ____ the lecture.
   a. to attend     b. attending    c. us to attend

Practice 11. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-6)
Complete the sentences with to work or me to work. Write the correct completion(s). In some cases, both are possible.

1. She hoped ____ to work _______.

2. He ordered ____ me to work _______.

3. We agreed _____________.

4. They wanted _____________.

5. She promised _____________.

6. They refused _____________.

7. He pretended _____________.

8. They didn’t allow _____________.

9. You told _____________.

10. They would like _____________.

11. They expected _____________.

12. She decided _____________.

13. They needed _____________.

14. They required _____________.

Practice 12. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-6)
Rewrite each sentence. Use an infinitive phrase to make active sentences. Use the given ideas and the verbs in parentheses.

1. The teacher said to me, “You may leave early.” (permit)

   The teacher ________________________________

2. The secretary said to me, “Please give this note to Sue.” (ask)

   The secretary ________________________________

3. My advisor said to me, “You should take Biology 109.” (advise)

   My advisor ________________________________

4. When I went to traffic court, the judge said to me, “You must pay a fine.” (order)

   The judge ________________________________

5. During the test, the teacher said to Greg, “Keep your eyes on your own paper.” (warn)

   The teacher ________________________________

6. During the test, the teacher said to Greg, “Don’t look at your neighbor’s paper.” (warn)

   The teacher ________________________________
7. Mr. Lee said to the children, “Be quiet.” (tell)
   Mr. Lee

8. When I was growing up, my parents said to me, “You may stay up late on Saturday night.” (allow)
   My parents

9. The teacher said to the students, “Speak slowly and clearly.” (encourage)
   The teacher

10. The teacher always says to the students, “You are supposed to come to class on time.” (expect)
    The teacher

**Practice 13. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-6)**
On a separate piece of paper, rewrite each sentence in two ways. Use an infinitive phrase to make active and passive sentences with the given ideas and the verbs in parentheses. (Omit the by-phrase in passive sentences.)

1. The teacher said to the children, “You may go outside and play.” (allow)
   - The teacher allowed the children to go outside and play.
   - The children were allowed to go outside and play.

2. The doctor said to my father, “Don’t eat high-cholesterol foods.” (warn)

3. The sergeant said to the soldiers, “March in formation.” (order)

4. The soccer coach told the girls, “Play hard and win.” (encourage)

5. Mary said to her roommate, “Don’t forget to wake me up at 7:00.” (remind)

6. The police officer told the drivers in our lane of traffic, “You may go ahead.” (permit)

7. The letter said, “You must complete this form by November 15th.” (tell)

**Practice 14. Gerund or infinitive. (Charts 14-3 and 14-6)**
Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. William wants ____ us for dinner tonight.
   a. to join  b. joining

2. We offered ____ ice cream for all the children.
   a. to buy  b. buying

3. I enjoy ____ large dishes of Indian food for my friends.
   a. to cook  b. cooking

4. Avoid ____ Highway 98. There’s a lot of construction going on.
   a. to take  b. taking

5. Keep on ____! Sooner or later, you’ll be able to finish the puzzle.
   a. to try  b. trying
   a. to turn   b. turning

7. I pretended ___ what Irv was saying, but in reality, I didn’t understand a thing.
   a. to understand   b. understand

8. Phil seems ___ in a bad mood. Do you know why?
   a. to be   b. being

9. You should consider ___ this course. It’s too hard for you.
   a. to drop   b. dropping

10. Because of the stormy weather, everyone was allowed ___ work early.
    a. to leave   b. leaving

11. Students are not permitted ___ their cell phones in class.
    a. to use   b. using

12. If you quit ___ coffee, you might sleep better.
    a. to drink   b. drinking

- Practice 15. Gerund or infinitive. (Charts 14-3 and 14-6)
  Circle the verb to complete the sentence correctly.

  1. John doesn’t mind (to live / living) alone.

  2. The traffic sign warns drivers (to be / being) careful of the slippery road.

  3. Travelers are required (to show / showing) their IDs at the gate.

  4. Don’t delay (to make / making) your reservations! Book your travel now!

  5. We expect the plane (to be / being) on time.

  6. I certainly appreciate (to be / being) here! Thank you for inviting me.

  7. Please stop (to hum / humming) that song over and over. It bothers me.

  8. My doctor suggests (to exercise / exercising) for thirty minutes every day.

  9. My doctor advises (to exercise / me to exercise) for thirty minutes every day.

10. My doctor advised me (to exercise / exercising) for thirty minutes every day.

11. I was advised (to exercise / exercising) for thirty minutes every day by my doctor.

12. I advised (to consult / my friend to consult) a lawyer.

13. My friend was advised (to consult / consulting) a lawyer.

14. She asked me (to recommend / recommending) a good lawyer.
Practice 16. Gerund or infinitive. (Charts 14-3 and 14-6)
Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verb in bold. Use him if a pronoun is required.

**Part I. Complete the sentences with stay.**
1. I expect _____________.
2. I want _____________.
3. I forced _____________.
4. I invited _____________.
5. I considered _____________.

**Part II. Complete the sentences with travel.**
1. He doesn’t mind _____________.
2. He enjoys _____________.
3. He needed _____________.
4. He quit _____________.
5. He is allowed _____________.

**Part III. Complete the sentences with work.**
1. They discussed _____________.
2. They intend _____________.
3. They were ordered _____________.
4. They decided _____________.
5. They offered _____________.

Practice 17. Gerund or infinitive. (Chart 14-7)
Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verb.

1. Don’t forget (turn) _____________ off your computers before you leave the office.
2. I’ll never forget (meet) _____________ the president when I was a child.
3. I’ll remember (stop) _____________ at the grocery store if I write myself a note and stick it in the window of my car.
4. Do you remember (see) _____________ a man running out of the bank with a large bag in his hand?
5. Don’t give me any more advice. Please stop (tell) _____________ me what to do.
6. At the mall, I met my old English teacher. We stopped (talk) _____________ for a while.
   That was very pleasant.
7. I had a bad argument with my friend Jerry two years ago. We stopped (speak) _____________ then and haven’t spoken since.
8. We regret (buy) _____________ this house. It needs too many repairs.
9. The letter said, “I regret (tell) _____________ you that your application has been denied.”
10. I tried very hard (learn) ________________ Chinese, but I couldn’t do it. I am just not good
    at languages.

11. We don’t know how to communicate with that man. We’ve tried (talk) ________________
    to him in Spanish, we’ve tried in Greek, we’ve tried in German, and we’ve tried in French. So
    far nothing’s worked.

► Practice 18. Gerund or infinitive. (Chart 14-7)
Circle the letter of the sentence that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. Jean and her husband stopped drinking coffee.
   a. They had a cup of coffee together.
   b. They don’t drink coffee anymore.

2. I regret to tell you that your aunt is very ill.
   a. I am sorry to inform you that your aunt is very ill.
   b. I am sorry that I informed you that your aunt was very ill.

3. Rita remembers locking the door this morning.
   a. Rita never forgets to lock the door in the morning.
   b. Rita remembers that she locked the door this morning.

4. I forgot to call my grandmother.
   a. I didn’t call my grandmother.
   b. I don’t remember whether I called my grandmother or not.

5. My back was sore from being at the computer all morning. I stopped to rest.
   a. I kept working.
   b. I took a break.

► Practice 19. Gerund or infinitive. (Chart 14-7)
Circle the letter of the correct completions. In some sentences, both are correct.

1. It was raining hard, but we continued __________.
   a. to drive  b. driving

2. The veterinarian tried __________ the horse’s life, but he failed.
   a. to save  b. saving

3. As soon as the play ended, the audience began __________ wildly.
   a. to applaud  b. applauding

4. I prefer __________ a movie rather than see one in a theater.
   a. to rent  b. renting

5. I prefer __________ movies at home.
   a. to see  b. seeing

6. I hate __________ in the house when the weather is beautiful.
   a. to stay  b. staying
7. I love ____ on the beach.
   a. to walk  b. walking

8. Most people enjoy ____ to music.
   a. to listen  b. listening

9. When you finish ____ , call me and I’ll come to pick you up.
   a. to shop  b. shopping

10. Please don’t cry. I can’t stand ____ you cry.
    a. to see  b. seeing

► Practice 20. If + infinitive; gerunds and infinitives as subjects. (Charts 14-8)
Circle the correct word or phrase in parentheses.

1. (Is / It’s) easy to use a computer.

2. Using a computer (is / it’s) easy.

3. To speak another language (is not / it’s not) easy.

4. (Is it / Is) difficult to speak another language?

5. (Go / Going) dancing is fun.

6. (It’s / Is) fun to go dancing.

7. Traveling (is / it’s) sometimes tiring.

8. It’s dangerous (jump / to jump) out of airplanes in a parachute.

9. (See / To see) the Grand Canyon is a thrilling experience.

10. (Is / Is it) collecting coins an interesting hobby?

► Practice 21. Review. (Charts 14-2 → 14-8)
Circle the letter of all the possible completions.

1. ___ to play tennis.
   a. I would like  g. I told Ted
   b. I asked Jack  h. We discussed
   c. I’m thinking about  i. It’s a good day
   d. I invited Ann  j. I enjoyed
   e. We had fun  k. We began
   f. I suggested  l. I hope

2. ___ playing tennis early.
   a. We finished  g. I promised Fred
   b. We want  h. We stopped
   c. I want them  i. I was invited
   d. We quit  j. We tried
   e. It’s a lovely day  k. We recommended
   f. I’m interested in  l. We considered
Practice 22. Gerund or infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. Air travelers have to anticipate ___ in long lines.
   a. to wait      b. waiting

2. The electronics store agreed ___ back the damaged radio.
   a. to take      b. taking

3. Doctor, would you mind ___ me the information in language I can understand?
   a. to give      b. giving

4. I miss ___ you in class every day.
   a. to see       b. seeing

5. Dan failed ___ the firefighter's examination and was quite upset.
   a. to pass      b. passing

6. The bad weather caused us ___ our connecting flight to Rome.
   a. to miss      b. missing

7. We dislike ___ dinner at 9:00 P.M.
   a. to eat       b. eating

8. Most of the students finished ___ their research papers on time.
   a. to write     b. writing

9. My niece hopes ___ with me to Disneyland next April.
   a. to go        b. going

10. This note will remind me ___ the chicken for dinner tomorrow night.
    a. to defrost   b. defrosting

11. Billy denied ___ the whole bag of potato chips that was on the table.
    a. to eat       b. eating

12. In a court of law, you must swear ___ the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth.
    a. to tell       b. telling

13. I'm sorry. I didn’t mean ___ you.
    a. to frighten   b. frightening

14. I regret not ___ harder when I was in high school.
    a. to study      b. studying
Practice 23. Review. (Chapter 14)
Write the correct form of a verb from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>apply</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>operate</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>camp</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>turn</td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Our family goes ________________ in the summer and fall. We love to cook outdoors and sleep in tents under the stars.
2. The doctor was forced ________________ immediately to save the patient’s life.
3. I have to drive more carefully. I can’t risk ________________ another speeding ticket.
4. Think about ________________ for that new job. You can do it, I know.
5. The sign at the intersection warns drivers not ________________ right when the light is red.
6. When Bess entered the room, she found her two cats ________________ on her bed.
7. When you get through ________________ the newspaper, could you please give me a little help in the kitchen?
8. I was furious at Bill’s rude behavior. I threatened ________________ our friendship.
9. Bill regretted ________________ rude language and apologized for ________________ to me in the way that he did.
10. The customers at the bank just stood ________________ helplessly as a masked gunman held everyone at gunpoint.
11. But two police officers caught the gunman ________________ out of the bank carrying two large bags of money.
Practice 24. Chapter review.
Correct the errors. All the errors are in the use of gerunds and infinitives and the words that go with them.

1. I don’t enjoy to watch TV.
2. I prefer to spend time to play board games and computer games.
3. It’s important keep your mind active.
4. There is some evidence that older people can avoid to become senile by exercise their brain.
5. Playing word games it is one good way to stimulate your brain.
6. In addition, is beneficial for everyone to exercise regularly.
7. Doctors advise older people eating fish two or three times a week.
8. Everyone should try eat well and exercise every day.
9. Pedro is interested to learn about other cultures.
10. He wants live in Japan next year.
11. He’s excited about attend a university there.
12. Right now he is struggling learning Japanese.
13. He has a hard time to pronounce the words.
14. He keeps on to study and to practice.
15. At night, he lies in bed to listen to Japanese language-teaching programs.
16. Then he dreams to travel to Japan.
Chapter 15
Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

► Practice 1. Infinitive of purpose: in order to. (Chart 15-1)
Correct the errors. Not every sentence has an error.

David is in Mexico . . .

1. for visit
2. for a convention
3. for his cousin’s wedding
4. to go sightseeing

5. for learn Spanish
6. to his health
7. for see the Mayan ruins
8. for the cool mountain air

► Practice 2. Infinitive of purpose: in order to. (Chart 15-1)
Circle the letter of the correct completion. In some sentences, both are correct.

1. Emily likes ____ ice skating every weekend.
   a. to go
   b. in order to go

2. Darcy opened the door ____ some fresh air in.
   a. to let
   b. in order to let

3. Beth practices night and day ____ ready for her piano recital next month.
   a. to be
   b. in order to be

4. Sue sent me an email ____ me that the meeting had been canceled.
   a. to inform
   b. in order to inform

5. We’ve decided not ____ a vacation this year.
   a. to take
   b. in order to take

6. Did you remember ____ Mr. Johnson?
   a. to call
   b. in order to call

7. On nice summer nights, we often walk on the beach ____ the sunsets.
   a. to watch
   b. in order to watch

8. The boys were so noisy that I had to ring a loud bell ____ their attention.
   a. to get
   b. in order to get

9. Airport workers wear ear protectors ____ their ears from jet noise.
   a. to protect
   b. in order to protect
**Practice 3. Adjectives followed by infinitives.** (Chart 15-2)

Complete the conversations. Write the letter of the phrase from the list.

a. to hear that
b. to bring the paper cups and paper plates
c. to get into one
d. to be alive
e. to introduce our country’s president
f. to lose the next game

1. A: Marta had a bad accident, I heard.
   B: Yes, she did. She’s lucky ____.

2. A: Why does Mr. Carlin walk up twelve flights of stairs every day? Is it for the exercise?
   B: No, not at all. He has a phobia about elevators. He’s afraid ____.

3. A: Who is going to cook dinner for our next meeting?
   B: I can’t cook, but I’m willing ____.

   B: Oh, that’s a shame. I’m very sorry ____.

5. A: Our three best soccer players are out with injuries.
   B: I know. Without them, you’re likely ____.

6. A: Turn the volume up. I want to hear what the senator is saying.
   B: “Ladies and gentlemen, I am proud ____.”

**Practice 4. Using infinitives with too and very.** (Chart 15-3)

Write very or too to complete each sentence correctly.

1. The box is _______ heavy, but I can lift it.

2. John dropped his physics course because it was ___________ difficult for him.

3. I think it’s ___________ late to get tickets to the concert. I heard they were all sold out.

4. Peter has turned 20. Now he’s ___________ old to take part in the ski races for teenagers.

5. Nancy was ___________ ill. Nevertheless, she came to the family reunion.

6. Learning a second language can be ___________ difficult, but most students in the class are doing well.

7. Professor Andrews is always ___________ interesting, but I’m ___________ tired to go to the lecture tonight.

8. Phil is ___________ young to understand. He’ll understand when he’s older.

9. I’m ___________ sleepy to watch the rest of the TV movie. Let me know how it turns out in the end.

10. A: I like your pin. It looks antique.
    B: It is. It’s ___________ old. It belonged to my great-grandmother.
**Practice 5. Using infinitives with too and enough.** (Chart 15-3)
Write very, too, or enough to complete each sentence correctly.

1. The classroom is ________ small, but it’s big ________ to hold fifteen students.
2. It’s ______________ dark to see in here. Please turn on the lights.
3. There’s not ______________ light in here. Can you turn on another light?
4. These new windows are made of specially treated glass. The glass is ____________ strong. It’s strong ____________ to resist the strong winds of hurricanes.
5. We’d like to go out in our sailboat today because the weather is ______________ nice. However, there isn’t ______________ wind to sail.
6. A trip to Europe is ______________ expensive for our family this year. We don’t have ______________ money to travel this year.
7. You’re ______________ young to drive a car, Emily. You’re only twelve years old! There will be time ______________ to drive when you’re older.
8. Dinner was ______________ good. This restaurant is good ______________ to come back to.
9. It’s ______________ hot today, but I’m going to take my daily walk anyway.
10. It’s hot ______________ to fry an egg on the sidewalk!

**Practice 6. Passive infinitives and gerunds.** (Chart 15-4)
Complete the sentences with the passive form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I hope (accepted) ______________ at State College.
2. I would like (given) ______________ a scholarship.
3. Leo wants (picked) ______________ for the soccer team.
4. Cats enjoy (petted) ______________.
5. Babies need (held) ______________.
6. I really appreciate (invited) ______________ to join this group.
7. Al is shy. He avoids (noticed) ______________.
8. Harold mentioned (invited) ______________ to a dinner at his boss’s house.

**Practice 7. Passive infinitives and gerunds.** (Chart 15-4)
Choose the infinitive or the passive infinitive. Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. The mail is supposed ____ before noon.
   a. to deliver  b. to be delivered
2. The mail carrier is supposed ____ the mail before noon.
   a. to deliver  b. to be delivered
3. Janice is going to fill out an application. She wants ____ for the job.
   a. to consider  b. to be considered
4. I expect ____ at the airport by my uncle.
   a. to meet       b. to be met

5. Mr. Steinberg offered ____ us to the train station.
   a. to drive      b. to be driven

6. The children appear ____ about the trip.
   a. to excite     b. to be excited

7. My co-worker and I agreed ____ the work equally.
   a. to divide     b. to be divided

8. Our boss appears ____ with this arrangement.
   a. to please     b. to be pleased

► Practice 8. Passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)
Choose the gerund or the passive gerund. Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. Shhh! Don’t ask questions! The professor doesn’t appreciate ____ when he’s speaking.
   a. interrupting   b. being interrupted

2. Avoid ____ Highway 77. There are a lot of delays because of construction.
   a. taking        b. being taken

3. The mountain climbers are in danger of ____ by an avalanche.
   a. killing       b. being killed

4. Does Dr. Johnson mind ____ at home if his patients need his help?
   a. calling       b. being called

5. I’m interested in ____ my conversational skills.
   a. improving     b. being improved

6. When Alex got home from school, he didn’t mention ____ by his teacher.
   a. scolding      b. being scolded

7. Sally’s low test scores kept her from ____ to the university.
   a. admitting     b. being admitted

8. Mr. Miller gave no indication of ____ his mind.
   a. changing      b. being changed

► Practice 9. Passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. We turn off the phone during dinner. We don’t want (call) ______________________ at that time.

2. Not many people enjoy (call) ______________________ by salespeople.

3. Each candidate hopes (elect) ______________________ by a large majority of the people.

4. It’s not easy (elect) ______________________.

5. Our mayor has an excellent chance (re-elect) ______________________.

6. Sometimes teenagers complain about not (understand) ______________________ by their parents.
7. Sometimes teenagers would like just (leave) ____________________ alone.

8. Don’t all of us want (love) ____________________ and (need) ____________________ by other people?

**Practice 10. Using gerunds or passive infinitives following need.** (Chart 15-5)

Circle the letters of all the sentences that can follow the given sentence.

1. A lot of things in our house don’t work.
   a. We need to repair them.
   b. They need to repair.
   c. They need to be repaired.
   d. They need repairing.

2. The refrigerator is so old that it hardly works anymore.
   a. We need to replace the refrigerator.
   b. It needs to replace.
   c. It needs to be replaced.
   d. It needs replacing.

3. The sink has been leaking for a month.
   a. A plumber needs to fix the sink.
   b. The sink needs to fix.
   c. The sink needs to be fixed.
   d. The sink needs fixing.

4. The color of the walls has faded.
   a. We need to paint the walls.
   b. The walls need to paint.
   c. The walls need to be painted.
   d. The walls need painting.

5. We don’t have a good repair person.
   a. We need to find a good repair person.
   b. A good repair person needs to find.
   c. A good repair person needs to be found.
   d. We need a repair person to find.

6. Please tell your repair person to call me.
   a. I need to call your repair person.
   b. I need to be called by your repair person.
   c. Your repair person needs to call me.
   d. Your repair person needs calling.

**Practice 11. Using verbs of perception.** (Chart 15-6)

Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Use each word only once. Use the simple form or the -ing form, whichever seems better to you. Sometimes both are OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>reach</th>
<th>talk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cry</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>rock</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Whenever I can, I like to watch the basketball team ____________________ for the upcoming game.

2. It’s interesting to sit in the airport and watch all the people ____________________ by.

3. I heard an upset baby ____________________.

4. Did you see Charles ____________________ the office? He ran out in a really big hurry!

5. It was a thrill to see my brother ____________________ the chess tournament last year.

6. I was amazed to see the firefighters ____________________ so soon after my call.

7. I can’t stand to be on a boat. When I feel the boat ____________________, I get seasick.

8. When I watch my yoga instructor ____________________ the exercises, it seems easy, but when I try them, it is hard.
9. We listened to the newscaster ____________ about the oncoming tornadoes.
10. A security guard at the bank observed a suspicious-looking man ____________ into his pocket for something. The guard thought it was a gun, but it turned out to be the man’s asthma inhaler.

**Practice 12. Using the simple form after let and help.** (Chart 15-7)
Write the letter of the correct completion. More than one completion may be correct. If so, write both.

1. The school guard stopped all the traffic to let the children ___ the street.
   a. cross  
   b. to cross  
   c. crossing
2. My friend Ole is very relaxed. He never lets anything ___ him.
   a. to bother  
   b. bother  
   c. bothering
3. My daughter helped me ___ an application online.
   a. filling out  
   b. filled out  
   c. fill out
4. Will you please help me ___ the kitchen? Otherwise, I’ll be here all night!
   a. clean up  
   b. to clean up  
   c. cleaning up
5. Elsa used to have very short hair, but now it is longer. She is letting it ___.
   a. growing  
   b. to grow  
   c. grow
6. We don’t let our dog ___ around outside. We always take him for walks on a leash.
   a. run  
   b. to run  
   c. running
7. Is it true that if you eat fish every day, it will help you ___ smarter?
   a. to become  
   b. becoming  
   c. become
8. Did someone help you ___ this research paper?
   a. write  
   b. wrote  
   c. writing

**Practice 13. Using causative verbs: make, have, get.** (Chart 15-8)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. The general made the soldiers (stand) ____________ at attention.
2. Don’t get rid of those shoes just because they are old. Have them (fix) ____________ at the shoe repair shop.
3. Exercise makes your heart (beat) ____________ faster.
4. What can we do to get Marissa (stop) ____________ smoking?
5. Jean finally got her son (clean) ____________ his room.
6. Paula’s new haircut makes her (look) ____________ ten years younger.
7. I’m sorry, sir. Your prescription is not renewable. Have your physician (call) ____________ us here at the pharmacy, and then we can refill it for you.
8. Please take this document to the copy store and have 15 copies (make) _____________. There are 150 pages, so you’d better have spiral bindings (put) ____________ on too.
Practice 14. Using causative verbs: make, have, get. (Chart 15-8)
Circle the letter of the correct completions. More than one completion may be correct.

1. You can ___ the bookstore order some books for you.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

2. You can order your books from the online bookstore and ___ them sent to you.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

3. If you’re nice to James, maybe you can ___ him to drive you to the airport.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

4. I’ll ___ the taxi driver take me to the airport.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

5. The comedian is so funny. I can’t help laughing even though I’m sad. That comedian can ___ anyone laugh.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

6. The students tried to ___ the professor to postpone the exam, but he didn’t.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

7. I’m going to ___ my car washed on Saturday.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

8. Ms. Andrews isn’t there? ___ her call me, please.
   a. Make       b. Have       c. Get

9. A magician can ___ a rabbit appear and disappear.
   a. make       b. have       c. get

Practice 15. Verb form review. (Chapters 14 and 15)
Circle the letter of the correct completion.

1. I enjoy ___ to the park on summer evenings.
   a. to go       b. going       c. being gone    d. go

2. Don’t forget ___ home as soon as you arrive at your destination.
   a. to call     b. calling     c. call          d. to be called

3. When we kept getting unwanted calls, I called the phone company and had my phone number ___.
   a. change      b. changed     c. to change    d. changing

4. Jean should seriously consider ___ an actress. She is a very talented performer.
   a. to become   b. become      c. becoming     d. will become

5. ___ television to the exclusion of all other activities is not a healthy habit for a growing child.
   a. Watch       b. Being watched c. Watching     d. To be watched

6. After their children had grown up, Mr. and Mrs. Sills decided ___ to a condominium in the city. They’ve never been sorry.
   a. moved      b. moving      c. move         d. to move

7. Are you interested in ___ the movie at University Theater?
   a. see         b. to see      c. being seen    d. seeing
8. The store manager caught the cashier ___ money from the cash register and promptly called the police. They discovered that it had been going on for a long time.
   a. to steal  b. stealing  c. stole  d. being stolen

9. The municipal authorities advised us ___ all drinking water during the emergency.
   a. to boil  b. to be boiled  c. boiling  d. boil

10. If we leave now for our trip, we can drive half the distance before we stop ___ lunch.
    a. having  b. to have  c. have  d. for having

11. It was difficult ___ the dialogue in the movie. The acoustics in the theater were very bad.
    a. to hear  b. hearing  c. heard  d. to heard

12. Our school basketball team won the championship game by ___ two points in the last five seconds. It was the most exciting game I have ever attended.
    a. being scored  b. to score  c. scoring  d. score

13. The flight attendants made all the passengers ___ their seat belts during the turbulence.
    a. to buckle  b. buckling  c. to buckled  d. buckle

14. At our class reunion, we had a lot of fun ___ at pictures of ourselves from twenty years ago.
    a. looking  b. look  c. looked  d. to look

15. It has become necessary ___ water in the metropolitan area because of the severe drought.
    a. rationing  b. ration  c. have rationed  d. to ration

**Practice 16. Verb form review. (Chapters 14 and 15)**

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Some sentences are passive.

1. Bill decided (buy) __________________ a new car rather than a used one.

2. We delayed (open) __________________ the doors of the testing center until exactly 9:00.

3. I really dislike (ask) __________________ to answer questions in class when I haven’t prepared my lesson.

4. I certainly didn’t anticipate (have) __________________ to wait in line for three hours for tickets to the baseball game!

5. When I was younger, I used (wear) __________________ mini-skirts and bright colors. Now I am accustomed to (dress) __________________ more conservatively.

6. Skydivers must have nerves of steel. I can’t imagine (jump) __________________ out of a plane and (fall) __________________ to the earth. What if the parachute didn’t open?

7. We are looking forward to (take) __________________ on a tour of Athens by our Greek friends.

8. I told the mail carrier that we would be away for two weeks on vacation. I asked her (stop) __________________ (deliver) __________________ our mail until the 21st. She told me (fill) __________________ out a form at the post office so that the post office would hold our mail until we returned.
9. The elderly man next door is just sitting in his rocking chair (gaze) ______ out the window. I wish there were something I could do (cheer) ______ him up.

10. I resent (have) ______ to work on this project with Fred. I know I’ll end up with most of the work falling on my shoulders.

Practice 17. Review. (Chapters 14 and 15)
Circle the letter of the correct form of the verb to complete each sentence.

1. Alice didn’t expect ____ to Bill’s party.
   a. to ask   b. to be asked   c. asking

2. Matthew left the office without ____ anyone.
   a. tell   b. telling   c. told

3. It’s useless. Give up. Enough’s enough. Don’t keep ____ your head against a brick wall.
   a. beat   b. beating   c. to beat

4. I hope ____ a scholarship for the coming semester.
   a. to award   b. to be awarded   c. being awarded

5. We are very pleased ____ your invitation.
   a. to accept   b. to be accepted   c. accept

6. It was exciting ____ to faraway places last year.
   a. travel   b. to travel   c. to traveled

7. Conscientious parents don’t let their children ____ too much television.
   a. watch   b. to watch   c. watching

8. Did you see that deer ____ across the road?
   a. run   b. ran   c. to run

9. Mr. Carson was very lucky ____ to represent the company in Paris.
   a. to be chosen   b. choosing   c. to chose

10. Last Saturday, we went ____.
     a. to shop   b. shopping   c. to shopping

11. ____ in the mountains is Tom’s favorite activity.
     a. Hike   b. Hiking   c. Go to hike

12. The physical activity makes him ____ good.
     a. feel   b. to feel   c. feeling

13. Martha opened the window ____ in some fresh air.
     a. let   b. letting   c. to let

14. Scott wastes a lot of time ____ out with his friends at the mall.
     a. hanging   b. to hang   c. hang

15. Did you remember ____ the front door?
     a. lock   b. to lock   c. locking

16. I don’t remember ever ____ that story before.
     a. hearing   b. heard   c. to hear

17. You should stop ____ if you get sleepy.
     a. drive   b. driving   c. to drive
18. I have trouble ____ asleep at night.
   a. fall  b. to fall  c. falling

19. After driving for three hours, we stopped ____ something to eat.
   a. to get  b. getting  c. got

20. The refrigerator needs ____ again.
   a. fixing  b. to fix  c. fixed

21. That pan is really hot. It’s too hot ____ up without an oven mitt.
   a. pick  b. picking  c. to pick

---

**Practice 18. Verb form review. (Chapters 14 and 15)**

Correct the errors.

1. You shouldn’t let children playing with matches.

2. Bobby was lying in bed to cry.

3. You can get there more quickly by take River Road instead of the interstate highway.

4. Isabel expected being admitted to the university, but she wasn’t.

5. Our lawyer advised us not signing the contract until she had a chance to study it very carefully.

6. John was responsible for to notify everyone about the meeting.

7. Apparently, he failed to calling several people.

8. I couldn’t understand what the passage said, so I asked my friend translated it for me.

9. You can find out the meaning of the word by look it up in a dictionary.

10. No, that’s not what I meant to say. How can I make you understanding?

11. Serena wore a large hat for protect her face from the sun.

12. We like to go to fish on weekends.

13. Maybe you can get Charlie taking you to the airport.

14. My doctor advised me not eating food with a high fat content.

15. Doctors always advise eat less and exercising more.

16. Allen smelled something to burn. When he ran into the kitchen, he saw fire coming out of the oven.
Practice 1. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Write the letter of the correct completion.

1. In the winter, Iceland is cold and ____.
   a. ice          b. dark          c. a country

2. Dan opened the door and ____ the room.
   a. enter        b. entering      c. entered

3. This dish is made of meat, potatoes, and ____.
   a. spicy        b. salty         c. vegetables

4. Jerry was driving and ____ on the phone at the same time.
   a. talks        b. talking       c. talked

5. Mimi learned how to sing and ____ at the Academy of the Arts.
   a. danced       b. dancing       c. dance

6. I have written and ____ her, but I have received no response.
   a. call         b. calling       c. called

7. Somebody called and ____ up.
   a. hung         b. hang          c. hanging

8. Don’t call and ____ up. Leave a short message.
   a. hung         b. hang          c. hanging

Practice 2. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Circle the conjunction that joins the parallel words. Then underline the words that are parallel and circle the letter of the part of speech that describes them.

1. These apples are fresh and sweet.
   a. adjective   d. adverb
   b. noun        e. gerund
   c. verb        f. infinitive

2. These apples and pears are fresh.
   a. adjective   d. adverb
   b. noun        e. gerund
   c. verb        f. infinitive

3. I washed and dried the apples.
   a. adjective   d. adverb
   b. noun        e. gerund
   c. verb        f. infinitive
4. I am washing and drying the apples.
   a. adjective  
   b. noun  
   c. verb  
   d. adverb  
   e. gerund  
   f. infinitive

5. We ate the fruit happily and quickly.
   a. adjective  
   b. noun  
   c. verb  
   d. adverb  
   e. gerund  
   f. infinitive

6. Those imported apples are delicious but expensive.
   a. adjective  
   b. noun  
   c. verb  
   d. adverb  
   e. gerund  
   f. infinitive

7. Apples, pears, and bananas are kinds of fruit.
   a. adjective  
   b. noun  
   c. verb  
   d. adverb  
   e. gerund  
   f. infinitive

8. I like an apple or a banana with my cereal.
   a. adjective  
   b. noun  
   c. verb  
   d. adverb  
   e. gerund  
   f. infinitive

9. Those apples are red, ripe, and juicy.
   a. adjective  
   b. noun  
   c. verb  
   d. adverb  
   e. gerund  
   f. infinitive

Practice 3. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Write the letter of the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

   a. carefully  
   b. excellence in  
   c. in agriculture  
   d. provide quality education  
   e. reliable health care  
   f. responsible  
   g. seeking practical solutions  
   h. finds a way to get the important jobs done

1. Mr. Li has had wide experience. He has worked in business, in the news media, and ____.
2. People want safe homes, good schools, and ____.
3. As a taxpayer, I want my money used wisely and ____.
4. Mrs. Adams is respected for researching issues and ____.
5. Ms. Hunter has established a record of effective and ____ leadership in government.
6. She has worked hard to control excess government spending, protect our environment, and ____.
7. Carol is a hard-working personnel manager who welcomes challenges and ____.
8. I will continue to fight for adequate funding of and ____ education.
Practice 4. Parallel structure: using commas. (Chart 16-2)
Add commas as necessary.
1. Jack was calm and quiet.
2. Jack was calm, quiet, and serene.
3. The football players practiced kicking and throwing the ball and they ran laps.
4. The football players practiced kicking, throwing, and running.
5. The children collected rocks and insects, and flew kites.
6. The teacher told the children to sit down, be quiet, and open their reading books.
7. The teacher told the children to sit down and be quiet.
8. Did you know that the pupil of your eye expands and contracts slightly with each heartbeat?
9. Our server carried two cups of coffee, three glasses of water, one glass of orange juice, and three orders of eggs on her tray.
10. My parents were strict but fair with their children.

Practice 5. Parallel structure. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)
Underline the words that are supposed to be parallel. Write “C” if the parallel structure is correct. Write “I” if the parallel structure is incorrect, and make any necessary corrections.

1. I admire him for his intelligence, cheerful disposition, and he is honest.
2. C Abraham Lincoln was a lawyer and a politician.
3. The boat sailed across the lake smoothly and quiet.
4. Barb studies each problem carefully and works out a solution.
5. Aluminum is plentiful and relatively inexpensive.
6. Many visitors to Los Angeles enjoy visiting Disneyland and to tour movie studios.
7. Children are usually interested in but a little frightened by snakes.
8. So far this term, the students in the writing class have learned how to write thesis statements, organize their material, and summarizing their conclusions.
9. When I looked more closely, I saw that it was not coffee but chocolate on my necktie.
11. All plants need light, a suitable climate, and they require an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
12. With their keen sight, fine hearing, and refined sense of smell, wolves hunt day or night in quest of elk, deer, moose, or caribou.
Practice 6. Paired conjunctions: both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor. (Chart 16-3)

Complete the sentences with the correct present tense form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Neither the students nor the teacher (know) _______ knows the answer.
2. Neither the teacher nor the students (know) _______ know the answer.
3. Not only the students but also the teacher (know) _______ the answer.
4. Not only the teacher but also the students (know) _______ the answer.
5. Both the teacher and the students (know) _______ the answer.
6. Neither Alan nor Carol (want) _______ to go skiing this weekend.
7. Both John and Ted (like) _______ to go cross-country skiing.
8. Either Jack or Alice (have) _______ the information you need.
9. Neither my parents nor my brother (agree) _______ with my decision.
10. Both intelligence and skill (be) _______ essential to good teaching.
11. Neither my classmates nor my teacher (realize) _______ that I have no idea what's going on in class.
12. Not only my husband but also my children (be) _______ in favor of my decision to return to school and finish my graduate degree.

Practice 7. Paired conjunctions: both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor. (Chart 16-3)

Write sentences with the given words and the paired conjunctions. Use capital letters and punctuation where necessary.

1. Mary drinks coffee. Her parents drink coffee.
   a. both ... and ____________________________.
   b. neither ... nor ____________________________.

2. John will do the work. Henry will do the work.
   a. either ... or ____________________________.
   b. neither ... nor ____________________________.

3. Our school recycles trash. The restaurants in town recycle trash.
   a. not only ... but also ____________________________.
   b. both ... and ____________________________.

Practice 8. Paired conjunctions: both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor. (Chart 16-3)

Part I. Use both ... and.

1. You know her mother. Do you know her father too?
   Yes, I know _______ both her mother and her father.

2. The nurses usually arrive early. Does the doctor arrive early too?
   Yes, ____________________________ early.
3. Bananas originated in Asia. Did mangos originate in Asia too?
   Yes, _____________________________________________ in Asia.

4. Whales are mammals. Are dolphins mammals too?
   Yes, _____________________________________________ mammals.

Part II. Use not only . . . but also.

5. Ethiopia exports coffee. Does it export oil too?
   Ethiopia ________________________________________ .

6. Air Greenland flies to Greenland. What about Icelandair?
   ________________________________________ to Greenland.

7. You bought a lime-green jacket. What about pants? Did you buy lime-green pants too?
   Yes, I bought ____________________________________ to go with it.

8. Al attended Harvard University. Did he attend Harvard Law School too?
   Yes, Al ________________________________________ .

Part III. Use either . . . or.

   ________________________________________ the answer.

10. You’re going to Mexico on your vacation. Are you going to Costa Rica too?
    We’re going ____________________________________, not to both.

11. Who will take Taka to the airport: Jim or Taka’s parents?
    ________________________________________ to the airport.

12. Helen’s buying salmon. Is she buying tuna too?
    No. She’s buying __________________________________, whichever looks fresher.

Part IV. Use neither . . . nor.

13. Fred doesn’t eat red meat. Do his children eat red meat?
    No, ________________________________________ eat red meat.

14. She doesn’t have health insurance. Do her children have health insurance?
    No, ________________________________________ health insurance.

15. Luis doesn’t have a family. Does he have friends?
    No, ________________________________________ .

16. How’s the weather there? Is it hot? Is it cold?
    It’s perfect! It’s ________________________________________ .

→ Practice 9. Separating independent clauses with periods; connecting them with and and but. (Chart 16-4)

Punctuate the sentences by adding commas or periods. Do not add any words. Add capitalization as necessary.

1. The rain stopped the birds sang.

2. The rain stopped and the birds sang.
3. The rain stopped the birds sang and the clouds disappeared.
4. A young boy ran out on the street his mother ran after him.
5. A young boy ran out on the street and his mother ran after him.
6. A young boy ran out on the street his mother ran after him and caught him by his shirt collar.
7. The café serves delicious pastries and coffee and it is always crowded.
8. The café serves delicious pastries and coffee it is always crowded.
9. The café serves delicious pastries, coffee, and ice cream but it is never crowded.

► Practice 10. Separating independent clauses with periods; connecting them with and and but. (Chart 16-4)
Correct the errors in punctuation and capitalization.

(1) My brother is visiting me for a couple of days we spent yesterday together in the city and we had a really good time.

(2) first I took him to the waterfront we went to the aquarium we saw fearsome sharks some wonderfully funny marine mammals and all kinds of tropical fish after the aquarium, we went downtown to a big mall and went shopping.

(3) I had trouble thinking of a place to take him for lunch because he’s a strict vegetarian but I remembered a restaurant that has vegan food we went there and we had a wonderful lunch of fresh vegetables and whole grains I’m not a vegetarian but I must say that I really enjoyed the meal.

(4) In the afternoon it started raining we decided to go to a movie it was pretty good but had too much violence for me I felt tense when we left the theater I prefer comedies or dramas my brother loved the movie.

(5) We ended the day with a delicious home-cooked meal and some good conversation in my living room it was an excellent day I like spending time with my brother.

► Practice 11. Chapter review. (Chapter 16)
Correct the errors. Add the necessary punctuation.

1. Either John will call Mary or Bob.
2. Not only Sue saw the mouse but also the cat.
3. Both my mother talked to the teacher and my father.
4. Either Mr. Anderson or Ms. Wiggins are going to teach our class today.
5. I enjoy not only reading novels but also magazines I enjoy.
6. Smallpox is a dangerous disease. Malaria too. Both are dangerous.
7. She wants to buy a compact car, she is saving her money.
8. According to the news report, it will snow tonight the roads may be dangerous in the morning.
9. While we were in New York, we attended an opera, while we were in New York, we ate at marvelous restaurants, we visited some old friends.

Practice 12. Chapter review.
Complete the crossword puzzle. Use the clues under the puzzle. All the words come from Chapter 16.

Across
3. I drink tea, ________ I don’t drink coffee.
4. Carl is not ________ a chemist but also a biologist.
6. Thankfully, ________ Mary or Joe will help us.
7. He has neither friends ________ money.

Down
1. ________ Jane nor Al speaks Spanish.
2. ________ Sue and Sam are doctors.
5. Salt ________ pepper are on the table.
Chapter 17
Adverb Clauses

Practice 1. Adverb clauses. (Chart 17-1)
Underline the adverb clause in each sentence.

1. Sue dropped a carton of eggs as she was leaving the store.
2. Tomorrow, we’ll all take a run in the park before we have breakfast.
3. Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week, he has had to use crutches to walk.
4. Because I already had my boarding pass, I didn’t have to stand in line at the airline counter.
5. Productivity in a factory increases if the workplace is made pleasant.
6. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, its name was changed to Sri Lanka.
7. Ms. Johnson regularly returns her email messages as soon as she receives them.
8. Tarik will be able to work more efficiently once he becomes familiar with the new computer program.

Practice 2. Periods and commas. (Chart 17-1)
Add periods and commas as necessary. Do not change, add, or omit any words. Capitalize as necessary.

1. The lake was calm. Tom went fishing.
2. Because the lake was calm Tom went fishing.
3. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm he caught two fish.
4. When Tom went fishing the lake was calm he caught two fish.
5. The lake was calm so Tom went fishing he caught two fish.
6. Because the lake was calm and quiet Tom went fishing.
7. The lake was calm quiet and clear when Tom went fishing.
8. Because Mr. Hood has dedicated his life to helping the poor he is admired in his community.
9. Mr. Hood is admired because he has dedicated his life to helping the poor he is well known for his work on behalf of homeless people.
10. Microscopes automobile dashboards and cameras are awkward for left-handed people to use they are designed for right-handed people when “lefties” use these items they have to use their right hand to do the things that they would normally do with their left hand.
Practice 3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2)
Circle the letter of the correct answer.

1. After Ismael ____ his degree, he plans to seek employment in an engineering firm.
   a. will finish       b. finishes       c. is going to finish      d. is finishing

2. By the time Colette leaves work today, she ____ the budget report.
   a. will finish       b. finishes       c. will have finished       d. had finished

3. When my aunt ____ at the airport tomorrow, I’ll be at work, so I can’t pick her up.
   a. will arrive       b. arrived       c. will have arrived       d. arrives

4. Natasha heard a small “meow” and looked down to discover a kitten at her feet. When she saw it, she ____.
   a. is smiling       b. had smiled       c. smiled       d. smiles

5. Ahmed has trouble keeping a job. By the time Ahmed was thirty, he ____ eight different jobs.
   a. has       b. was having       c. had had       d. had been having

6. Maria waits until her husband, Al, ____ to work before she calls her friends on the phone.
   a. will go       b. went       c. will have gone       d. goes

7. I went to an opera at Lincoln Center the last time I ____ to New York City.
   a. go       b. went       c. had gone       d. have gone

8. When the police arrived, the building was empty. The thieves ____ and escaped through an unlocked window.
   a. will have       b. have entered       c. had entered       d. were entering

9. It seems that whenever I try to take some quiet time for myself, the phone ____.
   a. has been ringing       b. rings       c. is ringing       d. has rung

10. I’ll invite the Thompkins to the potluck dinner the next time I ____ them.
    a. see       b. will see       c. will have seen       d. have seen

11. I ____ hard to help support my family ever since I was a child.
    a. worked       b. work       c. am working       d. have worked

12. A small rabbit ran across the path in front of me as I ____ through the woods.
    a. was walking       b. had walked       c. am walking       d. had been walking

Practice 4. Verb tense review. (Chart 17-2)
Write “1” before the event that happened first. Write “2” before the event that happened second. Write “S” for same if the events happened at the same time.

1. As soon as it stopped snowing, the children ran out to go sledding in the fresh snow.
   1. It stopped snowing.
   2. The children ran out to go sledding.

2. I’ll call you as soon as we arrive at the motel.
   1. I’ll call you.
   2. We arrive at the hotel.

3. We turned on the heat when it got cold.
   1. It got cold.
   2. We turned on the heat.
4. We will turn on the heat when it gets cold.

   We will turn on the heat.

   It will get cold.

5. By the time Sharon gets home from Africa, she will have been away for two years.

   Sharon gets home.

   She will have been away.

6. By the time Marc graduated from medical school, he had been studying for 20 years.

   He had been studying.

   Marc graduated from medical school.

7. We were crying while we were watching the movie.

   We were crying.

   We were watching the movie.

8. When I have some news, I’ll tell you.

   I have some news.

   I’ll tell you.

Practice 5. Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect. (Chart 17-3)

Complete the sentences in Column A with a clause from Column B.

Column A

1. I left a message on Jane’s voice mail because _____.
2. Since everybody in my office dresses informally, _____.
3. Now that it’s summer, _____.
4. I was late for work because _____.
5. Because the temperature dropped below 0 degrees C (32 degrees F), _____.
6. Sue hopes to find a good job now that _____.
7. I’m not going to the party since _____.
8. We had to eat dinner by candlelight because _____.
9. Since our favorite restaurant was closed, _____.
10. I prefer a small car because _____.

Column B

a. the days are longer
b. we went to another one
c. I wasn’t invited
d. she didn’t answer her phone
e. the electricity went off
f. there was a big traffic jam
g. it uses less gasoline
h. the water in the lake froze
i. I usually wear jeans to work
j. she has received her master’s degree in business

Practice 6. Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect. (Chart 17-3)

Combine the sentences. Write one clause in each blank.

1. My registration was canceled. I didn’t pay the registration fee on time.

   _______________ because _______________.

2. I’m late. There was a lot of traffic.

   _______________ because _______________.

3. Harry lost 35 pounds. He was on a strict weight-loss diet.

   Because _______________,

4. We can’t have lunch at Mario’s tomorrow. It is closed on Sundays.

   Since _______________,

   _______________
5. Jack drives to work. He has a car.
   Now that ____________________________,

6. Natalie should find another job. She is very unhappy in this job.
   ____________________________ since ____________________________

7. David knows the way. He will lead us.
   ____________________________ because ____________________________

8. Frank has graduated from law school. He is looking for a job in a law office.
   ____________________________ now that ____________________________

**Practice 7. Even though vs. because.** (Charts 17-3 and 17-4)
Circle *even though* or *because*.

1. I put on my raincoat (*even though / because*) it was a bright, sunny day.
2. I put on my raincoat (*even though / because*) it was raining.
3. (*Even though / Because*) Sue is a good student, she received a scholarship.
4. (*Even though / Because*) Ann is a good student, she didn’t receive a scholarship.
5. (*Even though / Because*) I was so tired, I didn’t want to walk all the way home. I took a taxi.
6. (*Even though / Because*) I was dead tired, I walked all the way home.
7. This letter was delivered (*even though / because*) it didn’t have enough postage.
8. That letter was returned to the sender (*even though / because*) it didn’t have enough postage.

**Practice 8. Even though vs. because.** (Charts 17-3 and 17-4)
Complete the sentences with *even though* or *because*.

1. I’m going horseback riding with Judy this afternoon ____________________________ I’m afraid of horses.
2. I’m going horseback riding with Judy this afternoon ____________________________ I enjoy it.
3. ____________________________ the economy is not good right now, people are not buying new cars and other expensive items.
4. ____________________________ the economy is not good right now, the supermarket is still a profitable business. People always have to eat.
5. Members of the Polar Bear Club are swimmers who go swimming in the ocean ____________________________ the temperature may be freezing.
6. Members of the Polar Bear Club are swimmers who swim in the ocean every day in summer and winter ____________________________ they love to swim in the ocean.
7. Janet got a grade of 98 percent on her history test ____________________________ she studied hard.
8. Mike got a grade of 98 percent on his history test ____________________________ he didn’t study at all. I wonder how that happened.
Practice 9. Showing direct contrast: while. (Chart 17-5)

Circle the letter of the phrase that shows direct contrast.

1. Larry and Barry are twins, but they are very different. Larry never studies, while Barry ____.
   a. rarely studies
   b. sleeps all day
   c. is very studious

2. My roommate and I disagree about the room temperature. While she likes it warm, I ____.
   a. prefer cold temperatures
   b. have trouble when it is cool
   c. don’t like my roommate

3. Athletes need to be strong, but they may need different physical characteristics for different sports. For example, weight-lifters have well-developed chest muscles, while ____.
   a. basketball players’ muscles are strong
   b. basketball players should be tall
   c. basketball players’ chest muscles are very large

4. Portland, Maine, is on the East Coast of the United States, while Portland, Oregon, ____.
   a. is on the East Coast too
   b. lies on the West Coast
   c. is another medium-sized city

5. Crocodiles and alligators look a lot alike, but they have certain differences. While a crocodile has a very long, narrow, V-shaped snout, the alligator’s snout is ____.
   a. wider and U-shaped
   b. long, narrow, and V-shaped
   c. large and green

6. The Earth is similar to Venus in some ways, but their atmospheres are different. While the Earth’s atmosphere contains mostly nitrogen and oxygen, ____.
   a. Venus has mainly nitrogen and oxygen
   b. Venus’ air is very cold
   c. Venus’ atmosphere consists mostly of the gas carbon dioxide

7. Polar bears live near the North Pole, while ____.
   a. penguins live there too
   b. penguins live at the South Pole
   c. they live in the South Pole

8. Potatoes and tomatoes originated in the Americas, while ____.
   a. mangos and bananas come from Asia
   b. corn and chocolate come from the Americas
   c. turkeys first lived in North America
Practice 10. *If*-clauses. (Chart 17-6)
Underline the entire *if*-clause. Correct any errors in verb forms. Some sentences have no errors.

rains

1. We won’t go to the beach if it will rain tomorrow.

2. If my car doesn’t start tomorrow morning, I’ll take the bus to work. (no change)

3. If I have any free time during my work day, I’ll call you.

4. I’ll send you an email if I will have some free time tomorrow.

5. If we don’t leave within the next ten minutes, we are late for the theater.

6. If we will leave within the next ten minutes, we will make it to the theater on time.

7. The population of the world will be 9.1 billion in 2050 if it will continue to grow at the present rate.

Practice 11. Shortened *if*-clauses. (Chart 17-7)
First, complete the sentences in two ways:

- a. Use *so* or *not*.
- b. Use a helping verb or main verb *be*.

Then, give the full meaning of the shortened *if*-clause.

1. Does Tom live near you?
   
   a. If _______so_______, ask him to pick you up at 5:30.
   
   b. If he _______does_______, ask him to pick you up at 5:30.

   Meaning: _______If Tom lives near you___________

2. Are you a resident of Springfield?
   
   a. If ___________, you can get a library card for the Springfield Library.
   
   b. If you ___________, you can get a library card for the Springfield Library.

   Meaning: ___________________________________________________________________

3. Do you have enough money to go out to dinner?
   
   a. If ___________, I’ll pay for you.
   
   b. If you ___________, I’ll pay for you.

   Meaning: ___________________________________________________________________

4. Are you going to do the laundry?
   
   a. If ___________, I have some things that need washing too.
   
   b. If you ___________, I have some things that need washing too.

   Meaning: ___________________________________________________________________

5. I think I left the water running in the sink.
   
   a. If ___________, we’d better go home and turn it off.
   
   b. If I ___________, we’d better go home and turn it off.

   Meaning: ___________________________________________________________________
Practice 12. Using whether or not and even if. (Chart 17-8)
Complete the sentences using the given information.

1. Juan is going to go to the horse races no matter what. He doesn’t care if his wife approves. In other words, Juan is going to go to the horse races even if his wife ______ doesn’t approve ______. He’s going to go whether his wife ____ approves ______ or not.

2. Fatima is determined to buy an expensive car. It doesn’t matter to her if she can’t afford it. In other words, Fatima is going to buy an expensive car whether she _____________ it or not. She’s going to buy one even if she ________________ it.

3. William wears his raincoat every day. He wears it when it’s raining. He wears it when it’s not raining. In other words, William wears his raincoat whether it ________________ or not. He wears it even if it ________________.

4. Some students don’t understand what the teacher is saying, but still they smile and nod. In other words, even if they ________________ what the teacher is saying, they smile and nod. They smile and nod whether they ________________ what the teacher is saying or not.

5. Everybody has to pay taxes. It doesn’t matter whether you want to or not. In other words, even if you ________________, you have to pay them. You have to pay your taxes ________________ or not.

Practice 13. Adverb clauses of condition: using unless. (Chart 17-10)
The sentences in italics are well-known proverbs or sayings. Write sentences with the same meaning as the sentences in italics. Use unless.

1. If you can’t stand the heat, get out of the kitchen.
   (This means that if you can’t take the pressure, then you should remove yourself from the situation.)
   Get out of the kitchen ______ unless you can stand the heat ______.

2. If it isn’t broken, don’t fix it. (This is often said as If it ain’t broke, don’t fix it.)
   (This means that any attempt to improve something that already works is pointless and may even hurt it.)
   Don’t fix it ______.

3. If you can’t beat ’em, join ’em.
   (This means if you can’t beat your opponents, you can join them.)
   You might not be successful ______.
Practice 14. Adverb clauses of condition: using only if. (Chart 17-11)
Complete the sentences with the information in the given sentence.
1. Jack never calls his uncle unless he wants something.
   Jack calls his uncle only if _____________________________.
2. When Helen runs out of clean clothes, she does her laundry. Otherwise, she never does laundry.
   Helen does laundry only if _____________________________.
3. José doesn’t like to turn on the heat in his house unless the temperature outside goes below 50 degrees F (10 degrees C).
   José turns on the heat only if _____________________________.
4. Zack hates to fly. He usually travels by car or train except when it is absolutely necessary to get somewhere quickly.
   Zack flies only if _____________________________.
5. Most applicants cannot get into Halley College. You probably won’t get in. Only the top students will get in.
   Only if you are a top student _____________________________.
6. I could never afford a big house like that! Well, maybe if I win the lottery. That would be the only way.
   Only if I win the lottery _____________________________.

Practice 15. Review: adverb clauses of condition. (Charts 17-8 → 17-11)
Circle the correct words in parentheses to logically complete each sentence.
1. I’ll pass the course only if I (pass / don’t pass) the final examination.
2. I’m (going to go / not going to go) to the park unless the weather is nice.
3. I’m going to the park unless it (rains / doesn’t rain).
4. I’m sorry that you won’t join us on Saturday. But please call us (in case / even if) you change your mind.
5. Bob doesn’t like to work. He’ll get a job (unless / only if) he has to.
6. I (always eat / never eat) breakfast unless I get up late and don’t have enough time.
7. I always finish my homework (even if / only if) I’m sleepy and want to go to bed.
8. Ali is at his desk at 8:00 A.M. sharp (whether / unless) his boss is there or not.
9. You (will / won’t) learn to play the guitar well unless you practice every day.
10. Even if the president calls, (wake / don’t wake) me up. I don’t want to talk to anyone. I need to sleep.
11. Burt is going to come to the game with us today (if / unless) his boss gives him the afternoon off.
12. Only if people succeed in reducing greenhouse gases (we can / can we) avoid the effects of global warming.
Practice 16. Adverb clauses. (Chapter 17)

Complete the sentences with the correct phrase from the list. Write the letter of the phrase.

a. her friend goes with her  
   b. I don't eat meat  
   c. I don't have an 8:00 A.M. class anymore  
   d. I eat meat  
   e. I'm working on the weekends now  
   f. none of her friends will go with her  
   g. you have a real emergency  
   h. you promise to keep it a secret

1. A: Won't you tell me about Emma and Tom? Oh, please tell me!  
   B: Well, OK, I'll tell you, but only if ____.

   B: This is 911. You've dialed the wrong number. Call this number only in case ____.

3. A: Isn't Sara coming to the party?  
   B: I don't think so. She's too shy to come alone. She doesn't go anywhere unless ____.

4. A: Your grandmother has traveled to 32 countries all by herself?  
   B: Yes, she has! She loves to travel to exotic places even if ____.

5. A: Do you want to go to Johnson's Steak House or Vernon's Vegetable Stand for lunch?  
   B: Definitely, Vernon's Vegetable Stand since ____.

6. A: They say that people who don't eat meat live longer than people who do.  
   B: Well, I think that I will live a certain number of years whether or not ____.

7. A: You haven't come to our book club for months! How come?  
   B: Oh, I can't come on Saturdays anymore because ____.

8. A: Hi, Kevin . . . Oh, did I wake you up? It's 7:30 already! You need to get up.  
   B: I sleep later now, Andy, since ____.

Practice 17. Chapter review.

Circle the letter of the adverb or adverb phrase that best completes each sentence.

1. Alice will tutor you in math ____ you promise to show up promptly every day.
   a. unless  
   b. only if  
   c. whereas  
   d. even though

2. Oscar won't pass his math course ____ he gets a tutor.
   a. in case  
   b. unless  
   c. only if  
   d. because

3. Most people you meet will be polite to you ____ you are polite to them.
   a. in case  
   b. even though  
   c. unless  
   d. if

4. I'm glad that my mother made me take piano lessons when I was a child ____ I hated it at the time. Now, I enjoy playing the piano every day.
   a. even though  
   b. because  
   c. unless  
   d. if

5. Chicken eggs will not hatch ____ they are kept at the proper temperature.
   a. because  
   b. unless  
   c. only if  
   d. even though
6. You’d better take your raincoat with you ___ the weather changes. It could rain before you
get home again.
   a. now that  
   b. even if  
   c. in case  
   d. only if

7. Ms. Jackson was assigned the fifth-grade science class ___ she has the best science
   qualifications of all the teachers in that elementary school.
   a. although  
   b. whereas  
   c. if  
   d. since

8. My sister can fall asleep under any conditions, but I can’t get to sleep ___ the light is off and
   the room is perfectly quiet.
   a. if  
   b. unless  
   c. in case  
   d. now that

9. In a democratic government, a leader is directly responsible to the people, ___ in a
dictatorship, a leader has no direct responsibility to the people.
   a. because  
   b. even though  
   c. while  
   d. unless

10. Parents love and support their children ___ the children misbehave or do foolish things.
    a. even if  
    b. since  
    c. if  
    d. only if
Chapter 18
Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

Practice 1. Introduction. (Chart 18-1)
Each sentence contains either an adverb clause or an adverb phrase. Underline the adverb clause or phrase in each sentence.

1. While they were riding in the car for six hours, the children became restless.
2. While riding in the car for six hours, the children became restless.
3. Before taking our long car trip across the country, we had drawn our route on a large road map.
4. While watching the exciting basketball game on TV, the boys forgot all about dinner.
5. While they were watching the exciting basketball game on TV, the boys forgot all about dinner.
6. Before leaving for the airport, we checked to make sure we had all our travel necessities with us.
7. We heard a lot of thunder while we were walking on the beach this afternoon.
8. We heard a lot of thunder while walking on the beach this afternoon.
9. While I was trying to get a taxi, I was almost run over by several taxis that passed me by.
10. Before getting into a taxi, I was almost run over by several that passed me by.

Practice 2. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Chart 18-2)
Check the grammatically correct sentences.

1. ___ While watching an exciting program, the TV suddenly went off.
2. ___ While starting up, my computer suddenly crashed.
3. ___ While watching an exciting program, I fell asleep.
4. ___ Before going to bed, I always open the bedroom windows.
5. ___ Before going to bed, the bedroom windows are always open.
6. ___ After opening the bedroom windows, I crawl into bed for the night.
7. ___ Since graduating from college, nobody has offered me a job yet.
8. ___ Since graduating from college, I haven’t found a job yet.
9. ___ After sitting on her eggs for four weeks, we saw the mother duck welcome her baby ducklings.
10. ___ After sitting on her eggs for four weeks, the mother duck welcomed her baby ducklings.
Practice 3. Changing time clauses to modifying adverbial phrases.
(Chart 18-2)
Change the adverb clause to a modifying phrase.

opening
1. Since he opened his new business, Bob has been working sixteen hours a day.
2. I shut off the lights before I left the room.
3. After I had met the movie star in person, I understood why she was so popular.
4. After I searched through all my pockets, I found my keys.
5. While he was herding his goats in the mountains, an Ethiopian named Kaldi discovered the coffee plant more than 1,200 years ago.
6. Before they marched into battle, ancient Ethiopian soldiers ate a mixture of coffee beans and fat for extra energy.
7. While she was flying across the Pacific Ocean in 1937, the famous pilot Amelia Earhart disappeared.
8. After they imported rabbits to Australia, the settlers found that these animals became pests.

Practice 4. Adverb clauses and modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 → 18-3)
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. a. Before (leave) ____________ on his trip, Tom renewed his passport.
   b. Before Tom (leave) ____________ on his trip, he renewed his passport.
2. a. After Thomas Edison (invent) ____________ the light bulb, he went on to create many other useful inventions.
   b. After (invent) ____________ the light bulb, Thomas Edison went on to create many other useful inventions.
3. a. While (work) ____________ with uranium ore, Marie Curie discovered two new elements, radium and polonium.
   b. While she (work) ____________ with uranium ore, Marie Curie discovered two new elements, radium and polonium.
4. a. Before an astronaut (fly) ____________ on a space mission, she will have undergone thousands of hours of training.
   b. Before (fly) ____________ on a space mission, an astronaut will have undergone thousands of hours of training.
5. a. After they (study) ____________ the stars, the ancient Mayans in Central America developed a very accurate solar calendar.
   b. After (study) ____________ the stars, the ancient Mayans in Central America developed a very accurate solar calendar.
6. a. Since (learn) ________ that cigarettes cause cancer, many people have stopped smoking.
   b. Since they (learn) ________ that cigarettes cause cancer, many people have stopped smoking.

7. a. When (take) ________ any medication, you should be sure to follow the directions on the label.
   b. When you (take) ________ any medication, you should be sure to follow the directions on the label.

8. a. While I (drive) ________ to my uncle’s house, I took a wrong turn and ended up back where I had started.
   b. While (drive) ________ to my uncle’s house, I took a wrong turn and ended up back where I had started.

Practice 5. Expressing the idea of “during the same time” in modifying adverbial phrases. (Chart 18-3)

Underline the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause. Change the adverb clauses to modifying phrases if possible.

1. While Sam was driving to work in the rain, his car got a flat tire.
   (no change)

2. While Sam was driving to work, he had a flat tire.
   While driving to work, Sam had a flat tire.

3. Before Nick left on his trip, his son gave him a big hug and a kiss.

4. Before Nick left on his trip, he gave his itinerary to his secretary.

5. After Tom had worked hard in the garden all afternoon, he took a shower and then went to the movies with his friends.

6. After Sunita had made a delicious chicken curry for her friends, they wanted the recipe.

7. Before a friend tries to do something hard, an American may say “Break a leg!” to wish him or her good luck.

8. Emily always cleans off her desk before she leaves the office at the end of each day.
Practice 6. Expressing the idea of “during the same time” and cause/effect in modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Underline the modifying adverbial phrase in each sentence. Then circle the letter of the meaning of each modifying phrase. In some sentences, both meanings may be given.

1. Riding his bicycle to school, Enrique fell off and scraped his knee.
   a. while       b. because

2. Being seven feet tall, the basketball player couldn’t sit in a regular airplane seat.
   a. while       b. because

3. Driving to work this morning, I remembered that I had already missed the special 8:00 A.M. breakfast meeting.
   a. while       b. because

4. Running five miles on a very hot day, James felt exhausted.
   a. while       b. because

5. Having run for 26 miles in the marathon, the runners were exhausted at the end of the race.
   a. while       b. because

6. Drinking a tall glass of soothing iced tea, Ann felt her tired muscles relax.
   a. while       b. because

7. Clapping loudly at the end of the game, the fans showed their appreciation of the team.
   a. while       b. because

8. Speaking with her guidance counselor, Carol felt that she was being understood.
   a. while       b. because

9. Knowing that I was going to miss the plane because of heavy traffic, I phoned the airline to get a seat on a later plane.
   a. while       b. because

10. Having missed my plane, I had to wait four hours to take the next one.
    a. while       b. because

11. Waiting for my plane to depart, I watched thousands of people walking through the airport.
    a. while       b. because

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases 183
Practice 7. Expressing the idea of “during the same time” and cause/effect in modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Complete the sentences in Column A with a clause from Column B.

Column A
1. Talking on the phone with my friend, ____.
2. While watching an old movie on TV, ____.
3. Drinking a big glass of water in four seconds, ____.
4. Because I like old movies, ____.
5. Since receiving a big job promotion, ____.
6. Having finished my long report, ____.
7. Unable to reach my friend by phone, ____.
8. Being a shy person, ____.
9. Having lived in Rome for two years, ____.
10. Wanting to get home quickly, ____.

Column B
a. I handed it in to my supervisor this morning.
b. I watch a lot of them on TV late at night.
c. I decided to email her.
d. I have more responsibility.
e. I can speak Italian.
f. I don’t like to go to parties alone.
g. I ran all the way.
h. I heard the click of the phone disconnecting.
i. I fell asleep.
j. I quenched my thirst.

Practice 8. Modifying phrases and clauses. (Charts 18-2 → 18-4)
Circle all the possible completions for each sentence. More than one may be correct.

1. Before ____ you, I had not known such a wonderful person existed!
   a. met
   b. meeting
   c. I met
2. After ____ what the candidate had to say, I am considering voting for him.
   a. I heard
   b. having heard
   c. hearing
3. Since ____ married, Fred seems very happy and content.
   a. he got
   b. getting
   c. got
4. ____ through outer space at a speed of 25,000 miles per hour (40,000 kilometers), the astronauts were able to see the Earth.
   a. Speeding
   b. While speeding
   c. Sped
5. ____ president of his new country, George Washington had been a general in its army.
   a. Before becoming
   b. While becoming
   c. Before he became
6. ____ rap music before, our grandparents wondered why it was so popular.
   a. Had never heard
   b. Because they had never heard
   c. Never having heard
7. ____ the English faculty, Professor Wilson has become the most popular teacher at our university.
   a. Since joining
   b. While joining
   c. Since he joined
Practice 9. Modifying phrases with upon. (Chart 18-5)
Rewrite the sentences with the given words.

1. When Sarah received her acceptance letter for medical school, she shouted for joy.
   a. Upon ___________________________.
   b. On ________________________________.

2. On hearing the sad news, Kathleen began to cry.
   a. Upon ________________________________.
   b. When ________________________________.

3. Upon looking at the accident victim, the paramedics decided to transport him to the hospital.
   a. On ________________________________.
   b. When ________________________________.

Practice 10. Modifying phrases with upon. (Chart 18-5)
Complete the sentences using the ideas in the given list.

   a. She learned the problem was not at all serious.
   b. She was told she got it.
   c. She discovered a burnt-out wire.
   d. She arrived at the airport.
   e. She reached the other side of the lake.

1. It had been a long, uncomfortable trip. Upon ____________________, Sue quickly unfastened her seat belt and stood in the aisle waiting her turn to disembark.

2. Kim rented a small fishing boat last weekend, but she ended up doing more rowing than fishing. The motor died halfway across the lake, so she had to row to shore. It was a long distance away. Upon ____________________________, she was exhausted.

3. At first, we thought the fire had been caused by lightning. However, upon ____________________________, the fire chief determined it had been caused by faulty electrical wiring.

4. Amy felt terrible. She was sure she had some terrible disease, so she went to the doctor for some tests. Upon ____________________________, she was extremely relieved.

5. Janet wanted that scholarship with all her heart and soul. Upon ____________________________, she jumped straight up in the air and let out a scream of happiness.
Practice 11. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 → 18-5)

Write the letter of a clause from the list that logically follows the modifying phrase.

a. the desperate woman grasped a floating log after the boat turned over
b. the taxi driver caused a multiple-car accident
c. carefully proofread all your answers
d. the students repeated the experiment
e. the athletes waved to the cheering crowd
f. the little girl raised her hand
g. the manager learned of their dissatisfaction with their jobs
h. the passengers angrily walked back to the ticket counter
i. Margo hasn’t been able to play tennis
j. the worker in charge of Section B of the assembly line told the assistant manager about a production problem

1. Trying to understand the physics problem, ____.
2. Fighting for her life, ____.
3. Wanting to ask a question, ____.
4. After having injured her ankle, ____.
5. Not wanting to disturb the manager, ____.
6. Upon hearing the announcement that their plane was delayed, ____.
7. Talking with the employees after work, ____.
8. Attempting to get onto the freeway, ____.
9. Stepping onto the platform to receive their medals, ____.
10. Before turning in your exam paper, ____.
Chapter 19
Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

Practice 1. Using because of and due to. (Chart 19-1)
Circle the letters of the words that can complete each sentence. More than one answer is possible.

1. The plane was delayed because _____.
   a. bad weather
   b. the weather was bad
   c. there was heavy air traffic
   d. heavy air traffic
   e. mechanical difficulty
   f. the mechanics had to make a repair

2. The plane was delayed because of _____.
   a. bad weather
   b. the weather was bad
   c. there was heavy air traffic
   d. heavy air traffic
   e. mechanical difficulty
   f. the mechanics had to make a repair

3. The thief was caught because _____.
   a. the police responded quickly
   b. the quick police response
   c. he left fingerprints
   d. the fingerprints on the door
   e. there was a security video
   f. a security video

4. The thief was caught due to _____.
   a. the police responded quickly
   b. the quick police response
   c. he left fingerprints
   d. the fingerprints on the door
   e. there was a security video
   f. a security video

Practice 2. Using because of and due to. (Chart 19-1)
Circle the words or phrases that can complete the sentences correctly. In some sentences, more than one completion is correct.

1. We delayed our trip (because / because of / due to) Dad was sick with the flu.
2. Sue’s eyes were red (due to / because of / because) she had been crying.
3. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink (because / due to / because of) pollution.
4. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink (because / due to / because of) it is polluted.
5. Some people think Harry succeeded in business (due to / because of / because) his charming personality rather than his business skills.
6. You can’t enter this secured area (because of / because / due to) you don’t have an official permit.
7. My lecture notes were incomplete (due to / because of / because) the instructor talked too fast.
8. It’s unsafe to travel in that country (because / due to / because of) the ongoing civil war.
Practice 3. Using because of and due to. (Chart 19-1)
Use the ideas in parentheses to complete the sentences.

1. (There was heavy traffic.) We were late due to __________________________.
2. (There was heavy traffic.) We were late because __________________________.
3. (Grandpa is getting old.) Grandpa doesn’t like to drive at night anymore because
   ____________________________________________.
4. (Our history professor is quite old.) Our history professor is going to retire because of
   ____________________________________________.
5. (Sarah is afraid of heights.) She will not walk across a bridge because
   ____________________________________________.
6. (Sarah is afraid of heights.) She will not walk across a bridge because of
   ____________________________________________.
7. (There was a cancellation.) Due to ____________________________, you can have an appointment with the doctor this afternoon.
8. (There was a cancellation today.) Because ____________________________, you can have an appointment with the doctor this afternoon.

Practice 4. Cause and effect: using therefore, consequently, and so. (Chart 19-2)
Punctuate the sentences in Column B. Add capital letters if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. adverb clause:</td>
<td>Because she had a headache she took some aspirin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. adverb clause:</td>
<td>She took some aspirin because she had a headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. prepositional phrase:</td>
<td>Because of her headache she took some aspirin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. prepositional phrase:</td>
<td>She took some aspirin because of her headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. transition:</td>
<td>She had a headache therefore she took some aspirin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. transition:</td>
<td>She had a headache she therefore took some aspirin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. transition:</td>
<td>She had a headache she took some aspirin therefore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. conjunction:</td>
<td>She had a headache so she took some aspirin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 5. Cause and effect: using therefore, consequently, and so. (Chart 19-2)
Each sentence in italics is followed by sentences that refer to it. Circle the letter of the word that logically completes each sentence. Notice the punctuation and capitalization.

SENTENCE 1. Water boils when its temperature reaches 212 degrees Fahrenheit (100 degrees Celsius).
1. The water in the pot had reached 212 degrees Fahrenheit. _____, it started to boil.
   a. Therefore                                b. So                                      c. Because

2. The water in the pot started to boil _____ it had reached 212 degrees Fahrenheit.
   a. so                                      b. because                                 c. therefore
3. The water in the pot had reached 212 degrees Fahrenheit, ___ it started to boil.
   a. because       b. therefore       c. so

Sentence 2. The main highway is closed.

1. The main highway is closed. ___ we are going to take another road.
   a. Therefore       b. Because       c. so

2. We are going to take another road ___ the main highway is closed.
   a. so       b. because       c. therefore

3. The main highway is closed. We are going to take another road, ___.
   a. therefore       b. Therefore       c. so

4. The main highway is closed, ___ we are going to take another road.
   a. So       b. so       c. therefore

Practice 6. Cause and effect: using therefore, consequently, and so.
(Chart 19-2)

Combine the two sentences in italics in four different ways. Notice the punctuation and capitalization.

1. The store didn’t have orange juice. I bought lemonade instead.
   a. ___ I bought lemonade ___ because the store ___ didn’t have any orange juice ___.
   b. Because ___ ________________, ________________.
   c. ________________. Therefore, ________________
   d. ________________, so ________________.

2. Mel has excellent grades. He will go to a top university.
   a. ________________. Therefore, ________________.
   b. ________________. He, therefore, ________________.
   c. ________________. ________________, therefore.
   d. ________________, so ________________.

3. There had been no rain for several months. The crops died.
   a. Because ________________, ________________.
   b. ________________. Consequently, ________________.
   c. ________________. ________________, therefore,
   d. ________________, so ________________.
Practice 7. Showing cause and effect. (Charts 17-3, 19-1, and 19-2)

Part I. Complete the sentences with because of, because, or therefore. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

1. ______________ it rained, we stayed home.
2. It rained. ______________, we stayed home.
3. We stayed home ______________ the bad weather.
4. The weather was bad. ______________ we stayed home.
5. The typhoon was moving directly toward a small coastal town. ______________ all residents were advised to move inland until it passed.
6. The residents moved inland ______________ the typhoon.
7. ______________ the typhoon was moving directly toward the town all residents were advised to move inland.
8. Giraffes, which are found in the African plains, are the tallest of all animals. Although their bodies are not extremely large, they have very long necks. ______________ their long necks, they are tall enough to eat the leaves from the tops of the trees.

Part II. Complete the sentence with due to, since, or consequently. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

9. ______________ his poor eyesight John has to sit in the front row in class.
10. ______________ John has poor eyesight he has to sit in the front row.
11. John has poor eyesight ______________ he has to sit in the front row.
12. Sarah is afraid of heights ______________ she will not walk across a bridge.
13. Sarah will not walk across a bridge ______________ her fear of heights.
14. Mark is overweight ______________ his doctor has advised him to exercise regularly.
15. ______________ a diamond is extremely hard, it can be used to cut glass.

Practice 8. Periods and commas. (Chart 19-3)

Punctuate the sentences properly, using periods and commas. Add capital letters if necessary.

1. Edward missed the final exam. therefore, he failed the course.
2. Edward failed the course because he missed the final exam. (no change)
3. Edward missed the final exam. he simply forgot to go to it.
4. Because we forgot to make a reservation we couldn’t get a table at our favorite restaurant last night.
5. The waitress kept dropping trays full of dishes therefore she was fired.
6. The waiter kept forgetting customers’ orders so he was fired.
7. Ron is an unpleasant dinner companion because of his terrible table manners.
8. The needle has been around since prehistoric times the button was invented about 2,000 years ago the zipper wasn’t invented until 1890.
9. It is possible for wildlife observers to identify individual zebras because the patterns of stripes on each zebra are unique no two zebras are alike.

10. When students in the United States are learning to type, they often practice this sentence: *The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog* because it contains all the letters of the English alphabet.

**Practice 9. Summary of patterns and punctuation.** (Chart 19-3)
Combine the two sentences in italics. Use the words in parentheses in the new sentences.

**SENTENCE 1.** *Kim ate some bad food. She got sick.*

a. *(because)*

b. *(because of)*

c. *(so)*

d. *(due to)*

**SENTENCE 2.** *Adam was exhausted. He had driven for thirteen hours.*

a. *(therefore)*

b. *(since)*

c. *(due to the fact that)*

d. *(so)*

**Practice 10. Such . . . that and so . . . that.** (Chart 19-4)

Write *such* or *so* to complete the sentences.

1. It was **such** a hot day that we canceled our tennis game.

2. The test was **so** easy that everyone got a high score.

3. The movie was **so** bad that we left early.

4. It was **such** a bad movie that we left early.

5. Professor James is **so** a demanding teacher that many students refuse to take his class.

6. The restaurant patron at the table near us was **so** angry that we became very frightened and left our meals unfinished.

7. The intricate metal lacework on the Eiffel Tower in Paris was **so** complicated that the structure took more than two and a half years to complete.

8. Charles and his brother are **such** hard-working carpenters that I’m sure they’ll make a success of their new business.

9. The children had **so** much fun at the carnival that they begged to go again.

10. I feel like I have **so** little energy that I wonder if I’m getting sick.
Practice 11. Such ... that and so ... that. (Chart 19-4)
Combine the two sentences. Use so ... that or such ... that.

1. We took a walk. It was a nice day.
   It was ___________________________ such a nice day that we took a walk ______.

2. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
   The weather ___________________________

3. I couldn’t understand her. She talked too fast.
   She talked ___________________________

4. It was an expensive car. We couldn’t afford to buy it.
   It was ___________________________

5. There were few people at the meeting. It was canceled.
   There were ___________________________

6. Ted couldn’t fall asleep last night. He was worried about the exam.
   Ted was ___________________________

7. The tornado struck with great force. It lifted automobiles off the ground.
   The tornado ___________________________

8. I can’t figure out what this sentence says. Joe’s handwriting is illegible.
   Joe’s handwriting ___________________________

9. David has too many girlfriends. He can’t remember all of their names.
   David has ___________________________

10. Too many people came to the meeting. There were not enough seats for everyone.
    There were ___________________________

Practice 12. Expressing purpose. (Chart 19-5)
Check the sentences that express purpose.

1. ____ Ali changed jobs in order to be closer to his family.
2. ____ Ali changed jobs, so he has a lot of new information to learn.
3. ____ Ali changed jobs so he could be involved in more interesting work.
4. ____ Ali changed jobs so that he could be closer to his family.
5. ____ The highway will be closed tomorrow so that road crews can make repairs to the road.
6. ____ The highway will be closed tomorrow, so you will need to take a detour.
7. ____ The highway will be closed tomorrow so the road can be repaired.
8. ____ The highway will be closed tomorrow in order for road crews to make repairs.
9. ____ The highway will be closed tomorrow, so we can expect long delays.
10. ____ The highway will be closed tomorrow, so let’s do our errands today.
### Practice 13. Expressing purpose: using *so that*.

Complete the sentences in Column A with a clause from Column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Please open the windows so that _____.</td>
<td>a. my roommate wouldn’t wake up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sam put on his boots so that _____.</td>
<td>b. he can be a translator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I spoke softly on the phone so that _____.</td>
<td>c. it can sell more quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Li bought a very small car so that _____.</td>
<td>d. we can have some fresh air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Fred stayed up all night so that _____.</td>
<td>e. it will be safer for drivers and pedestrians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. You could lower the price on the house you are trying to sell so that</td>
<td>f. he will be able to save money on gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The city has put up a traffic light at the busy intersection so that</td>
<td>g. it will look bright and cheerful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. We are painting the kitchen yellow so that _____.</td>
<td>h. he would look serious and businesslike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Sid wore a suit and tie for his interview so that _____.</td>
<td>i. he could go hiking in the mountains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mr. Kim studies advanced Russian so that _____.</td>
<td>j. he could finish writing his long report by morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practice 14. Using modals with *so that*.

Decide the meaning of the *so that* clause. Write “1” if the modal verb expresses the idea of *to be able to*. Write “2” if the modal verb expresses the idea of *to make sure*.

1 = to be able to  
2 = to make sure

1. ____ The hotel manager asked a guest to turn down her music so that other guests could sleep.
2. ____ Ellen looks for airline tickets online so that she can compare prices.
3. ____ Yoshi arrived at the theater early so that he could get a good seat.
4. ____ Yoshi arrived at the theater early so that he would get a good seat.
5. ____ I’ll send your package express mail so that you’ll get it the day after tomorrow.
6. ____ I left your dinner in the oven so that it would stay warm.
7. ____ Karin changes her bank password regularly so that no one can access her account.
8. ____ John, you overslept, but I’ll drive you to work so that you won’t be late.

### Practice 15. Expressing purpose: using *so that*.

Write a sentence with the same meaning. Use *so that*.

1. Rachel wanted to watch the news. She turned on the TV.
   
   *Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.*

2. Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment. He didn’t want to forget to go.
   
   *Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment so that he wouldn’t forget to go.*

3. Nancy is taking extra courses every semester. She wants to graduate early.

4. Sue didn’t want to disturb her roommate. She lowered the volume on the TV set.
5. Ed took some change from his pocket. He wanted to buy a newspaper.

6. I wanted to listen to the news while I was making dinner. I turned on the TV.

7. I turned off my phone. I didn’t want to be interrupted while I was working.

8. It’s a good idea for you to learn keyboarding skills. You’ll be able to use your computer more efficiently.

9. Lynn wanted to make sure that she didn’t forget to take her book back to the library. She tied a string around her finger.

10. The Parks Department has placed wastebaskets in convenient places in the park. The department wants to make sure people don’t litter.

**Practice 16. Showing contrast (unexpected result).** (Chart 19-6)
Make logical completions by completing the sentences with *is* or *isn’t*.

1. It’s the middle of the summer, but the weather ______ very cold.

2. It’s the middle of the summer; nevertheless, the weather ______ very cold.

3. The weather ______ warm today even though it’s the middle of summer.

4. Although it’s the middle of the summer, the weather ______ very cold today.

5. Even though it’s the middle of summer, the weather ______ very cold today.

6. It’s the middle of summer in spite of the fact that the weather ______ very warm today.

7. Despite the fact that it is the middle of summer, the weather ______ very cold today.

8. It’s the middle of summer. However, the weather ______ warm today.

9. It’s the middle of summer, yet the weather ______ very warm today.

10. Despite the cold weather, it ______ the middle of summer.

**Practice 17. Despite, in spite of vs. even though, although.** (Chart 19-6)
Circle the word or phrase to complete the sentence correctly.

1. a. *(Even though / Despite)* her doctor has prescribed frequent exercise for her, Carol never does any exercise at all.

   b. *(Even though / Despite)* her doctor’s orders, Carol has not done any exercise at all.

   c. *(Even though / Despite)* the orders her doctor gave her, Carol still hasn’t done any exercise.

   d. *(Even though / Despite)* the dangers of not exercising, Carol still doesn’t exercise.

   e. *(Even though / Despite)* she has been warned about the dangers of not exercising by her doctor, Carol still hasn’t begun to exercise.
2. a. *(Although / In spite of)* an approaching storm, the two climbers continued their trek up the mountain.
b. *(Although / In spite of)* a storm was approaching, the two climbers continued their trek.
c. *(Although / In spite of)* there was an approaching storm, the two climbers continued up the mountain.
d. *(Although / In spite of)* the storm that was approaching the mountain area, the two climbers continued their trek.
e. *(Although / In spite of)* the fact that a storm was approaching the mountain area, the two climbers continued their trek.

3. a. *(Although / Despite)* his many hours of practice, George failed his driving test for the third time.
b. *(Although / Despite)* he had practiced for many hours, George failed his driving test for the third time.
c. *(Although / Despite)* practicing for many hours, George failed his driving test again.
d. *(Although / Despite)* his mother and father spent hours with him in the car trying to teach him how to drive, George failed his driving test repeatedly.
e. *(Although / Despite)* his mother and father's efforts to teach him how to drive, George failed his driving test.

4. a. *(Even though / In spite of)* repeated crop failures due to drought, the villagers are refusing to leave their traditional homeland for resettlement in other areas.
b. *(Even though / In spite of)* their crops have failed repeatedly due to drought, the villagers are refusing to leave their traditional homeland for resettlement in other areas.
c. The villagers refuse to leave *(even though / in spite of)* the drought.
d. The villagers refuse to leave *(even though / in spite of)* the drought seriously threatens their food supply.
e. The villagers refuse to leave *(even though / in spite of)* the threat to their food supply because of the continued drought.
f. The villagers refuse to leave *(even though / in spite of)* the threat to their food supply is serious because of the continued drought.
g. The villagers refuse to leave *(even though / in spite of)* their food supply is threatened.
h. The villagers refuse to leave *(even though / in spite of)* their threatened food supply.
Practice 18. Showing contrast. (Chart 19-6).
Complete the sentences with the letter of the correct phrase from the list.

a. an inability to communicate well in any language besides English
b. he had the necessary qualifications
c. he is afraid of heights
d. he is normally quite shy and sometimes inarticulate
e. his fear of heights
f. his parents were worried about his intelligence because he didn’t speak until he was four years old
g. it has been shown to be safe
h. they have been shown to cause birth defects and sometimes death
i. its many benefits
j. his competence and experience

1. In spite of _____. Carl enjoyed his helicopter trip over the Grand Canyon in Arizona.
2. Although _____. Mark rode in a cable car to the top of Sugar Loaf mountain in Rio de Janeiro for the magnificent view.
3. Because of his age, John was not hired even though _____.
4. Although _____. many people avoid using a microwave oven for fear of its radiation.
5. Jack usually has little trouble making new friends in other countries despite _____.
6. In spite of _____. the use of chemotherapy to treat cancer has many severe side effects.
7. Though _____. Bob managed to give an excellent presentation at the board meeting.
8. Jerry continued to be denied a promotion despite _____.
9. Dangerous pesticides are still used in many countries even though _____.
10. Despite the fact that Einstein turned out to be a genius, _____.

Practice 19. Showing contrast. (Chart 19-6).
Combine the two sentences in italics. Add any other necessary punctuation.

1. It was night. We could see the road very clearly.
   a. Even though _________________________________.
   b. Although _________________________________.
   c. _________________________________, but _________________________________.

2. Helen has a fear of heights. She enjoys skydiving.
   a. Despite the fact that _________________________________, _________________________________.
   b. Despite _________________________________, _________________________________.
   c. _________________________________; nevertheless _________________________________.

3. Millie has the flu. She is working at her computer.
   a. Though _________________________________, _________________________________.
   b. _________________________________, but _________________________________ anyway.
   c. _________________________________, but _________________________________ still _________________________________.
Practice 20. Showing direct contrast. (Chart 19-7)
Connect the given ideas using the words in parentheses. Add punctuation and capital letters as necessary.

1. *(while)* red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color

   Red is bright and lively, while gray is a dull color. OR
   While red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color.

2. *(on the other hand)* Jane is insecure and unsure of herself, her sister is full of self-confidence.

3. *(while)* a rock is heavy, a feather is light

4. *(however)* some children are unruly, others are quiet and obedient.

5. *(on the other hand)* language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex, math and science courses are difficult for him.

6. *(however)* strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions, strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy.

---

Practice 21. Expressing condition: using otherwise. (Chart 19-8.)
Write sentences with the same meaning by using otherwise. Use a modal or phrasal modal in your sentence.

1. If I don’t call my mother, she’ll start worrying about me.

   I am going to have to *(should / had better / must)* call my mother. Otherwise, she’ll **start worrying about me.**

2. If the bus doesn’t come soon, we’ll be late to work.

3. Unless you’ve made a reservation, you won’t get seated at the restaurant.

4. If Beth doesn’t stop complaining, she will lose the few friends she has.

5. You can’t get on the plane unless you have a government-issued ID.

6. Louis can replace his driver’s license only if he applies for it in person.

7. Only if you are a registered voter can you vote in the general election.

8. If you don’t clean up the kitchen tonight, you’ll have to clean it up early tomorrow.
Practice 22. Expressing cause and effect. (Chart 19-9)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a phrase from Column B.

Column A
1. We see lightning first and then hear the thunder because ____. 
2. Plants need light to live. These plants didn’t have light; therefore, ____. 
3. Halley’s Comet appears in the sky every 76 years, so ____. 
4. Children in Scandinavia go to school in darkness in the winter since ____. 
5. Objects fall to the ground because of ____. 
6. Now that ____, newspapers are not as necessary as they used to be. 
7. People get their news faster than they used to due to ____. 
8. Because ____, people can heat the air in a balloon and make it fly.

Column B
a. faster means of communication 
b. gravity 
c. hot air rises to the top 
d. it will next be seen in 2061 
e. light travels faster than sound 
f. people can get their news instantly by computer or on TV 
g. there is almost no daylight then 
h. they died

Practice 23. Expressing contrast. (Chart 19-9)
Circle the word(s) to complete the sentences.
1. Colombia exports a lot of emeralds, while South Africa (exports / doesn’t export) gold. 
2. Even though Colombia exports some precious stones, it (exports / doesn’t export) diamonds. 
3. Although Japan (uses / doesn’t use) a lot of oil, oil isn’t found in Japan. 
4. Despite the declining population of Japan, Tokyo’s population (is / isn’t) getting larger. 
5. Most people believe that the pineapple is native to Hawaii, a state in the middle of the Pacific Ocean; however, pineapples (originated / didn’t originate) in South America. 
6. China (is / isn’t) the largest producer of pineapples today. Nevertheless, Hawaii still produces a lot of pineapples.

Practice 24. Expressing condition. (Chart 19-9)
Write the correct form of the verb pass in each sentence.
1. Keith will graduate if he _____ passes _______ all of his courses. 
2. Sam won’t graduate if he _____ doesn’t pass _______ all of his courses.
3. Ed won’t graduate unless he ___________________ all of his courses.
4. Sue will graduate only if she ___________________ all of her courses.
5. Jessica will graduate even if she ___________________ all of her courses.
6. Alex won’t graduate even if he ___________________ all of his courses.
7. Jennifer will graduate unless she ___________________ all of her courses.


(Chart 19-9)

Complete the sentences logically using the ideas in the list. Write each verb in its correct tense.

a. take care of the garden (or not)
b. the flowers bloom (or not)
c. my care

Punctuate and capitalize correctly.

1. Because I took good care of the garden, ___________________

2. The flowers bloomed because ___________________

3. The flowers bloomed because of ___________________

4. The flowers didn’t bloom in spite of ___________________

5. Although I took good care of the garden ___________________

6. I did not take good care of the garden therefore ___________________

7. I didn’t take good care of the garden however ___________________

8. I took good care of the garden nevertheless ___________________

9. I did not take good care of the garden so ___________________

10. Even though I did not take good care of the garden ___________________

11. Since I did not take good care of the garden ___________________

12. I didn’t take good care of the garden, but ___________________ anyway.

13. If I take good care of the garden ___________________

14. Unless I take good care of the garden ___________________

15. I must take good care of the garden otherwise ___________________

16. I did not take good care of the garden consequently ___________________

17. I did not take good care of the garden nonetheless ___________________

18. I have to take good care of the garden so that ___________________

19. Only if I take good care of the garden ___________________

20. I took good care of the garden yet ___________________

21. You’d better take good care of the garden or else ___________________

22. The flowers will probably bloom whether ___________________.
Chapter 20
Conditional Sentences and Wishes

Practice 1. Introduction to conditional sentences. (Chart 20-1)
Read the sentences under the italicized sentence. Circle yes if the sentence describes the situation. Circle no if the sentence doesn’t describe the situation.

1. If Sally didn’t have the flu, she would be at work today.
   a. Sally has the flu.  
   b. Sally is at work today.  
   yes  no

2. If Albert didn’t take his allergy medication, he would sneeze and cough all day.
   a. Albert takes his allergy medication.  
   b. Albert sneezes and coughs all day.  
   yes  no

3. If our first flight had been on time, we would not have missed our connecting flight.
   a. The first flight was on time.  
   b. We missed our connecting flight.  
   yes  no

4. If we had a reliable car, we would drive from the East Coast to the West Coast.
   a. We have a reliable car.  
   b. We are going to drive from the East Coast to the West Coast  
   c. We would like to drive from the East Coast to the West Coast.  
   yes  no

5. Tim would have married Tina if she had accepted his proposal of marriage.
   a. Tina accepted Tim’s marriage proposal.  
   b. Tina and Tim got married.  
   c. Tim wanted to marry Tina.  
   d. Tina wanted to marry Tom.  
   yes  no

Practice 2. Overview of basic verb forms in conditional sentences. (Chart 20-1)
Complete each sentence according to its description. Write the letter of the correct completion.

Group 1.
1. Present true: If it snows, __c__.
   a. I would walk to work  
   b. I would have walked to work  
   c. I will walk to work  

2. Present untrue: If it snowed, __a__.

3. Past untrue: If it had snowed, __b__.
Group 2.
1. Present true: If you come early, _____.
2. Present untrue: If you came early, _____.
3. Past untrue: If you had come early, _____.

Group 3.
1. Present untrue: If Professor Smith were absent, _____.
2. Present true: If Professor Smith is absent, _____.
3. Past untrue: If Professor Smith had been absent, _____.

Group 4.
1. Present true: If John quits his job, _____.
2. Past untrue: If John had quit his job, _____.
3. Present untrue: If John quit his job, _____.

Practice 3. True in the present or future. (Chart 20-2)
Read the given sentence and the two sentences that follow. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the list.

be, be forget, look heat, boil
eat, get have, call pet, purr

1. Water boils at 100 degrees C. (212 degrees F.)
   (General truth) If you ___________________ water to 100 degrees C., it ___________________.
   (Future) If you ___________________ the water in that pot to 100 degrees C., it ___________________.

2. Sometimes I forget my own schedule.
   (Habitual activity) If I ___________________ my schedule, I ___________________ at my appointment calendar.
   (Future) If I ___________________ my schedule tomorrow, I ___________________ at my appointment calendar.

3. Sometimes the cat purrs.
   (Habitual situation) If you ___________________ the cat gently, she ___________________.
   (Future) If you ___________________ the cat gently right now, she ___________________.

4. I might have some news tomorrow.
   (Future) If I ___________________ any news tomorrow, I ___________________ you.
   (Habitual situation) If I ___________________ any news, I ___________________ you.
5. You eat too much junk food.
   (Future) If you ______________________ too much junk food, you ______________________ fat.
   (Predictable fact) If you ______________________ too much junk food, you ______________________ fat.

6. It might be cloudy tonight.
   (Predictable fact) If it ______________________ cloudy, the stars ______________________ visible.
   (Future) If it ______________________ cloudy tonight, the stars ______________________ visible.

▶ Practice 4. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the present or future. (Chart 20-3)
What is the true situation? Circle the letter of the sentence that describes the true situation.

1. If I had a million dollars, I would travel around the world.
   a. I have a million dollars.  
   b. I don’t have a million dollars.

2. If I didn’t have a bad cold, I’d go swimming with you.
   a. I have a bad cold.  
   b. I don’t have a bad cold.

3. If Jenny were here, she could help us.
   a. Jenny is here.  
   b. Jenny isn’t here.

4. If Henry weren’t in charge here, nothing would ever get done.
   a. Henry is in charge here.  
   b. Henry isn’t in charge here.

5. If I spoke Chinese, I could converse with your grandmother.
   a. I speak Chinese.  
   b. I don’t speak Chinese.

6. If I knew the answer, I would tell you.
   a. I know the answer.  
   b. I don’t know the answer.

▶ Practice 5. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the present or future. (Chart 20-3)
Read the given sentence(s) and the sentence that follows. Complete the second sentence with the verbs in the list.

be, be, can have have, go have, travel
be, have, like like, cook

1. There aren’t any trees on our street, and consequently, there is no shade.
   If there ______________________ trees on our street, there ______________________ shade.

2. We don’t have enough money to travel abroad.
   If we ______________________ enough money, we ______________________ abroad.

3. The students don’t have a good history teacher. They don’t like history because of her.
   If the students ______________________ a better history teacher, they ______________________ history.
4. Sam doesn’t like fish, so his mother doesn’t cook it for him.
   If Sam _________________ fish, his mother _________________ fish for him.

5. The weather is bad. We can’t have our usual weekend picnic today.
   If the weather _________________ bad, we _________________ our usual weekend picnic today.

6. I have so much work to do. I will not go out with you tonight.
   If I _________________ so much work, I _________________ out with you tonight.

Practice 6. True vs. untrue in the present or future. (Charts 20-2 and 20-3)
Complete the sentences in Column A with a clause in Column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. If the temperature goes below freezing, ____.</td>
<td>a. it stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If the temperature were below freezing right now, ____.</td>
<td>b. he cries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If the baby is hungry, ____.</td>
<td>c. it smells bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. If the baby were hungry, ____.</td>
<td>d. we would be very cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. If this fish were not fresh, ____.</td>
<td>e. it would go faster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. If fish is not fresh, ____.</td>
<td>f. it floats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. If a car runs out of gas, ____.</td>
<td>g. it would sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. If this car had more power, ____.</td>
<td>h. we will be very cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. If you threw a rock into the water, ____.</td>
<td>i. it would smell bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. If you throw a life ring into the water, ____.</td>
<td>j. he would cry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 7. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the past. (Chart 20-4)
Circle the letter of the sentence that describes the true situation.

1. If you had been here last night, you would have had a wonderful time. But ____.  
   a. you were here                        b. you weren’t here

2. If I hadn’t been rude, Jenna wouldn’t have gotten angry. But ____.  
   a. I was rude                           b. I wasn’t rude

3. If Anna hadn’t been late, we could have seen the beginning of the movie. But ____.  
   a. Anna was late                       b. Anna wasn’t late

4. If Henry hadn’t fallen asleep, he wouldn’t have crashed into the tree. But ____.  
   a. he fell asleep                      b. he didn’t fall asleep

5. If Max had studied, he might have passed the test. But ____.  
   a. he studied                          b. he didn’t study

6. If I had known the password, I would have told you. But ____.  
   a. I knew the password                 b. I didn’t know the password
Practice 8. Untrue (contrary to fact) in the past. (Chart 20-4)
Using the information in the first sentence, complete the conditional sentences with the correct form of the italicized verbs.

1. Adam met his future wife, Alice, on a flight to Tokyo.
   take, meet
   If Adam (not) ________________ that flight to Tokyo, he (not) ________________ Alice.

2. I forgot my credit card, so I couldn’t pay for my groceries.
   forget, can pay
   If I (not) ________________ my credit card, I ________________ for my groceries.

3. I didn’t know Jane was in the hospital, so I didn’t visit her.
   know, visit
   If I ________________ that Jane was in the hospital, I ________________ her.

4. Alex didn’t pay the electric bill. The electric company cut off his power.
   pay, cut off
   If Alex ________________ the bill, the electric company (not) ________________ his electricity.

5. The weather was bad. The outdoor concert was canceled.
   be, be
   If the weather ________________ good, the outdoor concert (not) ________________ canceled.

6. Alexander Fleming accidentally discovered the medical usefulness of a certain kind of mold.
   Scientists developed penicillin from that mold.
   discover, develop
   If Fleming (not) ________________ that mold, scientists (not) ________________ penicillin.

Practice 9. Conditional sentences: present, future, or past. (Charts 20-2 → 20-4)
Write the letter of the correct phrase to complete each conversation.

a. I can join you  d. I had joined one
b. I could have joined you  e. I join one
c. I could join you  f. I joined one

1. A: Hi, Kim! Will you have lunch with us?
   B: I’m sorry, I can’t. If ____, I would, but I have another appointment.

2. A: Hi, Sid! Say, will you have lunch with us tomorrow?
   B: Maybe. I might have to work through lunch, but if ____, I will.

3. A: Hey, Mary! What happened? Why didn’t you have lunch with us?
   B: Oh, if ____, I would have, but I had an emergency at my office.
4. A: Mr. Simmons, you should exercise more.
   B: I’ll try, Dr. Scott. Maybe I’ll join a gym. If ____ , I’ll get more exercise.

5. A: Ms. Mora, you need to exercise. Why don’t you join a gym?
   B: Oh, Doctor, if ____ , it would be a waste of money. I would never use it.

6. A: Mrs. Smith, you said you were going to join a gym. You didn’t!
   B: Right, I didn’t. If ____ , it would have been a waste of money. I would never have used it.

► Practice 10. Conditional sentences: present, future, or past. (Charts 20-2 → 20-4)
Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. There’s too much traffic these days. It’s too bad we don’t have wings. If we
   (have) ________________ wings, we (can, fly) ________________ over all this traffic
   instead of being stuck in it.

2. If we (can, fly) ________________ over all this traffic, we (arrive) ________________
   at our destination very quickly.

3. Maybe we’ll get there before noon. If we (get) ________________ there before noon, I
   (have) ________________ a chance to talk with Olga before lunch.

4. I might have a chance to talk with Olga before we have lunch. If I (have) ________________
   a chance to talk with Olga before we have lunch, I (tell) ________________ her about
   the job opening in our department.

5. I didn’t have a chance to talk to John yesterday. If I (have) ________________ a chance to
   talk to him, I (tell) ________________ him about the job opening.

6. You didn’t tell John about the job opening at the meeting yesterday. But, even if you
   (tell) ________________ him about the job opening, I’m sure that he
   (be, not) ________________ interested at all. He’s very happy with the job he has.

► Practice 11. Conditional sentences. (Charts 20-2 → 20-4)
Write a conditional sentence about each given sentence.

1. I was sick yesterday, so I didn’t go to class.
   If ______ I hadn’t been sick yesterday, I would have gone to class ______.

2. Because Alan never eats breakfast, he always overeats at lunch.
   If ______.

3. Kostas was late to his own wedding because his watch was slow.
   If ______.

4. I don’t ride the bus to work every morning because it’s always so crowded.
   If ______.

5. Sara didn’t know that Highway 57 was closed, so she didn’t take an alternative route.
   If ______.

6. Camille couldn’t finish unloading the truck because no one was there to help her.
   If ______.
Practice 12. Progressive verb forms in conditional sentences. (Chart 20-5)

Write a conditional sentence about each given sentence. Use *if*.

1. The wind is blowing so hard. We can’t go sailing.
   
   *If the wind weren’t blowing so hard, we could go sailing.*

2. The wind was blowing so hard. We couldn’t go sailing.

3. The water is running. I can’t hear you.

4. The water was running. I couldn’t hear the phone.

5. The baby is hungry. That’s why she’s crying.

6. Dick was sleeping soundly so he didn’t hear his alarm clock.

7. I was watching an exciting mystery on TV, so I didn’t answer the phone.

8. I’m trying to concentrate, so I can’t talk to you now.

Practice 13. Using “mixed time” in conditional sentences. (Chart 20-6)

Circle the letters of the sentences that describe the situation.

1. If I hadn’t stayed up late last night, I wouldn’t be tired this morning.
   a) I went to bed late.
   b) I went to bed early.
   c) I am tired this morning.
   d) I am not tired this morning.

2. If Bob had saved some money, he could buy a house now.
   a) Bob saved some money.
   b) Bob didn’t save any money.
   c) Bob can buy a house.
   d) Bob can’t buy a house.

3. If I hadn’t apologized to Ben, he would still be angry at me.
   a) I apologized to Ben.
   b) I didn’t apologize to Ben.
   c) Ben is still angry at me.
   d) Ben is not angry at me anymore.

4. If I had taken Grandpa’s advice, I wouldn’t be in this mess now!
   a) I took Grandpa’s advice.
   b) I didn’t take Grandpa’s advice.
   c) I am in a mess now.
   d) I am not in a mess now.
5. If Laura hadn’t been wearing her seat belt, she would have been severely injured.
   a. Laura was wearing her seat belt.
   b. Laura wasn’t wearing her seat belt.
   c. Laura was severely injured.
   d. Laura was not severely injured.

6. If new houses had not been built near the campgrounds, the area would still be wilderness.
   a. New houses have been built near the campgrounds.
   b. New houses have not been built near the campgrounds.
   c. The area is still wilderness.
   d. The area is not wilderness anymore.

Practice 14. Using progressive forms and "mixed time" in conditional sentences. (Charts 20-5 and 20-6)

Write a conditional sentence about each given sentence.

1. It is raining, so we won’t finish the game.
   If _______, it weren’t raining, we would finish the game.

2. I didn’t eat lunch, and now I’m hungry.
   If _______, I would have eaten lunch.

3. Bob left his wallet at home this morning, and now he doesn’t have money for lunch.
   If _______, he would have money for lunch.

4. Bruce is always daydreaming, and so he never gets his work done.
   If _______, he would get his work done.

5. My muscles hurt today because I played basketball for three hours last night.
   If _______, I wouldn’t have played basketball.

6. I couldn’t hear what you said because the band was playing so loud.
   If _______, I would have heard what you said.

7. Because Diane asked the technician a lot of questions, she understands how to use her computer now.
   If _______, she wouldn’t understand how to use her computer.

8. Olga and Ivan weren’t paying attention, so they didn’t see the exit sign on the highway.
   If _______, they would have seen the exit sign.

9. I really don’t know what the test results mean because the doctor didn’t explain them to me.
   If _______, the doctor would have explained them to me.

10. We were sleeping last night, so we didn’t hear the thunder and lightning.
    If _______, we would have heard the thunder and lightning.
Practice 15. Omitting if. (Chart 20-7)
Write sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

1. If I were you, I wouldn’t go there.
   Were I you, I wouldn’t go there.

2. If you should need my help, please call.
   Should you need my help, please call.

3. If I had known about her accident, I would have gone to the hospital immediately.
   About her accident, I would have gone to the hospital immediately.

4. If I had been offered a job at the law office, I would have gladly accepted.
   A job at the law office, I would have gladly accepted.

5. If anyone should call, would you please take a message?
   , would you please take a message?

6. Directions on the pizza box: “If this pizza needs reheating, place it in a hot oven for five minutes.”
   , place it in a hot oven for five minutes.

7. Directions on a medicine bottle: “If you feel any dizziness, nausea, or muscle pain, discontinue taking this medicine and call your doctor immediately.”
   any dizziness, nausea, or muscle pain, discontinue taking this medicine and call your doctor immediately.

8. If you were really a lawyer, I would take your advice.
   , I would take your advice.

Practice 16. Omitting if. (Chart 20-7)
Circle the letter of the one sentence that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. Had I seen the hole in the sidewalk, I wouldn’t have tripped and fallen down.
   a. I had to see the hole in the sidewalk.
   b. I saw the hole in the sidewalk.
   c. I didn’t see the hole in the sidewalk.
   d. I didn’t fall down.

2. Should you have further questions, please don’t hesitate to contact us again.
   a. You should ask more questions.
   b. You might have more questions.
   c. You will certainly have more questions.
   d. Don’t bother calling us again.

3. Had the building been properly built, it would have withstood the hurricane.
   a. The building was properly built.
   b. The building survived the hurricane.
   c. The building wasn’t properly built.
   d. The building was built after the hurricane.
4. Were you rich, you could fly across the ocean to visit your family every week.
   a. Are you rich?
   b. You are not rich.
   c. You visit your family every week.
   d. You used to be rich, but you are not anymore.

Practice 17. Implied conditions. (Chart 20-8)
Complete the sentences with if-clauses.

1. Sara’s dad would have picked her up, but I forgot to tell him that she needed a ride.
   Sara’s dad would have picked her up if I hadn’t forgotten to tell him that she needed a ride.

2. I couldn’t have finished the project without your help.
   I couldn’t have finished the project if _____________________________.

3. I opened the door slowly. Otherwise, I could have hit someone.
   If _____________________________, I could have hit someone.

4. Doug would have gone on vacation with me, but he couldn’t get time off from work.
   Doug would have gone with me if _____________________________.

5. CAROL: Why didn’t Oscar tell his boss about the problem?
   ALICE: He would have gotten into a lot of trouble.
   Oscar would have gotten into a lot of trouble if _____________________________.

Practice 18. Review: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8)
Write the letter of the correct completion for each sentence.

1. If I could speak Spanish, I _____ next year studying in Spain.
   a. will spend
   b. would have spent
   c. had spent
   d. would spend

2. It would have been a much more serious accident _____ fast at the time.
   a. had she been driving
   b. was she driving
   c. she had driven
   d. if she drove

3. A: Can I borrow your car for this evening?
   B: Sure, but Nora’s using it right now. If she _____ it back in time, you’re welcome to borrow it.
   a. brought
   b. would bring
   c. brings
   d. will bring

4. I didn’t get home until well after midnight last night. Otherwise, I _____ your call.
   a. returned
   b. had returned
   c. would return
   d. would have returned

5. If energy _____ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.
   a. is
   b. will be
   c. were
   d. would be
6. We ___ the game if we’d had a few more minutes.
   a. will win
   b. won
   c. had won
   d. could have won

7. I ___ William with me if I had known you and he didn’t get along with each other.
   a. hadn’t brought
   b. didn’t bring
   c. wouldn’t have brought
   d. won’t bring

8. Dr. Mason was out of town, so a guest lecturer gave the talk. It was boring and I almost fell asleep. If Dr. Mason, I would have paid attention and not fallen asleep.
   a. lectured
   b. had been lecturing
   c. was lecturing
   d. would lecture

9. If you ___ to my advice in the first place, you wouldn’t be in this mess right now.
   a. listen
   b. had listened
   c. will listen
   d. listened

10. ___ interested in that subject, I would try to learn more about it.
    a. Were I
    b. Should I
    c. I was
    d. If I am

11. If I ___ the problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
    a. have
    b. would have
    c. had had
    d. should have

12. I ___ your mother to dinner if I had known she was visiting you.
    a. invite
    b. invited
    c. had invited
    d. would have invited

13. ___ more help, I can call my neighbor.
    a. Needed
    b. Should I need
    c. I have needed
    d. I should need

14. ___ then what I know today, I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.
    a. If I know
    b. Did I know
    c. If I would know
    d. Had I known

15. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people ___ the same language?
    a. speak
    b. will speak
    c. spoke
    d. had spoken

16. If you can tell me why I wasn’t included, ___ this incident again.
    a. I don’t mention
    b. I will never mention
    c. I never mention
    d. will I never mention

17. I didn’t know you were asleep. Otherwise, I ___ so much noise when I came in.
    a. didn’t make
    b. wouldn’t have made
    c. won’t make
    d. don’t make

18. Unless you ___ all of my questions, I can’t do anything to help you.
    a. answered
    b. answer
    c. would answer
    d. are answering
19. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I _____ it.
   a. never would have believed    c. hadn’t believed
   b. don’t believe                 d. can’t believe

20. If Jake _____ to go on the trip, would you have gone alone?
   a. doesn’t agree                 c. hadn’t agreed
   b. didn’t agree                  d. wouldn’t agree

Practice 19. Verb forms following wish. (Chart 20-9)
Circle the letter of the sentence that describes the true situation.

1. I wish that you were my true friend.
   a. You are my true friend.
   b. You are not my true friend.

2. I wish I had known the truth.
   a. I knew the truth.
   b. I didn’t know the truth.

3. I wish you hadn’t lied to me.
   a. You lied to me.
   b. You didn’t lie to me.

4. I wish we were going on vacation.
   a. We are going on vacation.
   b. We are not going on vacation.

5. I wish I had a motorcycle.
   a. I have a motorcycle.
   b. I don’t have a motorcycle.

6. I wish John could have met my father.
   a. John was able to meet my father.
   b. John was not able to meet my father.

Practice 20. Verb forms following wish. (Chart 20-9)
Make wishes. Complete the sentences with a verb.

1. The sun isn’t shining.
   I wish the sun _______ shining _______ right now.

2. You didn’t go to the concert with us last night.
   I wish you ________________ with us to the concert last night.

3. Spiro didn’t drive to this party.
   I wish Spiro ________________ to the party. I’d ask him for a ride home.

4. I can’t swim.
   I wish I ________________ so I would feel safe in a boat.

5. Our team didn’t win.
   I wish our team ________________ the game last night.

6. Bill didn’t get the promotion.
   I wish Bill ________________ the promotion. He feels bad.

7. I quit my job.
   I wish I ________________ my job until I’d found another one.

8. It isn’t winter.
   I wish it ________________ winter so that I could go skiing.

9. Al probably won’t sing for us because he’s so shy. I wish Al ________________ a couple of songs. He has a good voice.
Practice 21. Verb forms following wish. (Chart 20-9)
Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Heinrich doesn’t like his job as a house painter. He wishes he (go) ____________ to art school when he was younger. He wishes he (can, paint) ________________ canvasses instead of houses for a living.

2. I don’t like living here. I wish I (move, not) ________________ to this big city. I can’t seem to make any friends, and everything is so crowded. I wish I (take) ________________ the job I was offered before I moved here.

3. I know I shouldn’t eat junk food every day, but I wish you (stop) ________________ nagging me about it.

4. I wish you (invite, not) ________________ the neighbors over for dinner when you talked to them earlier this afternoon. I don’t feel like cooking a big dinner.

5. A: Did you get your car back from the garage?
   B: Yes, and it still isn’t fixed. I wish I (pay, not) ________________ them in full when I picked up the car. I should have waited to be sure that everything was all right.

6. A: I wish you (hurry) ________________! We’re going to be late.
   B: I wish you (relax) ________________. We’ve got plenty of time.

7. A: How do you like the new president of our neighborhood association?
   B: Not much. I wish she (elect, not) ________________. I never should have voted for her.
   A: Oh, really? Then you probably wish I (vote, not) ________________ for her either. If you recall, she won by only one vote. You and I could have changed the outcome of the election if we’d known then what we know now.

8. A: My thirteen-year-old daughter wishes she (be, not) ________________ so tall and that her hair (be) ________________ black and straight.
   B: Really? My daughter wishes she (be) ________________ taller and that her hair (be) ________________ blond and curly.

9. A: I can’t go to the game with you this afternoon.
   B: Really? That’s too bad. But I wish you (tell) ________________ me sooner so that I could have invited someone else to go with me.

10. A: How long have you been sick?
    B: For over a week.
    A: I wish you (go) ________________ to see a doctor later today. You should find out what’s wrong with you.
    B: Maybe I’ll go tomorrow.
Practice 22. Using would to make wishes about the future. (Chart 20-10)
Complete the sentences. Make wishes about the future by writing would and a verb from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cook</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>hang up</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>snow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. A: So, Mom, how do you like my haircut?
   B: You had a haircut? Your hair is still long. I wish you ____________ a real haircut.

2. A: Aren’t you going on your annual ski trip this year?
   B: No, not unless it snows. There hasn’t been any snow this year. I wish it ____________ so we could go skiing.

3. A: Helen! How long are our guests going to stay? It’s almost midnight.
   B: I don’t know. I wish they ____________, but Henry just keeps on talking. Everyone is falling asleep.

4. A: I love you, Pat, but I wish you were neater.
   B: Neater? What do you mean? I pick up everything, I clean up everything . . .
   A: Well, I mean I wish you ____________ your clothes instead of leaving them on a chair.

5. A: What’s the matter? Don’t you like the movie?
   B: Not at all! I wish it ____________. We have to stay, though because the kids are enjoying it so much.

6. A: Meatballs again?
   B: Don’t you like meatballs?
   A: You know I do, but sometimes I wish you ____________ something else.

Practice 23. Conditionals. (Chapter 20)
Complete the sentences. Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Tom: What’s wrong, Bob? You look awful!
Bob: Well, you (look) ____________ bad too if you (have) ____________ a day like mine yesterday. My car slid into a tree because the roads were icy.

Tom: Oh? What happened?
Bob: Well, I suppose if I (drive, not) ____________ so fast, I (slide, not) ____________ into the tree.

Tom: Gosh, Bob, speeding again? Don’t you know that if a driver (step) ____________ on the gas on ice, the car will spin around in a circle?
Bob: I know that now, but I didn’t know that yesterday! If I (know) ________ that yesterday, I (not, crash) ________ . And besides, I didn’t have my driver’s license with me, so I’ll have to pay an extra fine for that when I go to court next month.

Tom: You were driving without your license?

Bob: Yeah. It slipped out of my pocket.

Tom: You sure have bad luck! Maybe if you (take, not) ________ that bus, you (lose, not) ________ your wallet. If you (lose, not) ________ your wallet, you (have) ________ your driver’s license with you when you hit a tree. If you (have) ________ your license with you, you (have to pay, not) ________ a steep fine when you go to court next week. And of course, if you (drive, not) ________ too fast, you (run into, not) ________ a tree, and you (be, not) ________ in this mess now. If I (be) ________ you, I (take) ________ it easy and just (stay) ________ home where you’ll be no danger to yourself or to anyone else.

Bob: Enough about me! How about you?

Tom: Well, things are really looking up for me. I’m planning to take off for Florida soon.

I’m sick of all this cold, rainy weather. I (stay) ________ here for vacation if the weather (be, not) ________ so bad. But I need some sun!

Bob: I wish I (can, go) ________ with you. How are you planning on getting there?

Tom: If I have enough money, I (fly) ________. Otherwise, I (take) ________ the bus. I wish I (can, drive) ________ my own car there because it (be) ________ nice to have it to drive around in once I get there, but it’s such a long trip. I wish I (have) ________ someone to go with me and share the driving.

Bob: Hey, what about me? Why don’t I go with you? I can share the driving. I’m a great driver!

Tom: Didn’t you just get through telling me that you’d wrapped your car around a tree?
Practice 1. Subjects, verbs, and objects. (Chart A-1)
Underline and identify the subject (s), verb (v), and object of the verb (o) in each sentence.

1. Airplanes have wings.
2. The teacher explained the problem.
3. Children enjoy games.
5. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat other animals.
6. According to an experienced waitress, you can carry full cups of coffee without spilling them just by never looking at them.

Practice 2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs. (Chart A-1)
Underline and identify the verb in each sentence. Write vt if it is transitive. Write vi if it is intransitive.

vi
1. Alice arrived at six o’clock.
vt
2. We drank some tea.
3. I agree with you.
4. I waited for Sam at the airport for two hours.
5. They’re staying at a resort hotel in San Antonio, Texas.
6. Mr. Chan is studying English.
7. The wind is blowing hard today.
8. I walked to the theater, but Janice rode her bicycle.
10. Rivers flow toward the sea.
Practice 3. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-2 and A-3)
Underline and identify the adjectives (ADJ) and adverbs (ADV) in these sentences.

1. Jack opened the heavy door slowly.
2. Chinese jewelers carved beautiful ornaments from jade.
3. The old man carves wooden figures skillfully.
4. A busy executive usually has short conversations on the telephone.
5. The young woman had a very good time at the picnic yesterday.

Practice 4. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-2 and A-3)
Complete each sentence with the correct adjective or adverb.

1. quick, quickly We ate ______ quickly ______ and ran to the theater.
2. quick, quickly We had a ______ quick ______ dinner and ran to the theater.
3. polite, politely I've always found Fred to be a ___________ person.
4. polite, politely He responded to my question ___________.
5. regular, regularly Mr. Thomas comes to the store ___________ for cheese and bread.
6. regular, regularly He is a ___________ customer.
7. usual, usually The teacher arrived at the ___________ time.
8. usual, usually She ___________ comes to class five minutes before it begins.
9. good, well Jennifer Cooper paints ___________.
10. good, well She is a ___________ artist.
11. gentle, gently A ___________ breeze touched my face.
12. gentle, gently A breeze ___________ touched my face.
13. bad, badly The audience booed the actors' ___________ performance.
14. bad, badly The audience booed and whistled because the actors performed ___________ throughout the show.
Practice 5. Midsentence adverbs. (Chart A-3)
Put the adverb in parentheses in its usual midsentence position.

1. (always) Sue always takes a walk in the morning.
2. (always) Tim is a hard worker.
3. (always) Beth has worked hard.
4. (always) Jack works hard.
5. (always) Do you work hard?
6. (usually) Taxis are available at the airport.
7. (rarely) Yusef takes a taxi to his office.
8. (often) I have thought about quitting my job and sailing to Alaska.
9. (probably) Yuko needs some help.
10. (ever) Have you attended the show at the Museum of Space?
11. (seldom) Al goes out to eat at a restaurant.
12. (hardly ever) The students are late.
13. (usually) Do you finish your homework before dinner?
14. (generally) In India, the monsoon season begins in April.
15. (usually) During the monsoon season, Mr. Singh’s hometown receives around 610 centimeters (240 inches) of rain, which is an unusually large amount.

Practice 6. Identifying prepositions. (Chart A-4)
Underline the prepositions.

1. Jim came to class without his books.
2. We stayed at home during the storm.
3. Sonya walked across the bridge over the Cedar River.
4. When Alex walked through the door, his little sister ran toward him and put her arms around his neck.
5. The two of us need to talk to Tom too.
6. Animals live in all parts of the world. Animals walk or crawl on land, fly in the air, and swim in the water.
7. Scientists divide living things into two main groups: the animal kingdom and the plant kingdom.
8. Asia extends from the Pacific Ocean in the east to Africa and Europe in the west.
Practice 7. Sentence elements. (Charts A-1 → A-4)
Underline and identify the subject (S), verb (V), object (O), and prepositional phrases (PP) in the following sentences.

1. Jack put the letter in the mailbox.
2. The children walked to school.
3. Mary did her homework at the library.
4. Chinese printers created the first paper money in the world.
5. Dark clouds appeared on the horizon.
6. Mary filled the shelves of the cabinet with boxes of old books.

Practice 8. Linking verbs. (Chart A-6)
Some of the italicized words in the following are used as linking verbs. Identify which ones are linking verbs by underlining them. Also underline the adjective that follows the linking verb.

1. Olga looked at the fruit. (no underline)
2. It looked fresh.
3. Dan noticed a scratch on the door of his car.
4. Morris tasted the candy.
5. It tasted good.
6. The crowd grew quiet as the official began her speech.
7. Felix grows tomatoes in his garden.
8. Sally grew up in Florida.
9. I can smell the chicken in the oven.
10. It smells delicious.
11. Barbara got a package in the mail.
12. Al got sleepy after dinner.
13. During the storm, the sea became rough.
14. Nicole became a doctor after many years of study.
15. Diana sounded her horn to warn the driver of the other car.
16. Helen sounded happy when I talked to her.
17. The weather turns hot in July.

18. When Bob entered the room, I turned around to look at him.


20. It appears certain that Mary Hanson will win the election.

21. Dick’s story seems strange. Do you believe it?

**Practice 9. Linking verbs; adjectives and adverbs.** (Charts A-2 → A-6)
Complete each sentence with the correct adjective or adverb.

1. clean, cleanly  
The floor looks _______clean_____.

2. slow, slowly  
The bear climbed ___________ up the tree.

3. safe, safely  
The plane landed _____________ on the runway.

4. anxious, anxiously  
When the wind started to blow, I grew _________________.

5. complete, completely  
This list of names appears _____________. No more names need to be added.

6. wild, wildly  
The crowd yelled _______________ when we scored a goal.

7. honest, honestly  
The clerk looked _______________, but she wasn’t. I discovered when I got home that she had cheated me.

8. thoughtful, thoughtfully  
Jane looked at her book ____________________ before she answered the teacher’s question.

9. good, well  
Most of the students did _______________ on their tests.

10. fair, fairly  
The contract offer sounded _____________ to me, so I accepted the job.

11. terrible, terribly  
Jim felt _________________ about forgetting his son’s birthday.

12. good, well  
A rose smells _____________.

13. light, lightly  
As dawn approached, the sky became _____________.

14. confident, confidently  
Beth spoke _________________ when she delivered her speech.

15. famous, famously  
The actor became ________________ throughout much of the world.

16. fine, finely  
I don’t think this milk is spoiled. It tastes ______________ to me.
1. **Bob can live there.**  
   | Question word | Auxiliary verb | Subject | Main verb | Rest of question | → | Answer  
   |----------------|----------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---|---------  
   | 1a. Ø             | Can            | Bob     | live      | there ?         | → | Yes.      
   | 1b. Where           | can            | Bob     | live      | Ø               | → | There.    
   | 1c. Who             | can            | Ø       | live      | there ?         | → | Bob.     

2. **Ron is living there.**  
   | Question word | Auxiliary verb | Subject | Main verb | Rest of question | → | Answer  
   |----------------|----------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---|---------  
   | 2a. Ø             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Yes.      
   | 2b. Where           |                |         |           | Ø               | → | There.    
   | 2c. Who             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Ron.     

3. **Sue lives there.**  
   | Question word | Auxiliary verb | Subject | Main verb | Rest of question | → | Answer  
   |----------------|----------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---|---------  
   | 3a. Ø             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Yes.      
   | 3b. Where           |                |         |           | Ø               | → | There.    
   | 3c. Who             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Sue.     

4. **Ann will live there.**  
   | Question word | Auxiliary verb | Subject | Main verb | Rest of question | → | Answer  
   |----------------|----------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---|---------  
   | 4a. Ø             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Yes.      
   | 4b. Where           |                |         |           | Ø               | → | There.    

5. **Jack lived there.**  
   | Question word | Auxiliary verb | Subject | Main verb | Rest of question | → | Answer  
   |----------------|----------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---|---------  
   | 5a.             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Yes.      
   | 5b.             |                |         |           | Ø               | → | There.    
   | 5c.             |                |         |           | there ?         | → | Jack.    

6. **Mary has lived there.**  
   | Question word | Auxiliary verb | Subject | Main verb | Rest of question | → | Answer  
   |----------------|----------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---|---------  
   | 6a.             |                |         |           |                 | → | Yes.      
   | 6b.             |                |         |           |                 | → | There.    
   | 6c.             |                |         |           |                 | → | Mary.    

A6 APPENDIX
Practice 11. Yes / no and information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)
Make questions to fit the conversations. Notice in the examples that there is a short answer and then in parentheses a long answer. Your questions should produce those answers.

1. A: __________ When are you going to the zoo?
   B: Tomorrow. (I’m going to the zoo tomorrow.)

2. A: __________ Are you going downtown later today?
   B: Yes. (I’m going downtown later today.)

3. A: __________
   B: Yes. (I live in an apartment.)

4. A: __________
   B: In a condominium. (Sue lives in a condominium.)

5. A: __________
   B: Jack. (Jack lives in that house.)

6. A: __________
   B: Yes. (I can speak French.)

7. A: __________
   B: Ron. (Ron can speak Arabic.)

8. A: __________
   B: Two weeks ago. (Olga arrived two weeks ago.)

9. A: __________
   B: Ali. (Ali arrived late.)

10. A: __________
    B: The window. (Ann is opening the window.)

11. A: __________
    B: Opening the window. (Ann is opening the window.)

12. A: __________
    B: Her book. (Mary opened her book.)

13. A: __________
    B: Tom. (Tom opened the door.)

14. A: __________
    B: Yes. (The mail has arrived.)

15. A: __________
    B: Yes. (I have a bicycle.)

16. A: __________
    B: A pen. (Alex has a pen in his hand.)
17. A: __________________________
   B: Yes. *(I like ice cream.)*
18. A: __________________________
   B: Yes. *(I would like an ice cream cone.)*
19. A: __________________________
   B: A candy bar. *(Joe would like a candy bar.)*
20. A: __________________________
   B: Ann. *(Ann would like a soft drink.)*

**Practice 12. Information questions.** *(Charts B-1 and B-2)*

Make questions from these sentences. The italicized words in parentheses should be the answers to your questions.

1. I take my coffee *(black).* → *How do you take your coffee?*
2. I have *(an English-Spanish)* dictionary.
3. He *(runs a grocery store)* for a living.
4. Margaret was talking to *(her uncle).*
5. *(Only ten)* people showed up for the meeting.
6. *(Because of heavy fog)*, none of the planes could take off.
7. She was thinking about *(her experiences as a rural doctor).*
8. I was driving *(sixty-five miles per hour)* when the police officer stopped me.
9. I like *(hot and spicy Mexican)* food best.
10. *(The)* apartment *(at the end of the hall on the second floor)* is mine.
11. Oscar is *(friendly, generous, and kindhearted).*
12. Oscar is *(tall and thin and has short black hair).*
13. *(Ann’s)* dictionary fell to the floor.
14. Abby isn’t here *(because she has a doctor’s appointment).*
15. All of the students in the class will be informed of their final grades *(on Friday).*
16. I feel *(awful).*
17. Of those three books, I preferred *(the one by Tolstoy).*
18. I like *(rock)* music.
19. The plane is expected to be *(an hour)* late.
20. The driver of the stalled car lit a flare *(in order to warn oncoming cars).*
21. I want *(the felt-tip)* pen, *(not the ballpoint).*
22. The weather is *(hot and humid)* in July.
23. I like my steak (medium rare).
24. I did (very well) on the test.
25. There are (31,536,000) seconds in a year.

**Practice 13. Information questions.** (Charts B-1 and B-2)

Make questions from the following sentences. The words in parentheses should be the answers to your questions.

1. I need (five dollars). → How much money do you need?
2. Roberto was born (in Panama).
3. I go out to eat (at least once a week).
4. I’m waiting for (Maria).
5. (My sister) answered the phone.
6. I called (Benjamin).
7. (Benjamin) called.
8. She bought (twelve gallons of) gas.
10. An abyss is (a bottomless hole).
11. He went (this) way, (not that way).
12. These are (Jim’s) books and papers.
13. They have (four) children.
14. He has been here (for two hours).
15. It is (two hundred miles) to Madrid.
16. The doctor can see you (at three on Friday).
17. Her roommate is (Jane Peters).
18. Her roommates are (Jane Peters and Sue Lee).
19. My parents have been living there (for three years).
20. This is (Alice’s) book.
21. (Fred and Jack) are coming over for dinner.
22. Ann’s dress is (blue).
23. Ann’s eyes are (brown).
24. (Bob) can’t go on the picnic.
25. Bob can’t go (because he is sick).
26. I didn’t answer the phone (because I didn’t hear it ring).
27. I like (classical) music.
28. I don’t understand (the chart on page 50).
29. Janet is (studying) right now.
31. Tom (is about medium height and has red hair and freckles).
32. Tom is (very serious and hard-working).
33. Ron (works as a civil engineer for the railroad company).
34. Mexico is (eight hundred miles) from here.
35. I take my coffee (black with sugar).
36. Of Stockholm and Moscow, (Stockholm) is farther north.
37. (Fine.) I’m getting along (just fine).

Practice 14. Negative questions. (Chart B-4)
In these dialogues, make negative questions from the words in parentheses, and determine the expected response.

1. A: Your infected finger looks terrible. (you, see, not) ______ Haven’t you seen ______ a doctor yet?
   B: No. But I’m going to. I don’t want the infection to get any worse.

2. A: You look pale. What’s the matter? (you, feel) ____________ well?
   B: ______. I think I might be coming down with something.

3. A: Did you see Mark at the meeting?
   B: No, I didn’t.
   A: Really? (he, be, not) ______ there?
   B: ______.
   A: That’s funny. I’ve never known him to miss a meeting before.

4. A: Why didn’t you come to the meeting yesterday afternoon?
   B: What meeting? I didn’t know there was a meeting.
   A: (Mary, tell, not) ____________ you about it?
   B: ______. No one said a word to me about it.

5. A: I have a package for Janet. (Janet and you, work, not) ____________ in the same building?
   B: ______. I’d be happy to take the package to her tomorrow when I go to work.

6. A: Frank didn’t report all of his income on his tax forms.
   B: (that, be, not) ____________ against the law?
   A: ______. And that’s why he’s in a lot of legal trouble. He might even go to jail.

7. A: Did you give Linda my message when you went to class this morning?
   B: No. I didn’t see her.
   A: Oh? (she, be) ____________ in class?
   B: ______. She didn’t come today.
8. A: Do you see that woman over there, the one in the blue dress? (she, be) ________ Mrs. Robbins?
   B: ________
   A: I thought so. I wonder what she is doing here.

▲ Practice 15. Tag questions. (Chart B-5)

Add tag questions to the following.

1. You live in an apartment, _______ don't you ________?

2. You've never been in Italy, _______ have you ________?

3. Sally turned in her report, _______ ________?

4. There are more countries north of the equator than south of it, _______ ________?

5. You've never met Jack Freeman, _______ ________?

6. You have a ticket to the game, _______ ________?

7. You'll be there, _______ ________?

8. Tom knows Alice Reed, _______ ________?

9. We should call Rita, _______ ________?

10. Ostriches can't swim, _______ ________?

11. These books aren't yours, _______ ________?

12. That's Bob's, _______ ________?

13. Your neighbors died in the accident, _______ ________?

14. I'm right, _______ ________?

15. This grammar is easy, _______ ________?

▲ Practice 16. Constructions. (Chart C)

Write the contraction of the pronoun and verb if appropriate. Write Ø if the pronoun and verb cannot be contracted.

1. He is (____He's____) in my class.

2. He was (____Ø____) in my class.

3. He has (____He's____) been here since July.

4. He has (____Ø____) a Volvo.*

*NOTE: has, have, and had are NOT contracted when they are used as main verbs. They are contracted only when they are used as helping verbs.
5. She had (__________) been there for a long time before we arrived.
6. She had (__________) a bad cold.
7. She would (__________) like to go to the zoo.
8. I did (__________) well on the test.
9. We will (__________) be there early.
10. They are (__________) in their seats over there.*
11. It is (__________) going to be hot tomorrow.
12. It has (__________) been a long time since I’ve seen him.
13. A bear is a large animal. It has (__________) four legs and brown hair.
14. We were (__________) on time.
15. We are (__________) always on time.
16. She has (__________) a good job.
17. She has (__________) been working there for a long time.
18. She had (__________) opened the window before class began.
19. She would (__________) have helped us if we had (__________) asked her.
20. He could (__________) have helped us if he had (__________) been there.

**Practice 17. Using not and no.** (Chart D-1)
Change each sentence into the negative in two ways: use not ... any in one sentence and no in the other.

1. I have some problems. \(\rightarrow\) I don’t have any problems. I have no problems.
2. There was some food on the shelf.
3. I received some letters from home.
4. I need some help.
5. We have some time to waste.
6. You should have given the beggar some money.
7. I trust someone. \(\rightarrow\) I don’t trust anyone. I trust no one.**
8. I saw someone.
9. There was someone in his room.
10. She can find somebody who knows about it.

*They’re, their, and there all have the same pronunciation.
**Also spelled with a hyphen in British English: no-one
Practice 18. Avoiding double negatives. (Chart D-2)
Correct the errors in these sentences, all of which contain double negatives.

1. We don’t have no time to waste.
   → We have no time to waste. OR We don’t have any time to waste.
2. I didn’t have no problems.
3. I can’t do nothing about it.
4. You can’t hardly ever understand her when she speaks.
5. I don’t know neither Ann nor her husband.
6. Don’t never drink water from that river without boiling it first.
7. Because I had to sit in the back row of the auditorium, I couldn’t barely hear the speaker.

Practice 19. Beginning a sentence with a negative word. (Chart D-3)
Change each sentence so that it begins with a negative word.

1. I had hardly stepped out of bed when the phone rang.
   → Hardly had I stepped out of bed when the phone rang.
2. I will never say that again.
3. I have scarcely ever enjoyed myself more than I did yesterday.
4. She rarely makes a mistake.
5. I will never trust him again because he lied to me.
6. It is hardly ever possible to get an appointment to see him.
7. I seldom skip breakfast.
8. I have never known a more generous person than Samantha.

Practice 20. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Choose all the correct completions for each sentence.

1. Max is known for his (honesty / fairness / famous).
2. Several students were absent from (yesterday / school / class).
3. Has Maya recovered from (her illness / her husband’s death / the chair)?
4. The criminal escaped from (jail / the key / prison).
5. Do you believe in (ghosts / UFOs / scary)?
6. Anthony is engaged to (my cousin / a friend / marriage).
7. Chris excels in (mathematics / sports / his cousins).
8. I’m very fond of (you / exciting / your children).
9. Henry doesn’t approve of (smoking / cigarettes / rain).
10. I subscribe to (magazines / a newspaper / websites).
Practice 21. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Choose the correct prepositions in parentheses.
1. Water consists (**of**/ **with**) oxygen and hydrogen.
2. I am uncomfortable because that man is staring (**to**/**at**) me.
3. Ella hid the candy (**from**/**back**) the children.
4. I arrived (**in**/**to**) this country two weeks ago.
5. We arrived (**to**/**at**) the airport ten minutes late.
6. I am envious (**in**/**of**) people who can speak three or four languages fluently.
7. The students responded (**at**/**to**) the teacher's questions.
8. The farmers are hoping (**on**/**for**) rain.
9. I'm depending (**on**/**in**) you to finish this work for me.
10. Tim wore sunglasses to protect his eyes (**for**/**from**) the sun.

Practice 22. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

**Situation 1:** Mr. and Mrs. Jones just celebrated their 50th wedding anniversary.
1. They have been married **to** each other for 50 years.
2. They have always been faithful **to** each other.
3. They are proud **of** their marriage.
4. They are polite **to** one another.
5. They are patient **with** each other.
6. They are devoted **to** one another.
7. They have been committed **to** their marriage.

**Situation 2:** Jacob and Emily have been together for five months. They don’t have a healthy relationship, and it probably won’t last long.
1. They are often annoyed **with** each other’s behavior.
2. They argue **to** each other every day.
3. They are bored **to** their relationship.
4. They are tired **to** one another.
5. Jacob is jealous **to** Emily's friends.
6. Emily is sometimes frightened **to** Jacob's moods.
Practice 23. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Complete each sentence in Column A with the correct phrase from Column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. My boots are made ___</td>
<td>a. from the burning building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. We hope you succeed ___</td>
<td>b. for telling a lie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. She forgave him ___</td>
<td>c. of leather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I’m going to take care ___</td>
<td>d. from entering the tunnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The firefighters rescued many people ___</td>
<td>e. in winning the scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I pray ___</td>
<td>f. of the children tonight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Trucks are prohibited ___</td>
<td>g. for peace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice 24. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

1. Andrea contributed her ideas ___ to ___ the discussion.
3. I can’t distinguish one twin ___ ___ the other.
4. Children rely ___ ___ their parents for food and shelter.
5. I’m worried ___ ___ this problem.
7. Charles doesn’t seem to care ___ ___ his bad grades.
8. I’m afraid I don’t agree ___ ___ you.
9. We decided ___ ___ eight o’clock as the time we should meet.
10. I am not familiar ___ ___ that author’s works.
11. Do you promise to come? I’m counting ___ ___ you to be here.
12. The little girl is afraid ___ ___ an imaginary bear that lives in her closet.
Practice 25. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

1. We will fight ______ for ______ our rights.
2. Who did you vote ______ in the last election?
3. Jason was late because he wasn’t aware ______ the time.
4. I am grateful ______ you ______ your assistance.
5. Elena is not content ______ the progress she is making.
6. Paul’s comments were not relevant ______ the topic under discussion.
7. Have you decided ______ a date for your wedding yet?
8. Patricia applied ______ admission ______ the university.
9. Daniel dreamed ______ some of his childhood friends last night.
10. Mr. Miyagi dreams ______ owning his own business someday.
11. The accused woman was innocent ______ the crime with which she was charged.
12. Ms. Sanders is friendly ______ everyone.
13. The secretary provided me ______ a great deal of information.
14. Ivan compared the wedding customs in his country ______ those in the United States.

Practice 26. The subjunctive in noun clauses. (Chart F)
Complete the sentences with appropriate verbs. There is often more than one possible completion.

1. Mr. Adams insists that we ______ be ______ careful in our writing.
2. They requested that we not ______ ______ after midnight.
3. She demanded that I ______ ______ ______ her the truth.
4. I recommended that Rita ______ ______ ______ to the head of the department.
5. I suggest that everyone ______ ______ ______ a letter to the governor.
6. It is essential that I ______ ______ ______ ______ you tomorrow.
7. It is important that he ______ ______ ______ the director of the English program.
8. It is necessary that everyone ______ ______ ______ here on time.
Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Some of the verbs are passive.

1. Her advisor recommended that she (take) ___________ five courses.
2. Roberto insisted that the new baby (name) ___________ after his grandfather.
3. The doctor recommended that she (stay) ________________ in bed for a few days.
4. The students requested that the test (postpone) ________________, but the instructor decided against a postponement.
5. It is essential that no one (admit) ________________ to the room without proper identification.
6. It is critical that pollution (control) ________________ and eventually (eliminate) ________________.
7. It was such a beautiful day that one of the students suggested we (have) ________ class outside.
8. The movie director insisted that everything about his productions (be) ________________ authentic.
9. It is vital that no one else (know) ________________ about the secret government operation.
10. Mrs. Wah asked that we (be) ________________ sure to lock the door behind us.
11. I requested that I (permit) ________________ to change my class.
12. It is important that you (be, not) ________________ late.
13. It is imperative that he (return) ________________ home immediately.
14. The governor proposed that a new highway (build) ________________.
15. Fumiko specifically asked that I (tell, not) ________________ anyone else about it.
16. She said it was important that no one else (tell) ________________ about it.
Practice 28. Troublesome verbs. (Chart G)
Choose the correct verb in parentheses.

1. The student (raised / rose) his hand in class.
2. Hot air (raises / rises).
3. Natasha (set / sat) in a chair because she was tired.
4. I (set / sat) your dictionary on the table a few minutes ago.
5. Hens (lay / lie) eggs.
6. Sara is (laying / lying) on the grass in the park right now.
7. Jan (laid / lay) the comb on top of the dresser a few minutes ago.
8. If you are tired, you should (lay / lie) down and take a nap.
9. San Francisco (lays / lies) to the north of Los Angeles.
10. Mr. Faust (raises / rises) many different kinds of flowers in his garden.
11. The student (raised / rose) from her seat and walked to the front of the auditorium to receive her diploma.
12. Hiroki is a very methodical person. Every night before going to bed, he (lays / lies) his clothes for the next day on his chair.
13. Where are my keys? I (lay / laid) them here on the desk five minutes ago.
14. Fahad (set / sat) the table for dinner.
15. Fahad (set / sat) at the table for dinner.
16. The fulfillment of all your dreams (lies / lays) within you — if you just believe in yourself.
## Special Workbook Section

### Phrasal Verbs

**PHRASAL VERBS (TWO-WORD AND THREE-WORD VERBS)**

The term *phrasal verb* refers to a verb and particle which together have a special meaning. For example, *put + off* means “postpone.” Sometimes a phrasal verb consists of three parts. For example, *put + up + with* means “tolerate.” Phrasal verbs are also called *two-word verbs* or *three-word verbs.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS</th>
<th>NONSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) <em>I handed</em> my paper in yesterday.</td>
<td>A phrasal verb may be either <em>separable</em> or <em>nonseparable.</em> With a separable phrasal verb, a noun may come either between the verb and the preposition or after the preposition, as in (a) and (b). A pronoun comes between the verb and the preposition if the phrasal verb is separable, as in (c).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) <em>I handed in</em> my paper yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) <em>I handed it in</em> yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I handed in it yesterday.)</em></td>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I ran an old friend into.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I ran her into yesterday.)</em></td>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I ran into her yesterday.)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With a nonseparable phrasal verb, a noun or pronoun must follow the preposition, as in (d) and (e).

| (d) *I ran into* an old friend yesterday. |
| (e) *I ran into* her yesterday. |

Phrasal verbs are especially common in informal English. Following is a list of common phrasal verbs and their usual meanings. This list contains only those phrasal verbs used in the exercises in the text. The phrasal verbs marked with an asterisk (*) are nonseparable.

<p>| A | ask out | ask someone to go on a date |
| B | bring about, bring on | cause |
| | bring up | (1) rear children; (2) mention or introduce a topic |
| C | call back | return a telephone call |
| | call in | ask to come to an official place for a specific purpose |
| | call off | cancel |
| | <em>call on</em> | ask to speak in class |
| | <em>call up</em> | call on the telephone |
| | <em>catch up (with)</em> | reach the same position or level |
| | <em>check in, check into</em> | register at a hotel |
| | <em>check into</em> | investigate |
| | check out | (1) borrow a book from the library; (2) investigate |
| | check out (of) | leave a hotel |
| | cheer up | make (someone) feel happier |
| | clean up | make clean and orderly |
| | <em>come across</em> | meet / find by chance |
| | cross out | draw a line through |
| | cut out | stop an annoying activity |
| D | do over | do again |
| | <em>drop by, drop in (on)</em> | visit informally |
| | drop off | leave something / someone at a place |
| | <em>drop out (of)</em> | stop going to school, to a class, to a club, etc. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>figure out</td>
<td>find out</td>
<td>fill out</td>
<td>get along (with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>discover information</td>
<td>write the answers to a questionnaire or complete an official form</td>
<td>have a good relationship with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>find out</td>
<td>get back (from)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fill in, get into</td>
<td>(1) return from a place; (2) receive again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get on</td>
<td>(1) enter a car; (2) arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get off</td>
<td>leave an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get on</td>
<td>enter an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get out of</td>
<td>(1) leave a car; (2) avoid work or an unpleasant activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get over</td>
<td>recover from an illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get through (with)</td>
<td>finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get up (from)</td>
<td>arise from a bed, a chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>give back</td>
<td>return an item to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>give up</td>
<td>stop trying, quit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*go over</td>
<td>review or check carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*grow up</td>
<td>become an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hand in</td>
<td>submit an assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hang up</td>
<td>(1) conclude a telephone conversation; (2) put clothes on a hanger or a hook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>have on</td>
<td>wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>keep out (of)</td>
<td>not enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*keep up (with)</td>
<td>stay at the same position or level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kick out (of)</td>
<td>force (someone) to leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>look after.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*look into</td>
<td>take care of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*look out (for)</td>
<td>investigate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>look over</td>
<td>be careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>look up</td>
<td>review or check carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>m</td>
<td>look for information in a reference book, on the internet, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>make up</td>
<td>(1) invent; (2) do past-due work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>name after, name for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>give a baby the name of someone else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*pass after, pass on</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pass out</td>
<td>distribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*pass out</td>
<td>lose consciousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pick out</td>
<td>select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pick up</td>
<td>(1) go to get someone (e.g., in a car); (2) take in one’s hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>point out</td>
<td>call attention to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>put away</td>
<td>remove to a proper place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>put back</td>
<td>return to the original place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>put off</td>
<td>postpone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>put on</td>
<td>put clothes on one’s body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>put out</td>
<td>extinguish a cigarette, cigar, fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*put up with</td>
<td>tolerate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>meet by chance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*run out (of)</td>
<td>finish a supply of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>show up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shut off</td>
<td>stop a machine, light, faucet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

- * indicates a word is considered informal or slightly informal.
- **Bolded** words are the preferred form in American English.

Folder: SPECIAL WORKBOOK SECTION
Practice 1. Phrasal verbs.

Complete each sentence with the appropriate preposition(s). The meaning of the phrasal verb is in parentheses.

1. Lara looked ...

a. _______ her father when he was sick. (took care of)
b. _______ her children’s homework. (reviewed)
c. _______ some information on the internet. (looked for information)
d. _______ an unusual situation at work. (investigated)

2. The tourists checked ...

a. _______ travel DVDs from the library before their trip. (borrowed)
b. _______ their hotel. (registered at)
c. _______ a famous archeological site. (investigated)
d. _______ _______ their hotel rooms. (left)

3. Mrs. Jenkins got ...

a. _______ a serious illness. (recovered from)
b. _______ _______ her planning for her daughter’s wedding. (finished)
c. _______ _______ doing an unimportant project at work. (avoided)
d. _______ _______ her summer vacation early. (returned)
e. _______ the subway at an unfamiliar stop. (left)
4. The school principal called . . .
   a. _______ the school assembly. (canceled)
   b. _______ some parents. (telephoned)
   c. _______ a few students to answer questions while visiting a class. (asked them to speak)
   d. _______ a teacher who was sick. (returned a phone call)
   e. _______ a student for discipline. (asked the student to come to his/her office)

Practice 2. Phrasal verbs.
Complete each sentence with the correct form of a phrasal verb from the list. One phrasal verb is used twice.

get along with    pass out (2)    put up with    take after    turn in
pass away        pick out        show up        think over

1. The flight attendants gave one snack to passengers during the flight. They _______ out small bags of peanuts.

2. You choose the vegetables for dinner. _______ _______ whatever you like.

3. You look like your mother, but your brother _______ _______ your father.

4. I have three good job offers to consider. I need some time to _______ them
   _______.

5. Nathan tolerates his roommate’s messy habits. I wonder how he _______ _______ them.

6. Mary’s elderly mother died last week. She _______ _______ after a long illness.

7. Julianna was two hours late for the dinner party. When she finally appeared, her friends told her it was rude to _______ _______ so late.

8. The Smiths are a friendly couple and people really like them. They seem to _______ _______ everyone.

9. Good night. It’s bedtime. I’m going to _______ _______ now.

10. Helen got hit in the head with a golf ball, but fortunately didn’t lose consciousness. The ball was traveling so fast that it was a miracle she didn’t _______ _______.
Practice 3. Phrasal verbs.
Choose the correct completions. More than one completion may be correct.

1. When do we turn in our assignment? the dinner? yesterday?
2. Mario made up a lie. a story. a flower.
3. The government took over the city. the banks. the trees.
4. Please put out your cigarette. the lights. the fire.
5. What brought about the war? the package? the crisis?
6. Did you figure out working? the problem? the puzzle?
7. How do I turn on the lights? the music? the printer?
8. Hugo asked out his classmate. a question. a girl.
9. Jill is going to give up a present. chocolate. smoking.
10. At the airport, I came across a friend. a classmate. to fly.
11. Tina dropped out of high school. the ball. college.

Practice 4. Phrasal verbs.
Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition from the list to form a two-word verb. Some prepositions may be used more than once.

back into off on out up

1. A: Guess who I ran _______ today as I was walking across campus. Ann Keefe!
   B: You’re kidding!
2. A: There will be a test on Chapters 8 and 9 next Friday.
   B: Oh, no! Couldn’t you put it __________ until Monday?
3. A: You’d better put __________ your coat before you leave. It’s chilly out.
   B: What’s the temperature?
4. A: I smell something burning in the kitchen. Can I call you __________ in a minute?
   B: Sure. I hope your dinner hasn’t burned.
   A: So do I! Bye.
5. A: I think that if I learn enough vocabulary I won’t have any trouble using English.
   B: That’s not necessarily so. I’d like to point __________ that language consists of much more than just vocabulary.

6. A: Your children certainly love the outdoors.
   B: Yes, they do. We brought them __________ to appreciate nature.

7. A: What forms do I have to fill out to change my tourist visa to a student visa?
   B: I don’t know, but I’ll look __________ it first thing tomorrow and try to find __________. I’ll let you know.

8. A: How long were you in the hospital?
   B: About a week. But I’ve missed almost two weeks of classes.
   A: It’s going to be hard for you to make __________ all the work you’ve missed, isn’t it?
   B: Very.

9. A: Could you pick __________ a newspaper on your way home from work tonight? There’s a story I want to read.
   B: Sure.

10. A: I like your new shoes.
    B: Thanks. I had to try __________ almost a dozen pairs before I decided to get these.

Practice 5. Phrasal verbs.
Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition from the list to form a two-word verb. Some prepositions may be used more than once.

about away in of off on out up

1. A: I’m trying to find yesterday’s newspaper. Have you seen it?
   B: I’m afraid I threw it __________. I thought you had finished reading it.

2. A: Where did you grow __________?
   B: In Seattle, Washington.

3. A: Don’t forget to turn the lights __________ before you go to bed.
   B: I won’t.
4. A: I have a car, so I can drive us to the festival.
   B: Good.
   A: What time should I pick you __________?
   B: Any time after five would be fine.

5. A: We couldn’t see the show at the outdoor theater last night.
   B: Why not?
   A: It was called __________ on account of rain.

   B: I think he misses his girlfriend. Let’s try to cheer him __________.

7. A: What brought __________ your decision to quit your present job?
   B: I was offered a better job.

8. A: Why did you come back early from your trip?
   B: Unfortunately, I ran __________ __________ money.

   B: Where should I drop you __________?

10. A: What time does your plane take __________?
    B: 10:40.
    A: How long does the flight take?
    B: I think we get __________ around 12:30.

Practice 6. Phrasal verbs.
Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions to form two-word or three-word verbs.

1. A: Look __________! A car is coming!

2. A: May I borrow your dictionary?
   B: Sure. But please be sure to put it __________ on the shelf when you’re finished.

3. A: I’m going to be in your neighborhood tomorrow.
   B: Oh? If you have time, why don’t you drop __________ to see us?
4. A: How does this tape recorder work?
   B: Push this button to turn it _______ and push that button to shut it _______.

5. A: Did you hear what started the forest fire?
   B: Yes. Some campers built a fire, but when they left their campsite, they didn’t _______ it _______ completely.

6. A: I need to talk to Karen.
   B: Why don’t you call her _______? She’s probably at home now.

   B: Don’t try to correct the mistake. Just tear _______ the check and throw it _______.

8. A: Are you here to apply for a job?
   B: Yes.
   A: Here is an application form. Fill it _______ and then give it _______ to me when you are finished.

   B: Where?
   A: At the other end of the block, walking toward the administration building. If we run, we can catch _______ with him.

10. A: Is your roommate here?
    B: Yes. She decided to come to the party after all. Have you ever met her?
    A: No, but I’d like to.
    B: She’s the one standing over there by the far window. She has a blue dress _______. Come on. I’ll introduce you.
1. A: What time did you get up this morning?
   B: I slept late. I didn’t drag myself out of bed until after nine.

2. A: How did you do on your composition?
   B: Not well. It had a lot of spelling mistakes, so I have to do it again.

3. A: What’s the baby’s name?
   B: Helen. She was named after her paternal grandmother.

4. A: I need to get more exercise.
   B: Why don’t you take tennis?

5. A: You can’t go in there.
   B: Why not?
   A: Look at that sign. It says, “Keep out. No trespassing.”

6. A: The radio is too loud. Would you mind if I turned it down a little?
   B: No.

7. A: I can’t hear the radio. Could you turn it up a little?
   B: Sure.

8. A: What are you doing Saturday night, Bob?
   B: I’m taking Virginia out for dinner and a show.

9. A: Don’t you think it’s hot in here?
   B: Not especially. If you’re hot, why don’t you take your sweater off?

10. A: How do you spell occasionally?
    B: I’m not sure. You’d better look it up in your dictionary.

11. A: I’m tired. I wish I could get out of going to the meeting tonight.
    B: Why do you have to go?
Practice 8. Phrasal verbs.

Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.

1. A: I need my dictionary, but I lent it to José.
   
   B: Why don’t you get it ________ from him?

2. A: Cindy is only three. She likes to play with the older kids, but when they’re running and playing, she can’t keep ________ with them.
   
   B: She doesn’t seem to mind, does she?

3. A: I made a mistake in my composition. What should I do?
   
   B: Since it’s an in-class composition, just cross it ________.

4. A: What happened when the pilot of the plane passed out during the flight?
   
   B: The co-pilot took ________.

5. I took a plane from Atlanta to Miami. I got ________ the plane in Atlanta. I got ________ the plane in Miami.

6. It was a snowy winter day, but I still had to drive to work. First I got ________ the car to start the engine. Then I got ________ of the car to scrape the snow and ice from the windows.

7. Last year I took a train trip. I got ________ the train in Chicago. I got ________ the train in Des Moines.

8. Phyllis takes the bus to work. She gets ________ the bus at Lindbergh Boulevard and gets ________ the bus about two blocks from her office on Tower Street.

9. A: Do you like living in the dorm?
   
   B: It’s OK. I’ve learned to put ________ _________ all the noise.

10. A: What brought ________ your decision to quit your job?
    
    B: I couldn’t get ________ _________ my boss.

11. A: Did you go ________ your paper carefully before you handed it ________?
    
    B: Yes. I looked it ________ carefully.
Index

A
Alan, 70–72
Able to, 105
Active verbs, 109, 111
Adjective(s), defined, A2–A3
  following being (e.g., being foolish), 14
  followed by infinitive (e.g., happy to meet), 154
  with linking verbs (e.g., taste good), A4–A5
    with get (e.g., get hungry), A4
  nouns used as (e.g., vegetable soup), 66–67
  participial (e.g., amusing/amused), 115–116
  passive verbs (stative), used as, 113
  possessive (my, your, etc.), 79–80
  preposition combinations with, A15–A16
Adjective clauses:
  expressions of quantity in, 135–136
  object pronouns (whom, which, that), 128–129
  punctuation of, 134–135
  reduction to adjective phrases, 136–137
  subject pronouns (who, which, that), 127–130, 136
  with when, 132–133
  with where, 132–133
  with whose, 130–132
Adjective phrases, 136–137
Adverb(s), A2–A3
  conjunctive (e.g., therefore), 188–189
  mid-sentence, A3
Adverb clauses, 170
  cause and effect (because, etc.), 172–173, 198
  condition (if, unless, etc.), 175–177, 197–198
  contrast (although, etc.), 173, 194–198
  direct contrast (while), 174
  punctuation of, 170
  purpose (so that), 193–194
  reduction to modifying phrases, 180–186
  summary (cause and effect, contrast, condition), 178–179, 199
  time (after, before, etc.), 170–171
A few, 75

After, 170–171
Ago, 29
Agreement:
  pronoun with noun, 80–81
  subject-verb, 57–62
  verb with paired conjunctions, 166
A little, 75–76
A lot of, 68
Although, 194–196
Am, is, are being + adjective, 14
And, but, or, nor, 167–168
Any, 77, A12
Apostrophe:
  in contractions with not, A12
  in contractions with pronouns and nouns, 64–65
  with possessive nouns, 64–66
Appositives (see Adjective phrases)
Articles, 70–72
As, 170
As soon as, 170–171
Auxiliary verbs (see Be; Contractions of verbs: Do/does/did; Have/has/had; Modal auxiliaries; Questions)

B
Be, A4
  auxiliary, 1–2, 106–108
Be able to, 105
Be going to, 37–39
Be supposed to, 92–93
Be used to, 140
Because, 170–173, 189, 198
Because of, 187–189, 196, 198
Before, 170
Being + adjective, 14
Both . . . and, 166
But, 167–168
By:
  by the time, 171–172
  with passive (the by-phrase), 109
  with reflexive pronouns, 82
Can, 103
ability/possibility, 103
degree of certainty, 96–97
in polite requests, 85
Causative verbs (make, have, get), 158–159
Clauses (see Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses;
Noun clauses)
Collective nouns, 80
Commas:
with adjective clauses, 134–136
with adjective phrases, 137–138
with adverb clauses, 170
in combining independent clauses, 167–168
in parallel structure, 165
with transitions, 188–190
Complex sentences (see Adjective clauses;
Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Compound sentences, 167–168
Conjunctions:
combining independent clauses with,
167–168
coordinating, 163, 167
paired (correlative), 166–168
punctuation with, 167–168, 190–191
Conjunctive adverbs, 188 (see also
Transitions)
Consequently, 188
Contractions of verbs:
auxiliaries with not, A11
auxiliaries with pronouns and nouns, A11
Contrary-to-fact (see Sentences:
conditional)
Coordinating conjunctions, 163, 167–168
Could, 85, 93, 95–98
degree of certainty, 95–98, 101
past ability, 103
in polite requests, 85
in reported speech, 123–124
for suggestions, 93
after wish, 211–212
Count/noncount nouns, 73–74
use of expressions of quantity with, 73–74
D
Dangling modifiers (see Modifying phrases,
reduction of adverb clauses)
Dependent clauses (see Adjective clauses;
Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Definite nouns, article use, 71–72
Despite, 194–196
Direct object, 109
Do/does/did, in negatives, 87–89, A13
Double negatives, A13
Due to, 187–188, 190
Each/every, 76
Each of, 76
-Ed forms, 8–10
spelling, 8–10
Either . . . or, 166–167
Enough, 155
Even if, 176, 198–199
-Ever words, 126
Ever since, 171
Every one of, 77
Even though, 173, 194–196
Expressions of quantity, 59, 73–74, 76–77
(see also Past participle; Verb tenses,
simple past)
F
(A) Few/(a) little, 75
For vs. since, 29
Forget/remember, 147
Frequency adverbs, A3
Future time, 5, 37
using present tenses to express, 43–44
expressing in time clauses, 40–42
(see also Be going to; Verb tenses; Will)
G
Generic noun, 70
Gerunds:
vs. infinitives, 145–149
as objects of prepositions, 139–141
following need, 157
following verbs of perception, 157
passive/past, 155–156
preposition combinations followed by, 141
as subjects, 149
verbs followed by, 142
Get:
causative (e.g., get them to do it), 158–159
linking (e.g., get hungry), A4
passive (e.g., get worried), 114–115
Go + gerund (e.g., go shopping), 142
Going to, 37–39
H
Had better, 89–90
Had to, 88–89
Have/has/had:
auxiliary, 2–4, 6
causative, 158–159
contracted, A11
as main verb, use of do with:
in negative, A10
in questions, A7, A9
in tag questions, A11
INDEX

Have to:
- lack of necessity, 87–89
- necessity, 87–89

Help + simple form, 158

How, A8–A10

However:
- ever word, 126
- transition, 189–191

How far, 118, 121, A10

How much, 118, 120–121, A9

Hyphen, 67, A12

I

If, 120 (see also Adverb clauses:
- conditions; Sentences: conditional;
- Noun clauses)
- Omitting if, 208–209

If-clauses, 175, 209

Impersonal pronouns, 82

In case that, 178

Indefinite nouns, articles with, 70

Indefinite pronouns, 80

Independent clauses, combining with
- conjunctions, 167–168

Infinitives:
- following adjectives, 154
- following need, 157
- following verbs of perception, 157
- with causatives make, have, get,
  158–159
- with it, 149
- with modal auxiliaries, 85
- past, passive, 155–156
- purpose (in order to), 153
- with question words, 121
- as subjects, 149
- verbs followed by, 144–145
- with too/every, 154
- with too/enough, 155

Information questions, A7–A10

-Ing forms:
- go + -ing, 142
  - special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 143
- spelling, 8–10
- upon + -ing, 185
- verbs of perception, + -ing (e.g., see her walking), 157

(see also Gerunds; Present participles)

In order to, 153

In spite of, 194–196

Intransitive verbs, A1

Inverted word order:
- after negative, A13
- after only if, 177

Irregular plural nouns, 63

Irregular verbs, 15–21

It:
- with infinitives, 149
- its vs. it’s, 79–80
- with noun clauses, 122
- personal pronouns, 79

L

Let + simple form, 158

Let’s, 94

Linking verbs, A4–A5

(A) Little/(a) few, 75

-Ly, adverb form, A2–A3

M

Main clauses (see Independent clauses)

Make:
- causative (e.g. make them do it),
  158–159

Many/much, 73–74

May:
- degree of certainty, 95–98, 101
- permission, 85
- in polite requests, 85

Mid-sentence adverbs, A3

Might:
- degree of certainty, 95–99, 101
- in reported speech, 124

Modal auxiliaries, 85
- passive, 112
- progressive, 101
- in reported speech, 123–124

Modifying phrases:
- reduction of adjective clauses, 136–137
- reduction of adverb clauses, 180–186

Most (of), 57, 77

Much/many, 73–74

Must:
- degree of certainty, 95–101
- necessity, 87–88
- lack of, 87
- prohibition, 87

N

Negative(s):
- beginning a sentence, A13
- in contractions, A12
- double, A13
- questions, A10

Neither ... nor, 166–167

Nevertheless/nonetheless, 198–199

No, A12

Noncount nouns, 68–69

None (of), 59

Non-progressive verbs, 13–14, 113–114

Nor, 166–167

Not, A12
Not only…but also, 166–167

Noun(s):
used as adjectives (e.g., vegetable soup), 66–67
collective, 80
count and noncount, 68–69
definite/indefinite/generic, 70
possessive, 64–66
pronoun agreement with, 80
regular and irregular plurals, 63

Noun clauses:
with the fact that, 122
with it, 122
with question words, 117–119
reported speech, sequence of tenses, 123–125
with that, 121–122
with whether/if, 120
after wish, 211–212

Now that, 172, 198

O

Objects:
of a preposition (gerund), 139
of a verb, direct/indirect, 109
Of, in expressions of quantity, 77
One, impersonal pronoun, 82
One of (+ plural noun), 76
Only if, 177, 199
On the other hand, 197
Or, 167
Other, forms of, 82
Otherwise, 197
Ought to, 89–90

P

Paired conjunctions (e.g., both…and), 166
Parallel structure, 163–165
Participial adjectives (e.g., confusing vs. confused), 115–116
Participial phrases (SEE Modifying phrases)
Participles (SEE Modifying phrases; Past participle, Present participle)
Passive, form, 106–111
by-phrase, 107
with causative verbs (e.g., have it done), 158–162
gerunds, (e.g., being done), 155–157
with get (e.g., get worried), 114–115
infinitives (e.g., to be done), 155–157
modal auxiliaries, 112
non-progressive (e.g., the door is locked), 113–114
participial adjective (e.g., amused children), 115–116
Past participle, 6
as adjective (e.g., amused children), 115–116
irregular, 18–19
in passive, 106–108, 115
in verb tenses, 6
(SEE ALSO -Ed forms)
Past time (SEE Verb tenses)
Perfect/perfect progressive verbs, 3–4 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses)
Periods, 167–168, 190–191
Personal pronouns, 79–80
agreement with nouns, 80
Phrasal modals, 85
Phrasal verbs, A19–A28
Phrases:
prepositional, A2
reduction of adjective clauses, 136–137
reduction of adverb clauses, 180–186
Place expressions with progressive verbs, 82
Polite requests, 85–86
Possessive:
in adjective clauses (whose), 130–132
nouns (e.g., John’s book), 64–66
pronouns/adjectives (mine, my, etc.), 79
in questions (which), A8
Preposition(s), A2
combinations followed by gerunds, 141
following stative passive verbs, 113–114
Prepositional phrases, A2
Present participle:
as adjective (e.g., amusing story), 115–116
vs. past participle, 96, 115
in reduction of adjective clauses, 136–137
in reduction of adverb clauses, 180–186
special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 143
spelling of -ing forms, 8–10
with verbs of perception (e.g., watch someone doing), 157–158
in verb tenses, 1–2, 5
Present time (SEE Verb tenses)
Progressive verbs, 2, 5, 206–207 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses)
vs. non-progressive, 13
with always, 24
Pronouns:
impersonal, 82
indefinite, 80
object, 79
personal, 79
agreement with nouns, 80, 84
possessive, 79
reflexive, 81
relative (SEE Adjective clauses)
subject, 79
Pronunciation:
- s/es, 58

Punctuation:
- adjective clauses, 134–136
- adjective phrases, 137–138
- adverb clauses, 170
- independent clauses, 167–168
- parallel structure, 165
- quoted speech, 122–123
- transitions, 188–190

(SEE ALSO Apostrophe, Commas; Hyphen; Periods; Quotation marks)

Q
Quantity (SEE Expressions of quantity)
Questions:
- information, A7–A10
- negative, A10
- tag, A11
- word order in, A6
- yes/no, A7–A8

Question words:
- with infinitives, 121
- in noun clauses, 117–119
- in questions, A7–A10

Quotation marks, 122–123
Quoted speech, 122–123

R
Reduction:
- of adjective clauses, 136–137
- of adverb clauses, 180–186

Reflexive pronouns, 81

Regular plural nouns, 63

Remember/forget, 147

Repeated action in the past (would), 104

Reported speech, 123–124

S
-s/es, 58, 64–65

-Self-selves, 81

Sentences:
- complex (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
- compound (SEE Conjunctions, combining independent clauses with)
- conditional, 200–210, 213
- contrary to fact, 202–205
- inverted word order in, 207–208
- interrogative (SEE Questions)
- negative, A12–A13
- simple (SEE Subjects, verbs, objects)

Sequence of tenses in noun clauses, 123–125

Shall, for suggestions, 94

Should:
- advisability, 89–90
- degree of certainty, 100–101
- omitting if, 208
- past form, 91
- in reported speech, 124
- for suggestions, 93

Simple form of a verb:
- with causative verbs, 158
- following let and help, 158
- with modal auxiliaries, 85, 87
- with verbs of perception, 157

Simple tenses, 2, 5, 7, 12–13, 15–23 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses)

Since:
- meaning because, 172, 190, 198
- duration of time, 28–29

Since vs. for, 28–29

Singular/plural (SEE Agreement;
Count/noncount nouns; irregular plural nouns; Nouns, used as adjectives;
-s/-es)

So, conjunction, 188–189

Some, 70

So that, 193

So . . . that/such . . . that, 191–192

Spelling:
- -edi-ing, 8–10
- -s/-es, 58, 64–65

Subjects, verbs, objects, A1–A2

Subject-verb agreement, 57–62

Subordinate clauses (SEE Adjective clauses;
- Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)

Such . . . that, 191–192

Supposed to, 92–93

T
Tag questions, A11

Tenses (SEE Verb tenses)

That:
- in adjective clauses, 127–130
- in noun clauses, 121–122

The, 71–72

There + be, 59–60

Therefore, 188–189

They, impersonal pronoun, 82

Though, 196

Time clauses, 180–182
- future, tense use in, 40–42
- Too, 154–155

Transitions, 197

Transitive/intransitive:
- in passive, 109
Uncountable nouns (see Noncount nouns)

What, 117–118, A7–A10
What + a form of do, A7–A10
What kind, A8–A10
When, 132–133, 138, 170–172, A7–A9
Whenever, 171
Whether, 120–121
Whether or not, 176
Which, 118, 127–129, 132, A8–A9
While, 172–174, 197

Verbals (see Gerunds; infinitives)

Verb tenses:
in adverb clauses of time, 40–42, 171
future perfect, 6, 46
future perfect progressive, 6, 46
future progressive, 5, 45
in passive, 106–108, 110–112
non-progressive, 13
overview, 5–6
past perfect, 6, 34
past perfect progressive, 6, 35
past progressive, 5, 21–23
present perfect, 6, 26–32
present perfect progressive, 6, 31–33
present progressive, 5, 12–14, 43–44
review of, 48–54
sequence of in noun clauses, 123–125
simple future, 5, 37
simple past, 5, 15–23, 30, 33–34
simple present, 5, 12–13

Very/too, 154

Voiced and voiceless sounds (-s), 58

Was/were in conditional sentences, 203, 205–207
Was/were going to, 93
CHAPTER 1: OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 1
1. eat
2. ate...visited...wrote
3. am talking...am answering
4. was looking
5. have asked
6. have been talking
7. will be
8. will be sitting
9. had eaten
10. will have eaten

PRACTICE 2, p. 2
1. 7th, 14th, 21st, 28th
2. 7th
3. 3rd
4. 2nd, 3rd, 4th
5. 10th, 11th, 12th
6. 14th and 15th
7. 7th
8. 24th

PRACTICE 3, p. 2
1. rains
2. visited
3. will win
4. is thinking
5. will be flying
6. was thinking
7. will be working
8. went...were sleeping
9. fell...will help
10. are swimming

PRACTICE 4, p. 3
1. have
2. had
3. has been
4. was
5. will have been
6. have lived
7. had
8. have
9. had
10. had

PRACTICE 5, p. 3
1. have
2. has been
3. will have been
4. had
5. have
6. had
7. have been waiting
8. has
9. had

PRACTICE 6, p. 4
1. a 4. b 7. b
2. b 5. a 8. a
3. a 6. a 9. a

PRACTICE 7, p. 5
1. eats
2. ate
3. will eat'/ll eat
4. am eating'/m eating
5. was eating
6. will be eating
7. have already eaten
8. had already eaten
9. will have already eaten
10. has been eating
11. had been eating
12. will have been eating

PRACTICE 8, p. 7
1. at this time
2. in the past
3. daily habit
4. past and present
5. past only
6. in the past
7. at this time
8. in the future
9. daily habit
10. in the past

PRACTICE 9, p. 7
1. b. soon c. next week
2. a. right now
3. b. now c. right now
4. b. all day c. since Monday
5. a. now b. this week
6. b. next month c. this weekend
7. a. since 9:00 b. all day c. for two hours
8. a. last week c. yesterday
9. a. at midnight b. when we came
10. a. tomorrow c. in the morning
11. a. soon c. in a few days

PRACTICE 10, p. 8
1. a 3. b 5. a, b, c 7. a
2. a 4. a, b 6. a 8. a, c

PRACTICE 11, p. 8
1. arriving
2. copying
3.
4. enjoying
5. filling
6. happening
7. hoping
8. leaving
9. making
10.
11. staying
12.
13.
14.
15. working
16.
17.
18.
19.
20.
21.
22.
23.
24.
25.
26.
27.
28.
29.
30.
31.
32.
33.
34.
35.
36.
37.
38.
39.
40.
41.
42.
43.
44.
45.
46.
47.
48.
49.
50.
51.
52.
53.
54.
55.
56.
57.
58.
59.
60.
61.
62.
63.
64.
65.
66.
67.
68.
69.
70.
71.
72.
73.
74.
75.
76.
77.
78.
79.
80.
81.
82.
83.
84.
85.
86.
87.
88.
89.
90.
91.
92.
93.
94.
95.
96.
97.
98.
99.
100.

PRACTICE 7, p. 5
1. eats
2. ate
3. will eat'/ll eat
4. am eating'/m eating
5. was eating
6. will be eating
7. have already eaten
8. had already eaten
9. will have already eaten
10. has been eating
11. had been eating
12. will have been eating

dinner

PRACTICE 8, p. 7
1. at this time
2. in the past
3. daily habit
4. past and present
5. past only
6. in the past
7. at this time
8. in the future
9. daily habit
10. in the past

PRACTICE 9, p. 7
1. b. soon c. next week
2. a. right now
3. b. now c. right now
4. b. all day c. since Monday
5. a. now b. this week
6. b. next month c. this weekend
7. a. since 9:00 b. all day c. for two hours
8. a. last week c. yesterday
9. a. at midnight b. when we came
10. a. tomorrow c. in the morning
11. a. soon c. in a few days

PRACTICE 10, p. 8
1. a 3. b 5. a, b, c 7. a
2. a 4. a, b 6. a 8. a, c

PRACTICE 11, p. 8
1. arriving
2. copying
3.
4. enjoying
5. filling
6. happening
7. hoping
8. leaving
9. making
10.
11. staying
12.
13.
14.
15. working
16.
17.
18.
19.
20.
21.
22.
23.
24.
25.
26.
27.
28.
29.
30.
31.
32.
33.
34.
35.
36.
37.
38.
39.
40.
41.
42.
43.
44.
45.
46.
47.
48.
49.
50.
51.
52.
53.
54.
55.
56.
57.
58.
59.
60.
61.
62.
63.
64.
65.
66.
67.
68.
69.
70.
71.
72.
73.
74.
75.
76.
77.
78.
79.
80.
81.
82.
83.
84.
85.
86.
87.
88.
89.
90.
91.
92.
93.
94.
95.
96.
97.
98.
99.
100.
### Practice 12, p. 9
1. bothered 6. copied
2. enjoyed 7. occurred
3. fastened 8. patted
4. feared 9. referred
5. played 10. replied
6. rained 11. scared
12. returned 13. tried
14. walked

### Practice 13, p. 10
1. preferring preferred
2. studying studied
3. working worked
4. offering offered
5. kissing kissed
6. playing played
7. fainting fainted
8. allowing allowed
9. stopping stopped
10. tying tied
11. dying died
12. folding folded
13. trying tried
14. deciding decided
15. hopping hopped

### Practice 14, p. 10
1. do you spell 13. am staying
2. spell 14. am looking
3. has 15. have been looking
4. are you 16. find
5. am 17. Have you found
6. lived 18. had been looking
7. moved 19. are you moving
8. did you grow 20. give
9. did you come 21. will be moving
10. arrived 22. will have moved
11. have been 23. will be
12. do you like

### Chapter 2: Present and Past; Simple and Progressive

#### Practice 1, p. 12
1. sets
2. is setting
3. are practicing
4. practice
5. listen
6. am listening / 'm listening
7. talk
8. are talking
9. are eating / 're eating
10. eat

#### Practice 2, p. 12
1. fall
2. are falling
3. grows
4. are growing
5. shines
6. is shining ... are singing
7. sings
8. reads
9. am calling

#### Practice 3, p. 13
1. own
2. am trying / 'm trying
3. belongs
4. is sleeping
5. means
6. shrinks
7. is biting / 's biting
8. is bleeding / 's bleeding
9. am failing / 'm failing

#### Practice 4, p. 13
1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. a

#### Practice 5, p. 14
1. a
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. a

#### Practice 6, p. 15
Part I. changed ... launched ... was ... weighed ... took ... ushered ... was ... marked
Part II.
1. T
2. F
3. T

#### Practice 7, p. 15
Part I.
1. worked
2. listened
3. studied
4. rained
Part II.
5. broke
6. swam
7. hit

#### Practice 8, p. 16
Group 1.
1. cost
2. shut
3. cut
4. quit

Group 2.
5. forgot
6. chose
7. took
8. gave

#### Practice 9, p. 16
Group 3.
1. began
2. sang
3. ran
4. drank

Group 4.
5. bought
6. taught
7. won
8. lost
9. left
10. upset

#### Practice 10, p. 17
Group 5.
1. knew
2. flew
3. did
4. saw

Group 6.
5. ran
6. came
7. became
Group 7.
8. was
9. went

Group 8.
10. dreamed / dreamt
11. learned / learnt
12. burned / burnt
13. spilled / spilt

PRACTICE 11, p. 18
1. sold sold
2. bought bought
3. began begun
4. had had
5. caught caught
6. quit quit
7. found found
8. made made
9. took taken
10. broke broken
11. came come
12. lost lost
13. slept slept
14. built built
15. fought fought

PRACTICE 12, p. 19
| Simple Form | Simple Past | Past Participle
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. spend    | understood  | spent
| 3. see      | let         | let
| 4. saw      | taught      | taught
| 5. speak    | went        | spoken
| 6. forget   | paid        | paid
| 7. write    | fell        | fallen
| 10. feel    | left        | felt
| 13. leave   | upset       | upset
| 14. upset   |            |                |
| 15. fly     |            |                |

PRACTICE 13, p. 19
1. broke
2. stole
3. knew
4. heard
5. came
6. shook
7. hid
8. found
9. fought
10. ran
11. shot
12. caught

PRACTICE 14, p. 20
1. bit
2. held
3. meant
4. blew
5. quit
6. felt
7. stung
8. swam
9. paid
10. caught

PRACTICE 15, p. 21
1. spent
2. led
3. bet
4. wept
5. upset
6. split
7. sank
8. flew
9. spun
10. rang
11. chose
12. froze

PRACTICE 16, p. 21
1. called
2. were watching
3. was humming
4. met
5. saw
6. was cleaning
7. was driving . . . got
8. was blowing . . . were bending
9. were playing . . . was pulling

PRACTICE 17, p. 22
1. 2, 1
2. 2, 1
3. 1, 2
4. 2, 1

PRACTICE 18, p. 23
1. had
2. were having
3. stopped . . . fell . . . spilled
4. served . . . came
5. looked . . . was sleeping . . . was dreaming . . . was smiling
6. was working . . . exploded
7. caused . . . dropped

PRACTICE 19, p. 23
1. 2 take . . . rains
2. 4 was riding . . . heard
3. 1 am riding . . . is repairing
4. 3 rode . . . forgot
5. 4 was having . . . crashed
6. 3 had . . . didn't eat
7. 1 is having
8. 2 has
9. 2 celebrate . . . are
10. 4 were working . . . called
11. 3 celebrated . . . was

PRACTICE 20, p. 24
1. is always complaining
2. is always talking
3. live
4. is forever leaving
5. are always interrupting
6. are always losing
7. play
8. are always studying

PRACTICE 21, p. 25
Across
1. went
2. listening
3. studying
4. ate
5. thinking
6. having
7. have

Down
2. listening
5. think
3. studying
7. heard
4. ate
8. thinking
6. having
7. have
CHAPTER 3: PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 26

Part I.
1. has been ... has remained ... have estimated
2. has been increasing ... have been growing
3. had been ... had dropped
4. were
5. will be

Part II.
1. F 4. F
2. F 5. T
3. T

PRACTICE 2, p. 27
1. eaten  6. worn
2. visited 7. taken
3. worked 8. gone
4. liked  9. ridden
5. known 10. been

PRACTICE 3, p. 27
1. a. for  2. a. since
   b. for  b. for
   c. since  c. since
   d. since d. for
   e. for  e. since
   f. since f. since
   g. since g. for

PRACTICE 4, p. 28
1. have already eaten
2. have won
3. have not written
4. has improved
5. has not started
6. have already swept
7. have you known
8. have made
9. have never ridden
10. Have you ever swum

PRACTICE 5, p. 29
1. the 21st of April ... three weeks ... April 1st ... three weeks
2. two months ago ... January 1st ... two months
3. two weeks ... February 14th
4. nine years ... nine years ... October, 2000

PRACTICE 6, p. 29

Answers will vary.
1. a. We have known Mrs. Jones for one month.
   b. We have known Mrs. Jones since last month.
2. a. They have lived there for (___) years.
   b. They have lived there since 2001.
3. a. I have liked foreign films since 200(___).
   b. I have liked foreign films for five years.
4. a. Jack has worked for a software company for one year.
   b. Jack has worked for a software company since last year.

PRACTICE 7, p. 30
1. is 6. is
2. has 7. has
3. is 8. is
4. is 9. has
5. has

PRACTICE 8, p. 30
1. became 5. lived
2. has been 6. have lived
3. has been 7. worked
4. has rained 8. haven’t worked

PRACTICE 9, p. 30
1. knew ... have known
2. agreed ... have agreed
3. took ... has taken
4. has played ... played
5. wrote ... has written
6. sent ... have sent
7. has flown ... flew
8. overslept ... has overslept

PRACTICE 10, p. 31
1. have been talking 4. have you been sitting
2. have spoken 5. have sat
3. has won

PRACTICE 11, p. 31
1. have been playing 6. has slept
2. has played 7. have been flying
3. has raised 8. have been sleeping
4. has been lecturing 9. have been searching
5. has never missed

PRACTICE 12, p. 32
1. have never understood 6. have been traveling
2. have met 7. has grown
3. has been standing 8. wanted
4. has been painting 9. have already spent
5. have never heard 10. has been cooking

PRACTICE 13, p. 33

Sample answers
1. In 1999, Janet moved to Canada.
2. In 2000, Janet joined Lingua Schools as a teaching assistant.
3. Janet has been living / has lived in Canada since 1999.
4. Janet has been a teacher since 2001.
5. Janet has been teaching / has taught her own class since 2001.
6. Janet has been working / has worked at Lingua Schools since 2000.

PRACTICE 14, p. 33
1. We had driven only two miles = 1
   we got a flat tire = 2
2. Alan told me = 2
   he had written a book = 1
3. we arrived at the airport = 2
   the plane had already left = 1
4. The dog had eaten the entire roast = 1
   anyone knew it was gone = 2

4 ANSWER KEY Chapter 3
5. We didn’t stand in line for tickets = 2
   we had already bought them by mail = 1
6. Carl played the guitar so well = 2
   he had studied with a famous guitarist = 1
7. the movie ended = 2
   everyone had fallen asleep = 1
8. the professor had corrected the third paper = 1
   he was exhausted from writing comments on the
   student’s papers = 2
9. I had just placed an order at the store for a new
   camera = 1
   I found a cheaper one online = 2

PRACTICE 15, p. 34
1. had not gotten
2. had not met
3. had not taken
4. had not eaten
5. had not had

PRACTICE 16, p. 34
1. b. had already finished
2. a. turned on
3. b. had burned
4. b. had never spent
5. a. helped
6. b. had never visited
7. b. had traveled

PRACTICE 17, p. 34
1. went ... had never been ... didn’t take ... was
2. ate ... had never eaten
3. A: saw ... did ... Had you ever acted
   B: started

PRACTICE 18, p. 35
1. have been studying
2. had been studying
3. have been waiting
4. had been waiting
5. had been working
6. has been working

PRACTICE 19, p. 35
1. had been listening ... have been dancing ... singing
2. have been waiting
3. had been waiting
4. has been training
5. had been running
6. had been trying ... has been teaching
7. has been performing
8. have been working ... had been building

PRACTICE 20, p. 36
1. I’ve seen it ten times.
2. I’ve been reading it ...
3. Our guests left ...
4. We have been studying ...
5. I’ve been having ...
6. ... had eaten.
7. ... , so I ran ...
8. She left ...
9. ... , I had celebrated ...
10. B: ... I have been holding for more than half an hour!

CHAPTER 4: FUTURE TIME

PRACTICE 1, p. 37
1. He will be
2. will stay open
3. will be

PRACTICE 2, p. 37
1. is going to visit
2. is going to win
3. are you going to take
4. is not going to be
5. Are they going to join
6. am not going to lie ... I am going to tell

PRACTICE 3, p. 38
1. a. will set
   b. is going to set
2. a. will arrive
   b. is going to arrive
3. a. will rain
   b. is going to rain
4. a. will bloom
   b. are going to bloom
5. a. will end
   b. is going to end
6. a. will ... buy
   b. are ... going to buy
7. a. will ... take
   b. am ... going to take

PRACTICE 4, p. 38
1. Willingness
2. Prediction
3. Prediction
4. Prior plan
5. Willingness
6. Prior plan
7. Prediction

PRACTICE 5, p. 39
1. a. prior plan
2. b. decision of the moment
3. b. decision of the moment
4. a. prior plan
5. a. prior plan
6. b. decision of the moment

PRACTICE 6, p. 39
1. I’ll call him
2. She’s going to be / She’ll be
3. I’m going to fly
4. We’re going to the game
5. I’ll open it
6. I’m going to teach / I will teach

PRACTICE 7, p. 39
1. will
2. are going to
3. will
4. A: Are you going to
   B: are going to
5. am going to
6. will
7. will
8. is going to
9. A: am going to
   B: will
10. B: am going to ... will
PRACTICE 8, p. 40

Time Clauses
1. when you return from your trip
2. After the train stops
3. until it gets dark
4. as soon as the baby is born
5. when he retires
6. when you are eighteen years old
7. as soon as the news goes over
8. when the new semester begins

PRACTICE 9, p. 41
1. retire 6. graduates
2. rings 7. is
3. finish 8. hear
4. take 9. leave
5. arrives 10. get

PRACTICE 10, p. 41
1. b 6. a
2. a 7. a
3. b 8. b
4. a 9. a
5. a 10. a

PRACTICE 11, p. 42
1. will not / are not going to return ... get
2. gets ... will / is going to be
3. is not going to / won't be ... learns ... comes ... asks
4. returns ... is going to / will start
5. is going to / will build ... is going to / will be ... complete
6. hear ... will let
7. will lend ... finish
8. A: will / is going to be
    B: will / am going to be

PRACTICE 12, p. 43
1. 'm seeing 4. is working
2. is having 5. 're having
3. is opening 6. are attending

PRACTICE 13, p. 43
1. a, b, c
2. c
3. a, b
4. a, b, c
5. a, b
6. a

PRACTICE 14, p. 44
1. I'm sending
2. NC
3. I'm having
4. A: are you doing
    B: I'm studying
5. NC
6. are they getting
7. NC
8. we're moving
9. Is he teaching
10. A: I'm not sending
    B: I'm coming

PRACTICE 15, p. 45
1. will be sitting
2. will be flying
3. will be sleeping
4. will be snowing
5. will be watching

PRACTICE 16, p. 45
1. heals ... will be playing
2. clear ... will be standing
3. start ... will be attending
4. have ... will be shopping
5. will be attending ... return

PRACTICE 17, p. 46
1. will already have risen
2. will have been riding
3. will already have landed
4. will have been listening
5. will have drunk
6. will have been flying
7. will have saved
8. will have taught

PRACTICE 18, p. 46
Note: be going to is also possible in place of will.
1. gets ... will be shining
2. will brush ... shower ... will make
3. eats ... will get
4. gets ... will have drunk
5. will answer ... will plan
6. will have called
7. will be attending
8. will go ... will have
9. finishes ... will take ... returns
10. will work ... goes
11. leaves ... will have attended
12. gets ... will be playing ... will be watching
13. will have been playing
14. will have ... will talk
15. will watch ... will put
16. goes ... will have had ... will be

CHAPTER 5: REVIEW OF VERB TENSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 48
1. has never flown
2. have been waiting ... hasn't arrived
3. are ... reach
4. didn't own ... had owned
5. are having ... has been
6. will have left ... get
7. went ... got ... were dancing ... were talking ... was standing ... had never met ... introduced
8. was sitting ... heard ... got ... looked ... had just backed

PRACTICE 2, p. 48
1. am taking ... leave ... 'm going ... leave ... am going to go ... is studying ... has lived ... knows ... has promised ... have never been ... am looking
2. had been raining ... dropped ... is going to be ... changes ... wake ... will be snowing
PRACTICE 3, p. 49
1. had been 10. was wearing
2. met 11. had changed
3. had missed 12. was still
4. was 13. asked
5. got 14. had gained
6. took 15. had turned
7. was 16. looked
8. had grown 17. were
9. was

PRACTICE 4, p. 49
Note: *be going to* is also possible in place of *will*.
1. will have been 10. will probably wear
2. will meet 11. will have changed
3. will have missed 12. will still be
4. will be 13. will ask
5. get 14. will probably have gained
6. will take 15. will have turned
7. will no longer be 16. will look
8. will have grown 17. will be
9. will be

PRACTICE 5, p. 50
Part I.
1. haven’t seen 6. is
2. recuperating 7. doing
3. happened 8. has
4. broke 9. will / is going to be
5. was playing

Part II.
1. sent 4. are trying
2. haven’t received 5. will / is going to start
3. is not functioning

PRACTICE 6, p. 51
1. used 9. talked
2. use 10. fell
3. does it consist 11. agree
4. do teachers use 12. think
5. doesn’t give 13. ’m taking
6. doesn’t make 14. always asks
7. knows 15. has been using
8. sounds 16. didn’t realize / hadn’t realized

PRACTICE 7, p. 52
1. a. is waiting
   b. has been waiting
   c. will have been waiting
2. a. is standing
   b. has been standing
   c. will have stood / will have been standing
   d. will have been standing

PRACTICE 8, p. 52
1. d. am waiting
2. c. has appeared
3. a. is in her room studying
4. b. do you think
5. c. has been working
6. c. ’m going to make
7. a. find
8. c. is
9. b. was watching
10. d. have existed
11. a. has been ringing
12. d. depends
13. a. ’m staying
14. b. has made
15. c. stepped
16. d. had been waiting
17. b. isn’t going to exist
18. d. had never won
19. c. will have been studying

PRACTICE 9, p. 54
1. a. is seeing
2. a. I’ve talked
3. b. will be sleeping
4. c. have been boiling
5. c. had been making
6. a. don’t believe
7. b. ’ll help
8. b. has been
9. d. speaks
10. c. are becoming
11. a. hadn’t been getting
12. a. reaches
13. a. lasted
14. c. have been working
15. c. will find
16. d. were sleeping
17. b. had lost
18. a. turn

CHAPTER 6: SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

PRACTICE 1, p. 57
1. wears
2. are
3. beats
4. need
5. knows
6. magazines . . . years
7. are
8. subjects
9. There are . . . kinds
10. is
11. has
12. takes
13. like . . . get . . . workers . . .
   don’t fit

PRACTICE 2, p. 58
1. floats Verb Singular
2. Boats Noun Plural
3. lives Verb Singular
4. friends Noun Plural
5. eats Verb Singular
6. Donuts Noun Plural
7. Babies Noun Plural
8. cries Verb Singular

PRACTICE 3, p. 58
1. balls /z/
2. wishes /z/
3. aunties /z/
4. flowers /z/
PRACTICE 4, p. 58
1. is
2. are
3. has
4. barks
5. bark
6. is
7. are
8. is
9. is
10. is

PRACTICE 5, p. 59
1. is
2. are
3. is
4. are
5. is ... is
6. are
7. is ... are
8. is ... is
9. is ... are
10. is ... is

PRACTICE 6, p. 59
1. has
2. were
3. was
4. was
5. is ... has (informal: have)
6. is
7. has
8. has
9. has
10. have

PRACTICE 7, p. 59
1. is
2. are
3. are
4. is
5. weren't
6. was
7. aren't
8. isn't
9. has
10. have

PRACTICE 8, p. 60
1. are
2. is
3. is
4. is
5. is ... is
6. isn't
7. isn't
8. are
9. are
10. is

PRACTICE 9, p. 60
1. is
2. like ... drive
3. is
4. are ... are
5. are ... contains ... are
6. costs
7. is ... is ... are
8. is ... reminds ... makes

PRACTICE 10, p. 61
1. has
2. takes
3. are ... have
4. was ... were
5. take
6. is
7. are ... is
8. has ... are ... were
9. is
10. is
11. is ... have
12. is ... have
13. is
14. speak
15. use

PRACTICE 11, p. 62
1. vote
2. have participated
3. was
4. knows
5. speak ... understand
6. are
7. do ... broadcast
8. are
9. have been
10. has received ... have gone
11. confirms
12. is ... is
13. are
14. has
15. Aren't
16. is
17. begin *4 states begin with the letter A: Alabama, Arkansas, Alaska, Arizona.
18. consists
19. have
20. is
21. Was

CHAPTER 7: NOUNS

PRACTICE 1, p. 63
1. cars
2. women
3. matches
4. mice
5. cities
6. donkeys
7. halves
8. chiefs
9. classes
10. feet
11. heroes
12. pianos
13. videos
14. bases
15. bacteria
16. series

PRACTICE 2, p. 63
1. potatoes
2. monkeys
3. thieves ... radios
4. children
5. teeth
6. beliefs
7. fish
8. species ... kilos

PRACTICE 3, p. 64
1. cares ... feathers
2. occupations ... Doctors ... Pilots ... airplanes ... Farmers ... crops ... Shepherds ...
3. designs buildings ... digs ... objects ...
4. computers ... Computers
5. factories ... employs
6. Kangaroos ... animals ... continents ... zoos
7. Mosquitos / Mosquitoes
8. tomatoes
PRACTICE 4, p. 64
1. a. parents’
   b. two
   c. parents + house
2. a. parent’s
   b. one
   c. parent + concern
3. a. cats'
   b. many
   c. cats + eyes
4. a. cat’s
   b. one
   c. cat + eyes
5. a. Mary’s
   b. brother
   c. Mary + brother
6. a. Mary’s
   b. brothers
   c. Mary + brothers
7. a. brothers'
   b. more than one
   c. brothers + team
8. a. brother’s
   b. one
   c. brother + team

PRACTICE 5, p. 65
1. one
2. more than one
3. more than one
4. one
5. more than one
6. more than one
7. one

PRACTICE 6, p. 65
1. secretary’s
2. secretaries
3. cats'
4. cat’s
5. supervisors'
6. supervisor’s
7. babies'
8. baby’s
9. child’s
10. children’s
11. people’s
12. actors'
13. actor’s

PRACTICE 7, p. 66
1. mother’s
2. grandmothers'
3. teacher’s
4. boss'
5. employee’s...employees'
6. men’s...women’s...children’s...girls’...boys'

PRACTICE 8, p. 66
Adjectives
1. expensive
2. theater
3. small
4. movie
5. family
6. family
7. computer
8. hair
9. window
10. gas

PRACTICE 9, p. 66
1. groceries...grocery
2. chickens...chicken
3. tomato...tomatoes
4. pictures...picture
5. flower...flowers
6. drugs...drug
7. eggs...egg
8. two lanes...two-lane
9. five-minute...five minutes
10. sixty-year-old...sixty years old
11. truck...truck
12. computers...computer

PRACTICE 10, p. 67
1. kitchen table
2. beds
3. beds
4. home offices
5. office phone
6. bathroom sinks
7. vegetable garden
8. cherry trees

PRACTICE 11, p. 67
1. student handbook
2. birthday party
3. government check
4. airplane seats
5. cotton pajamas
6. hotel rooms
7. ten-month-old baby
8. three-day-trip
9. three-room-apartment
10. five-page paper
11. opera singer
12. stamp collector

PRACTICE 12, p. 68
Count
1. eggs...bananas
2. letters...magazines...catalogs...bills
3. Euros...pounds...dollars
4. rings...earrings
5. language
6. table...chairs...umbrella
Noncount
food...bread...
milk...coffee
mail
money
jewelry
vocabulary...
grahmer
furniture

PRACTICE 13, p. 68
1. words
2. some
3. cars
4. much
5. sandwich
6. one
7. some
8. very

PRACTICE 14, p. 69
1. hair...eyes
2. No change.
3. No change.
4. No change.
5. No change.
6. classes
7. faxes

PRACTICE 15, p. 69
1. courage
2. some
3. shoes
4. garbage
5. glasses...glass
6. glasses...glass
7. some lost luggage...many
8. much...some
9. hills...lovely...damp
10. good

PRACTICE 16, p. 70
1. A
2. An
3. O Energy
4. A
5. An
6. O Fruit
7. O Sodium
8. O Air
9. O Rice
10. An
11. A
12. O Football
13. A
14. A

ANSWER KEY Chapter 7 9
PRACTICE 17, p. 70
1. a
2. some
3. an
4. some
5. a
6. some
7. some
8. c. fun d. work
9. a. people b. things c. professors
d. education

PRACTICE 18, p. 70
1. b
2. a
3. a

PRACTICE 19, p. 71
1. The sun ... the sky
2. The boy is about five years old, and the girl ...
3. Penguins live in Antarctica. Polar bears ...
4. Which is more important—love or money?
5. B: Do you have a dictionary? Look up the word in the dictionary.
6. B: ... I didn't see the bee, but ...

PRACTICE 20, p. 71
1. A: a ... a
2. A: the
3. A: a
4. A: a
5. A: a
6. A: the

PRACTICE 21, p. 72
1. O Lightning ... a ... O
2. a ... the
3. O Circles ... O
4. A ... a ... the ... the
5. The ... the ... an
6. the ... a ... the ... a ... The ... O
7. a ... The ... O

PRACTICE 22, p. 73
1. a. three ... b. several ... f. too-many ... g. a-few ... i. a-number-of
2. e. too-much ... h. a-little ... j. a-great-deal-of ... l. no

PRACTICE 23, p. 73
1. many computers
2. much
3. many children are
4. many teeth
5. many countries
6. much
7. much
8. many
9. is ... much
10. much
11. was ... much
12. much
13. many ... volcanoes are
14. many speeches

PRACTICE 24, p. 74
1. a. pictures b. photographs d. ceramic bowls
2. a. milk c. magazines
3. b. people c. babies
4. a. food b. cream c. coffee
5. a. food b. pizza c. drinks
6. c. bottles of soda
7. a. thoughts c. ideas

PRACTICE 25, p. 75
1. a. We have a little money.
2. b. They know a few people.
3. b. She has a little patience.
4. a. I speak some Spanish.
5. b. Marta asked a few questions.

PRACTICE 26, p. 75
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. a

PRACTICE 27, p. 75
1. some a. little
2. some a. few
3. some a. few
4. some a little
5. not-many few
6. some a few
7. almost-no little
8. some a few
9. some ... some a little ... a little
10. some a little

PRACTICE 28, p. 76
1. state 6. child ... chimpanzees
2. states 7. neighbors
3. puppies 8. man
4. puppy 9. goose
5. children 10. women

PRACTICE 29, p. 77
1. person
2. the rights
3. the states
4. Each senator
5. Correct.
6. the small states
7. the citizens ... correct
8. citizen

PRACTICE 30, p. 77
1. of 7. O
2. O 8. O
3. of 9. O ... of ... of
4. O 10. O ... of
5. O 11. of ... O
6. of

PRACTICE 31, p. 78
Across
3. All
4. some
6. man
8. Every
CHAPTER 8: PRONOUNS

PRACTICE 1, p. 79
1. He → Bob
2. They → Mr. and Mrs. Nobrega
3. her → teacher
4. She → baby
5. It → kind
6. them → hawks
7. him → Mr. Frank
8. They → dog and cat

PRACTICE 2, p. 79
1. I
2. me
3. them...They
4. them
5. my...yours
6. his...hers...their
7. She and I...Our...us
8. me...its...it
9. they...They...their
10. its...its...It's

PRACTICE 3, p. 80
1. b
2. a
3. a, b
4. a

PRACTICE 4, p. 80
1. it...them
2. their
3. his...her
4. it...They
5. his or her / their
6. its / their

PRACTICE 5, p. 81
1. ourselves
2. herself
3. himself
4. themselves
5. myself
6. yourselves
7. yourself

PRACTICE 6, p. 81
1. is angry at himself
2. introduce myself
3. help yourself
4. pat yourself
5. talks to herself
6. fix itself
7. laugh at ourselves
8. feeling sorry for himself

PRACTICE 7, p. 82
1. c. themselves
2. b. oneself
3. a. your
4. a. you
5. c. one
6. b. you
7. a. They

PRACTICE 8, p. 82
1. a. Another
2. a. other
3. a. others
4. a. other
5. b. the other
6. c. The others
7. a. Another
8. b. other
9. b. The others
10. c. the other
11. b. the other*

*Oregon, California, Alaska, Hawaii

PRACTICE 9, p. 83
1. another
2. another
3. another
4. another

PRACTICE 10, p. 84
1. d. each other
2. f. other than
3. a. every other
4. e. in other words
5. b. after another
6. c. the other day

PRACTICE 11, p. 84
(1) Potatoes are grown in most countries. They are one of the most widely grown vegetables in the world. They are very versatile; they can be prepared in many different ways.

(2) French fries are popular almost everywhere. Besides frying them, you can boil or bake potatoes. Another way people... and other kinds of dishes. It's... from potatoes. There are still other ways... processors to make products such as potato chips and freeze-dried potatoes.

(3) Potatoes... where they were cultivated... 5,000 years ago... potatoes were the world's first... the Incas carried their harvested potatoes... after the sun came up... the water out of them by stepping on them. This process was repeated for four or five days... stored them in pots. The Indians...
PRACTICE 3, p. 86
1. a. cooking
   b. if I cooked
2. a. taking
   b. if we took
3. a. if I opened
   b. opening
4. a. joining
   b. if we joined
5. a. writing
   b. if I wrote

PRACTICE 4, p. 86
1. closing
2. if I closed
3. taking
4. if I went
5. leaving
6. cooking
7. if I made
8. finishing
9. if I used
10. recommending

PRACTICE 5, p. 87

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Necessity</th>
<th>Lack of Necessity</th>
<th>Prohibition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 6, p. 88
1. had to be
2. had to memorize
3. had to cancel . . . had
4. did you have to call
5. had to get
6. had to fasten

PRACTICE 7, p. 88
1. a 6. a
2. b 7. c
3. a 8. a
4. c 9. c
5. a 10. b

PRACTICE 8, p. 89
1. doesn’t have to
2. had to
3. don’t have to
4. had to
5. had to
6. do . . . have to
7. had to . . . didn’t have to
8. do not have to
9. has to
10. have to

PRACTICE 9, p. 89
1. b 5. b
2. a 6. a
3. a 7. a
4. b 8. b

PRACTICE 10, p. 89
1. b
2. a
3. b, c
4. a
5. All are correct.
6. a

PRACTICE 11, p. 90
1. c 5. b
2. g 6. f
3. c 7. d
4. h 8. a

PRACTICE 12, p. 91
1. should have taken
2. should have turned
3. shouldn’t have watched
4. should have visited
5. should have bought
6. should have ordered
7. shouldn’t have come . . . should have stayed
8. shouldn’t have changed . . . should have kept

PRACTICE 13, p. 91
1. should travel
2. should have gone
3. should paint . . . should be
4. shouldn’t have painted
5. shouldn’t have eaten
6. shouldn’t drink . . . should drink
7. shouldn’t have killed
8. should make

PRACTICE 14, p. 92
1. is supposed to arrive
2. am supposed to go
3. is supposed to be
4. was supposed to arrive
5. were supposed to come over
6. is supposed to run

PRACTICE 15, p. 93
1. yes 6. no
2. yes 7. yes
3. no 8. yes
4. yes 9. no
5. yes 10. no

PRACTICE 16, p. 93
1. d 6. e
2. g 7. f
3. a 8. c
4. j 9. i
5. b 10. h

PRACTICE 17, p. 93
1. Psychologist: could . . . could
   Patient: should
2. Carl: could . . . could
   Waiter: should
   Carl: should
3. Mary: could . . . could
   Bob: should . . . should

PRACTICE 18, p. 94
Answers may vary.
1. can speak
2. can you help
3. don’t have to come
CHAPTER 10: MODALS, PART 2

PRACTICE 1, p. 95

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>100%</th>
<th>About 95%</th>
<th>About 50% or less</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 2, p. 95

1. a. must
2. b. could
3. b. may...may
4. a. must
5. b. may
6. a. must
7. b. may
8. b. may be
9. b. could be
10. a. am
11. b. must be
12. b. is

PRACTICE 3, p. 96

1. f. must not like
2. a. can't be him
3. c. may not be
4. d. may not speak
5. b. can't be true
6. e. must not get

PRACTICE 4, p. 97

1. b
2. a
3. b
4. a
5. a
6. b

PRACTICE 5, p. 98

1. must not have remembered
2. couldn't have been
3. may / might not have left
4. must not have heard
5. may / might not have had
6. couldn't have happened

PRACTICE 6, p. 98

1. must have driven
2. must have been / must be
3. must not have known
4. must be
5. must have left
6. must have gone
7. must need
8. must have hurt

PRACTICE 7, p. 99

1. a
2. a
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. a

PRACTICE 8, p. 100

1. e
2. j
3. a
4. f
5. b
6. d
7. i
8. c
9. h
10. g

PRACTICE 9, page 100

1. will
2. should
3. will
4. should
5. will
6. should
7. must
8. must

PRACTICE 10, p. 101

Answers may vary:
1. could be working
2. should be flying
3. might be sleeping
4. must be kidding
5. must have been kidding
6. might be hiking
7. may not be dating

PRACTICE 11, p. 102

1. c
2. c
3. b
4. b
5. c
6. c
7. b
8. c
9. b
10. b

PRACTICE 12, p. 103

Answers may vary:
1. a. It should arrive soon.
   b. It may / might / could have taken off late.
   c. We should have called the airport.

2. a. It may be for me.
   b. It's for me.
   c. It can't be for me.

3. a. He should have responded.
   b. He may not have gotten it.
   c. He must not have gotten it.
   d. He couldn't have gotten it.

4. a. The dishwasher may / might / could be leaking.
   b. It can't be the dishwasher.
   c. A pipe must be broken.
   d. You should call a plumber.
   e. You don't have to call a plumber.
PRACTICE 13, p. 103
1. can’t
2. couldn’t
3. can
4. couldn’t
5. couldn’t
6. could... can’t

PRACTICE 14, p. 104
1. would fall... would throw
2. would always yell... would come
3. would always bring
4. would always wipe
5. would stay... would sleep
6. would tell... would listen

PRACTICE 15, p. 104
1. would rather not say
2. would rather have gone
3. would rather have studied
4. would rather not eat
5. would rather have
6. would rather be sailing

PRACTICE 16, p. 105
1. have to get
2. should be able to complete
3. won’t have to stand
4. will you be able to leave
5. am not going to be able to graduate
6. must not have been able to get

CHAPTER 11: THE PASSIVE

PRACTICE 1, p. 106
1. are
2. is being
3. has been
4. was
5. was being
6. had been
7. will be
8. is going to be
9. will have been
10. has been
11. was
12. are being
13. will be
14. had been
15. will have been
16. are
17. is going to be
18. were being

PRACTICE 2, p. 107
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Passive Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Henry</td>
<td>visited</td>
<td>bill</td>
<td>The bill will be paid by Al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P The park</td>
<td>was visited</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Olga</td>
<td>was reading</td>
<td>towels</td>
<td>Towels are supplied by the hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Philippe</td>
<td>has read</td>
<td>my error</td>
<td>My error was noticed by everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P Bambi</td>
<td>has been read</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Whales</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P Whales</td>
<td>won’t be known</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>The story was told by an old man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P The answer</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 3, p. 107
1. is written
2. is being written
3. has been written
4. was written
5. was being written
6. had been written
7. will be written
8. is going to be written
9. will have been written
10. Was... written
11. Will... be written
12. Has... been written

PRACTICE 4, p. 107
Part I.
1. was painted by Picasso
2. are flown by experienced pilots
3. is going to be sung by a famous singer
4. has been accepted by Yale University
5. will be examined by the doctor
6. is being questioned by the defense attorney
7. was bitten by a dog
8. was being fed by the mother bird
9. won’t be persuaded by his words
10. wasn’t painted by me... painted by Laura
11. owned by Mrs. Crane
12. weren’t signed by me
Part II.
13. is going to clean my teeth
14. Did... send that email
15. don’t celebrate the Fourth of July
16. Has... sold your house yet
17. haven’t caught the thief
18. are cleaning the carpets

PRACTICE 5, p. 109
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Passive Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will pay</td>
<td>bill</td>
<td>The bill will be paid by Al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will arrive</td>
<td>towels</td>
<td>Towels are supplied by the hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen</td>
<td>error</td>
<td>My error was noticed by everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noticed</td>
<td>if</td>
<td>I was not surprised by the news.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>Were you surprised by the news?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t surprise</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did... surprise</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do... exist</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>died</td>
<td>story</td>
<td>The story was told by an old man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>told</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn’t rained</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 6, p. 109
1. b. will be notified
2. b. didn’t remember
3. c. was built
4. a. is visited
5. b. don’t agree
6. c. will be invaded

PRACTICE 7, p. 110
1. b
2. a
3. a

PRACTICE 8, p. 110
1. was invented...told
2. was established...was given...still attend
3. is known...is related...live...became...were killed...were saved
4. originated...like...gives...was valued...was used...were treated...is believed

PRACTICE 9, p. 111
1. The chefs prepared the food.
2. The food was prepared yesterday.
3. The rain stopped.
4. A rainbow appeared in the sky.
5. The documents were sent to you yesterday.
6. My lawyer sent the documents to me.
7. The winner of the election was announced on TV.
8. I didn’t agree with you about this.
9. What happened yesterday?
10. Something wonderful happened to me.
11. The trees died of a disease.
12. The trees were killed by a disease.
13. A disease killed the trees.
14. I was accepted at the University of Chicago.
15. I was recommended for a scholarship.

PRACTICE 10, p. 112
1. can’t be
2. should be washed
3. should have been washed
4. to be finished
5. must have been built
6. have to be paid...must be sent
7. be permitted
8. ought to be painted

PRACTICE 11, p. 112
1. should be made
2. should make
3. should have been made
4. couldn’t talk
5. couldn’t have talked
6. must be registered
7. must register
8. has to be paid...had better not send
9. must have been
10. may have been

PRACTICE 12, p. 113
1. g. locked
2. e. closed
3. a. finished
4. h. broken
5. b. lost
6. c. crowded
7. f. gone
8. d. turned on

PRACTICE 13, p. 113
1. is interested in
2. depends on
3. is married to
4. is scared of
5. bores
6. are made of
7. is composed of
8. is located in
9. are doing

PRACTICE 14, p. 113
1. in
2. for
3. about
4. in
5. to
6. of
7. with
8. with
9. with
10. with
11. of
12. to

PRACTICE 15, p. 114
1. was-arrived
2. arrived
3. was injured
4. injured
5. was-visited
6. visited
7. was-hunted
8. mentioned
9. might have been
10. are
died
11. happened
12. fixed
13. Will be fixed the
14. Will the refrigerator be
15. fixed

PRACTICE 16, p. 114
1. crowded
2. hungry
3. a. fat
4. scared
5. d. hurt
6. crowded
7. a. invited
8. a. fat
9. b. hurt
10. stopped

PRACTICE 17, p. 115
1. excited
2. exciting
3. shocking
4. shocked
5. exhausting...exhausted
6. boring...bored
7. confused...confusing
8. interesting
9. interested
10. thrilling...thrilled

PRACTICE 18, p. 115
1. a. fascinating
2. a. exhausting
3. a. disappointed

PRACTICE 19, p. 115
1. a, d
2. a, b
3. b, c
>PRACTICE 20, p. 116
1. frustrating
2. grown . . . irritating
3. washing
4. writing
5. written
6. depressing . . . depressed
7. entertaining
8. known . . . spilt
9. comforting . . . Barking
10. inspiring . . . United . . . divided

CHAPTER 12: NOUN CLAUSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 117

Noun Clauses
1. what he said
2. None
3. what happened
4. None
5. why Dora is calling me
6. who that man is
7. where Hank lives
8. None
9. What they are doing
10. None
11. what I should say
12. None

PRACTICE 2, p. 117
1. do they want
2. what they want
3. does Stacy live
4. where Stacy lives
5. what Carl likes
6. does Carl like
7. is Lina going
8. where Lina is going

PRACTICE 3, p. 118
1. Where does Lee live? Does he live downtown?
2. I don’t know where he lives.
3. What does Sandra want? Do you know?
4. Do you know what Sandra wants?
5. What Yoko knows is important to us.
6. We talked about what Yoko knows.
7. What do you think? Did you tell your professor what you think?
9. Where is the bus stop? Do you know where the bus stop is?
10. What did he report? What he reported is important.

PRACTICE 4, p. 118
1. how far it is
2. what that is on the table
3. how much it cost
4. What he said
5. when they are leaving
6. which road we should take
7. who called

PRACTICE 5, p. 118
1. Who is that man?
   Noun clause: who that man is.
2. Where does George live?
   Noun clause: where George lives.
3. What did Ann buy?
   Noun clause: what Ann bought?
4. How far is it to Denver from here?
   Noun clause: how far it is to Denver from here.
5. Why was Jack late for class?
   Noun clause: why Jack was late for class.
6. Whose pen is that?
   Noun clause: whose pen that is.
7. Who did Alex see at the meeting?
   Noun clause: who Alex saw at the meeting.
8. Who saw Ms. Frost at the meeting?
   Noun clause: who saw Ms. Frost at the meeting.
9. Which book does Alice like best?
   Noun clause: which book Alice likes best.
10. What time is the plane supposed to land?
   Noun clause: what time the plane is supposed to land.

PRACTICE 6, p. 119
1. b
2. c
3. e
4. a
5. f
6. d
7. g, h

PRACTICE 7, p. 120
1. a, b, c, d, f
2. a, b
3. b, c

PRACTICE 8, p. 120
1. how much this book costs?
2. when Flight 62 is expected?
3. where the nearest phone is?
4. if this word is spelled correctly?
5. what time it is?
6. if this information is correct?
7. how much it costs to fly from Toronto to London?
8. where the bus station is?
9. whose pen this is?
10. if this bus goes downtown?

PRACTICE 9, p. 121
1. g
2. a
3. e
4. c
5. f
6. b
7. d
8. h
PRACTICE 10, p. 121
1. proud
2. angry
3. disappointed
4. aware
5. lucky
6. confident
7. worried... relieved

PRACTICE 11, p. 122
1. a. It is surprising that...
   b. ... nobody stopped to help Sam... is surprising
2. a. It is unfortunate that...
   b. That people in modern cities are... is unfortunate
3. a. It is still true that people...
   b. That people in my village... help... is still true.
4. a. It is undeniably true that...
   b. That people need each other... is undeniably true
5. a. It seems strange to... that people in cities live
   b. The fact that people in cities... don't know their neighbors

PRACTICE 12, p. 122
1. Millie said, “There’s an important meeting at 3:00 o’clock today.”
2. “There’s an important meeting at 3:00 o’clock today,” she said.
3. “There is,” said Millie, “an important meeting at 3:00 o’clock today.”
4. “There is an important meeting today. It's about the new rules,” said Millie.
5. “Where is the meeting?” Carl asked.
6. Robert replied, “It’s in the conference room.”
7. “How long will it last?” asked Ali.
8. “I don’t know how long it will last,” replied Millie.
9. “I’ll be a little late,” said Robert, “I have another meeting until 3:00 P.M. today.”
10. “Who is speaking at the meeting?” asked Robert.
11. “I am not sure who is speaking,” said Millie, “but you’d better be there. Everybody is supposed to be there.”

PRACTICE 13, p. 123
(1) “You are so slow, Mr. Turtle,” said the rabbit, “and I am very fast.”
(2) “I don’t know about that,” said the turtle. “Let’s have a race. We will run for five miles and see who wins.”
(3) “I agree,” said the rabbit.
(4) “I am so far ahead of the turtle. I am going to take a little nap right here. It is going to take a long time before that turtle can catch up with me.”
(5) The turtle looked back at the rabbit and exclaimed, “Slow but steady wins the race. Who’s laughing now, Mr. Rabbit?”

PRACTICE 14, p. 123
1. was
2. needed
3. was having
4. had finished
5. had finished
6. would arrive
7. was going to be
8. could solve
9. might come
10. might come
11. had to leave
12. had to leave
13. should go
14. to stay

PRACTICE 15, p. 124
1. if/whether she was planning
2. what time the movie begins
3. if/whether we could still get
4. how he can help
5. if/whether he could help
6. when the final decision would be made
7. where she had been
8. what Kim’s native language is
9. if/whether I was doing
10. what time he had
11. who she should give this message
12. why I hadn’t called

PRACTICE 16, p. 125
Conversation 1.
1. was going
2. was
3. asked
4. would like
5. had
6. had
7. had
8. had
9. had
10. had
11. had
12. had
13. had
14. had
15. had
16. was

Conversation 2.
1. asked
2. was
3. told
4. was
5. said
6. was
7. had heard
8. had
9. was

PRACTICE 17, p. 126
1. whenever
2. wherever
3. whatever
4. however
5. whichever
6. whomever
7. whichever
8. whoever
9. whatever
10. wherever

CHAPTER 13: ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 127
1. person who fixes computers
2. man who lives on a boat
3. woman who speaks four languages
4. people who are bilingual in the office
5. office that is in an old building
6. building which we work in
7. trees that were over two hundred years old
8. trees which were nearby
9. truck that had broken down
10. truck which caused the problem

PRACTICE 2, p. 127
1. a, b
2. a, b
3. c, d
4. a, b
5. b, c
6. b, c
Adjective Clauses

1. man
2. woman
3. people
4. book
5. program
6. house
7. cake
8. book

that I met last night
that Sandro is going to marry
whom we invited
which I just read
that Jason installed
we built in 1987
I left on the table
my professor wrote

His refers to doctor.
I know a skin doctor whose name is Dr. Skinner.

Their refers to people.
The people whose home we visited were very hospitable.

Her refers to Mrs. Lake.
Mrs. Lake is the teacher whose class I enjoy the most.

Their refers to parents.
The teacher asked the parents whose children were failing to confer with her.

1. b, c
2. a, c

1. a, b
2. a, c
3. c
4. a, c

1. a where I grew up
2. a I lived in
3. a where I lived
4. a where I played

b. in which I grew up
b. where I lived
b. on which I lived
b. in which I played

1. a that I go
2. b. that I play tennis

b. where I go
b. on which I lived
b. in which I played

1. a, d
2. b
3. c, d
4. a, b, c
5. d
6. b, c
7. e
8. d

1. c
2. h
3. a
4. f
5. g
6. b
7. e
8. d

1. His refers to man.
   Do you know the man whose car is parked over there?
PRACTICE 17, p. 134
1. no
2. yes I made an appointment with Dr. Raven, who is an expert on eye disorders.
3. yes Bogota, which is the capital of Columbia, is a cosmopolitan city.
4. no
5. yes South Beach, which is clean, pleasant, and fun, is known as a party town.
6. yes The name Bogota comes from the word Bacata, which was the Indian name for the site.
7. no
8. yes Belinda Jones, who wrote a touching essay...
9. yes Nairobi, which is near several fascinating game reserves, ...
10. no
11. no
12. no
13. no
14. yes A typhoon, which is a violent tropical storm, can cause ...
15. no
16. yes Hurricane Katrina, which destroyed parts of New Orleans, occurred in 2005.

PRACTICE 18, p. 135
1. a 3. a 5. b 7. b
2. b 4. b 6. a 8. a

PRACTICE 19, p. 136
1. I received two job offers, neither of which I accepted.
2. I have three brothers, two of whom are professional athletes.
3. Jerry is engaged in several business ventures, only one of which is profitable.
4. The two women, both of whom began their studies at age 40, have almost completed law school.
5. Eric is proud of his success, much of which has been due to hard work, but some of which has been due to good luck.
6. We ordered an extra-large pizza, half of which contained meat and half of which didn’t.
7. The scientist won the Nobel Prize for his groundbreaking work, most of which was on genomes.
8. The audience gave a tremendous ovation to the Nobel prize winners, most of whom were scientists.

PRACTICE 20, p. 136
1. Mike was accepted at the state university, which is surprising.
2. Mike did not do well in high school, which is unfortunate.
3. The university accepts a few students each year with a low grade-point average, which is lucky for Mike.
4. The university hopes to motivate these low-performing students, which is a fine idea.
5. Mike might actually be a college graduate one day, which would be a miracle!

PRACTICE 21, p. 137
1. who is wearing a green hat 2. who is in charge of this department 3. which was painted by Picasso

PRACTICE 22, p. 137
1. Brasilia, officially inaugurated in 1960, is the capital of Brazil. It was officially inaugurated in 1960.
2. Rio de Janeiro, the second largest city in Brazil, was used to be its capital. It’s the second largest city in Brazil.
3. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are spoken in Helsinki, the capital of Finland. It’s the capital of Finland.
4. In Canada, you see signs, written in both English and French. They are written in both English and French.
5. Libya, a country in North Africa, is a leading producer of oil. It’s a country in North Africa.
6. Simon Bolivar, a great South American general, led the fight for independence in the nineteenth century. He was a great South American general.
7. Five South American countries, liberated by Bolivar, are Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador, Panama, and Peru. They were liberated by Bolivar.
8. We need someone, holding a degree in electrical engineering, to design this project. He or she holds a degree in electrical engineering.
9. The project being built in Beijing will be finished next year. It is being built in Beijing.
10. A lot of new buildings were constructed in Beijing in 2008, the site of the summer Olympics that year.

PRACTICE 23, p. 138
Sample answers:
1. ... a lot of people waiting in ...
2. Students who are living on ... OR Students living on ...
3. ... the librarian who sits ... OR the librarian sitting ...
4. ... Anna whose birthday ...
5. ... Sapporo, which is ...
6. Patrick, who is my oldest brother, is married and has one child.
7. The person sitting next to me is someone I’ve never met.
8. ... is a small city located on ...
9. person to whom I wanted ...
10. There are eighty students from all over the world studying English at this school.
11. The people who we met on our trip last May ...
12. Dianne Baxter, who used to teach Spanish, has organized ...
13. ... since I came here, some of whom are from my country.
14. People who can speak English ...
15. Grandpa is getting married again, which is a big surprise.
CHAPTER 14: GERUNDS AND INFinitives, Part 1

PRACTICE 1, p. 139

Gerunds:
1. Driving
2. driving
3. None

Gerunds:
4. singing
5. Singing
6. None

PRACTICE 2, p. 139

1. taking
2. going
3. improving
4. flying
5. lowering
6. buying
7. drinking
8. hearing

PRACTICE 3, p. 140

Part I. Part II.
1. in 6. of
2. of 7. for
3. of 8. to
4. for 9. to
5. from 10. of

PRACTICE 4, p. 140

1. b 6. c
2. b 7. a
3. c 8. c
4. c 9. c
5. a 10. b

PRACTICE 5, p. 141

1. about leaving 6. for not wanting
2. for being 7. for washing ... drying
3. from completing 8. of stealing
4. about having 9. to eating ... sleeping
5. of studying 10. for lending

PRACTICE 6, p. 141

1. about taking
2. in buying
3. to living
4. for not answering
5. about failing
6. about changing
7. for cleaning
8. from arriving
9. for writing
10. in saving ... from wasting

PRACTICE 7, p. 142

1. playing 5. arguing
2. smoking 6. selling
3. driving 7. having
4. paying 8. reading

PRACTICE 8, p. 142

Part I.
1. go hiking
2. go sailing
3. go skiing

Part II.
4. went birdwatching
5. went canoeing

PRACTICE 9, p. 143

1. playing 4. looking
2. lying 5. doing
3. locating 6. watching

PRACTICE 10, p. 144

1. a, c
2. a
3. a, c
4. c
5. a
6. a, c

PRACTICE 11, p. 144

1. to work 8. me to work
2. me to work 9. me to work
3. to work 10. to work / me to work
4. to work / me to work 11. to work / me to work
5. to work 12. to work
6. to work 13. to work / me to work
7. to work 14. me to work

PRACTICE 12, p. 144

1. permitted me to leave early
2. asked me to give this note to Sue
3. advised me to take Biology 109
4. ordered me to pay a fine
5. warned Greg to keep his eyes on his own paper
6. warned Greg not to look at his neighbor’s paper
7. told the children to be quiet
8. allowed me to stay up late on Saturday night
9. encouraged the students to speak slowly and clearly
10. expects the students to come to class on time

PRACTICE 13, p. 145

1. The teacher allowed the children to go outside and play.
   The children were allowed to go outside and play.
2. The doctor warned my father not to eat high-cholesterol foods.
   My father was warned not to eat high-cholesterol foods.
3. The sergeant ordered the soldiers to march in formation.
   The soldiers were ordered to march in formation.
4. The soccer coach encouraged the girls to play hard and win.
   The girls were encouraged to play hard and win.
5. Mary reminded her roommate to wake her up at 7:00.
   Mary’s roommate was reminded to wake her up at 7:00.
6. The police officer permitted the drivers in our lane of traffic to go ahead.
   The drivers in our lane of traffic were permitted to go ahead.
7. The letter told me to complete this form by November 15th.
   I was told to complete this form by November 15th.
PRACTICE 14, p. 145
1. a
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. b
6. b

PRACTICE 15, p. 146
1. living
2. to be
3. to show
4. making
5. to be
6. being
7. humming
8. exercising
9. me to exercise
10. to exercise
11. to exercise
12. my friend to consult
13. to consult
14. to recommend

PRACTICE 16, p. 147
Part I.
1. to stay
2. to stay
3. him to stay
4. him to stay
5. staying
6. him to stay
7. to stay

Part II.
1. traveling
2. traveling
3. to travel
4. traveling
5. to travel
6. traveling
7. traveling
8. traveling
9. traveling
10. traveling

Part III.
1. working
2. to work
3. to work
4. to work
5. to work
6. working
7. him to work
8. to work
9. to work
10. working

PRACTICE 17, p. 147
1. to turn
2. meeting
3. to stop
4. seeing
5. telling
6. to talk
7. speaking
8. buying
9. to tell
10. to learn

PRACTICE 18, p. 148
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. a

PRACTICE 19, p. 148
1. a, b
2. a
3. a, b
4. a
5. a, b
6. a, b
7. a, b
8. b
9. b
10. a, b

PRACTICE 20, p. 149
1. It's
2. is
3. is not
4. Is it
5. Going
6. It's
7. is
8. to jump
9. To see

PRACTICE 21, p. 149
1. a, b, d, g, h, k, l
2. a, d, f, h, j, k, l

PRACTICE 22, p. 150
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. a
6. a
7. b
8. b
9. a
10. a

PRACTICE 23, p. 151
1. camping
2. to operate
3. getting
4. applying
5. to turn
6. sleeping
7. reading
8. to end
9. using . . . speaking
10. watching
11. running

PRACTICE 24, p. 152
1. . . . enjoy watching . . .
2. . . . spend time playing . . .
3. . . . important to keep . . .
4. . . . avoid becoming . . . by exercising
5. Playing word games is . . .
6. In addition, it is . . .
7. . . . people to eat . . .
8. . . . try to eat . . .
9. . . . interested in learning . . .
10. . . . wants to live . . .
11. . . . excited about attending . . .
12. . . . struggling to learn . . .
13. . . . hard time pronouncing . . .
14. He keeps on studying and practicing.
15. . . . in bed listening to . . .
16. . . . dreams about / of traveling . . .

CHAPTER 15: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2

PRACTICE 1, p. 153
1. for to
2. Correct.
3. Correct.
5. for to
6. to for
7. for see to see
8. Correct.
PRACTICE 2, p. 153
1. a
2. a, b
3. a, b
4. a, b
5. a
6. a
7. a, b
8. a, b
9. a, b

PRACTICE 3, p. 154
1. d
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. f
6. e

PRACTICE 4, p. 154
1. very
2. too
3. too
4. too
5. very

PRACTICE 5, p. 155
1. very ... enough
2. too
3. enough
4. very ... enough
5. very

PRACTICE 6, p. 155
1. to be accepted
2. to be given
3. to be picked
4. being petted

PRACTICE 7, p. 155
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. a
6. b
7. a
8. b

PRACTICE 8, p. 156
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. a
6. b
7. b
8. b

PRACTICE 9, p. 156
1. to be called
2. being called
3. to be elected
4. to be elected

PRACTICE 10, p. 157
1. a, c, d
2. a, c, d
3. a, c, d
4. a, c, d
5. a, c
6. b, c

PRACTICE 11, p. 157
1. practice / practicing
2. pass / passing
3. cry / crying
4. leave
5. win
6. arrive
7. rocking / rock
8. doing / do
9. talking / talk
10. reaching / reach

PRACTICE 12, p. 158
1. a
2. b
3. c
4. a, b
5. c
6. a
7. c
8. a

PRACTICE 13, p. 158
1. stand
2. fixed
3. beat
4. to stop
5. to clean
6. look
7. call
8. made... put

PRACTICE 14, p. 159
1. b
2. b, c
3. c
4. b
5. a
6. c
7. b, c
8. b
9. a

PRACTICE 15, p. 159
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. c
5. c
6. d
7. d
8. b
9. a
10. b

PRACTICE 16, p. 160
1. to buy
2. opening
3. being asked
4. having
5. to wear... dressing
6. jumping... falling
7. being taken
8. to stop delivering... to fill
9. gazing... to cheer
10. having

PRACTICE 17, p. 161
1. b
2. b
3. b
4. b
5. a
6. b
7. a
8. a
9. a
10. b
11. b
CHAPTER 16: COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

PRACTICE 1, p. 163
1. b  5. c  
2. c  6. c  
3. c  7. a  
4. b  8. b  

PRACTICE 2, p. 163
1. Conjunction: and sweet and fresh a. adjective  
2. Conjunction: and apples and pears b. noun  
3. Conjunction: and washed and dried c. verb  
4. Conjunction: and washing and drying c. verb  
5. Conjunction: and happily and quickly d. adverb  
6. Conjunction: but delicious but expensive a. adjective  
7. Conjunction: and Apples, pears, and bananas b. noun  
8. Conjunction: or apple or a banana b. noun  
9. Conjunction: and red, ripe, and juicy a. adjective  

PRACTICE 3, p. 164
1. c  
2. e  
3. a  
4. g  
5. f  
6. d  
7. h  
8. b  

PRACTICE 4, p. 165
1. None.  
2. calm, quiet, and serene.  
3. the ball, and they ran...  
4. kicking, throwing, and running.  
5. None.  
6. sit down, be quiet, and open...  
7. None.  
8. None.  
9. two cups of coffee, three glasses of water, one glass of orange juice, and three orders of eggs  
10. strict, but fair OR strict but fair  

PRACTICE 5, p. 165
1. I he is honest, and honesty  
2. C  
3. I quiet quietly  
4. C  
5. C  
6. I to-tour touring  
7. C  
8. I summarizing summarize  
9. C  
10. C  
11. I they require  
12. C  

PRACTICE 6, p. 166
1. knows  
2. know  
3. knows  
4. know  
5. know  
6. wants  
7. like  
8. has  
9. agrees  
10. are  
11. realizes  
12. are  

PRACTICE 7, p. 166
1. Both Mary and her parents drink coffee. Neither Mary nor her parents drink coffee.  
2. Either John or Henry will do the work. Neither John nor Henry will do the work.  
3. Not only our school but also the restaurants in town recycle trash. Both our school and the restaurants in town recycle trash.  

PRACTICE 8, p. 166
Part I.
1. both her mother and her father  
2. both the nurses and the doctor arrive  
3. both bananas and mangoes arrived  
4. both whales and dolphins are  

Part II.
5. exports not only coffee but also oil  
6. Not only Air Greenland but also Icelandair fly  
7. not only a green jacket but also green pants  
8. not only attended Harvard University but also Harvard Law School.  

Part III.
9. Either Ricky or Paula knows  
10. either to Mexico or Costa Rica  
11. Either Jim or Taka's parents will take her  
12. She's buying either salmon or tuna
Part IV:
13. neither Fred nor his children
14. neither she nor her children have
15. Luis has neither a family nor friends
16. neither hot nor cold

PRACTICE 9, p. 167
1. stopped. The birds . . .
2. stopped, and the birds .
3. stopped, . . . sang, . . .
4. street. His mother . . .
5. street, and his mother . .
6. street. His mother . . .
7. coffee, and
8. coffee. It . . .
9. ice cream, but . . .

PRACTICE 10, p. 168
My brother is visiting me for a couple of days. We spent yesterday together in the city, and we had a really good time.

First I took him to the waterfront. We went to the aquarium. We saw fearsome sharks, some wonderfully funny marine mammals, and all kinds of tropical fish. After the aquarium, we went downtown to a big mall and went shopping.

I had trouble thinking of a place to take him for lunch because he’s a strict vegetarian, but I remembered a restaurant that has vegan food. We went there, and we had a wonderful lunch of fresh vegetables and whole grains. I’m not a vegetarian, but I must say that I really enjoyed the meal.

In the afternoon, it started raining. We decided to go to a movie. It was pretty good but had too much violence for me. I felt tense when we left the theater. I prefer comedies or dramas. My brother loved the movie.

We ended the day with a delicious home-cooked meal and some good conversation in my living room. It was an excellent day. I like spending time with my brother.

PRACTICE 11, p. 168
1. John will call either Mary or Bob.
2. Sue saw not only the mouse but also the cat.
3. Both my mother and father talked to the teacher.
4. . . . is going . . .
5. I enjoy reading not only novels but also magazines.
6. Both smallpox and malaria are dangerous diseases.
7. . . . compact car. She is saving . . .
8. . . . snow tonight. The roads . . .
9. . . . we attended an opera, ate at marvelous restaurants, and visited . . .

PRACTICE 12, p. 169
Across
3. but
4. only
6. Either
7. nor

Down
1. Neither
2. Both
3. and

CHAPTER 17: ADVERB CLAUSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 170
Adverb Clauses
1. as she was leaving the store
2. before we have breakfast
3. Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week
4. Because I already had my boarding pass
5. if the workplace is made pleasant
6. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years
7. as soon as she receives them
8. once he becomes familiar with the new computer program

PRACTICE 2, p. 170
1. . . . calm, Tom . . .
2. . . . calm, Tom . . .
3. . . . calm, He . . .
4. . . . fishing, the lake was calm. He . . .
5. . . . calm, so Tom went fishing. He . . .
6. . . . quiet, Tom . . .
7. . . . calm, quiet, and clear . . .
8. . . . poor, he . . .
9. . . . poor, He . . .
10. Microscopes, automobile dashboards, and cameras . . . people to use. They are designed . . . people. When “lefties” use these items, . . .

PRACTICE 3, p. 171
1. b 7. b
2. c 8. c
3. d 9. b
4. c 10. a
5. c 11. d
6. d 12. a

PRACTICE 4, p. 171
1. 1, 2 5. 2, 1
2. 2, 1 6. 1, 2
3. 1, 2 7. S
4. 2, 1 8. 1, 2

PRACTICE 5, p. 172
1. d 6. j
2. i 7. c
3. a 8. e
4. f 9. b
5. h 10. g

PRACTICE 6, p. 172
1. My registration was cancelled because I didn’t pay the registration fee on time.
2. I’m late because there was lot of traffic.
3. Because he was on a good weight-loss diet, Harry lost 35 pounds.
4. Since Mario’s is closed on Sundays, we can’t have lunch there tomorrow.
5. Now that Jack has a car, he drives to work.
6. Natalie should find another job since she is very unhappy in this job.
7. David will lead us because he knows the way.
8. Frank is looking for a job in a law office now that he has graduated from law school.
PRACTICE 7, p. 173
1. even though  5. Because
2. because  6. Even though
3. Because  7. even though
4. Even though  8. because

PRACTICE 8, p. 173
1. even though  5. even though
2. because  6. because
3. Because  7. because
4. Even though  8. even though

PRACTICE 9, p. 174
1. c
2. a
3. b
4. b
5. a
6. c
7. b
8. a

PRACTICE 10, p. 175
1. if it will rain tomorrow
2. If my car doesn’t start tomorrow morning
3. If I have any free time during my work day
4. if I will have some free time tomorrow
5. If we don’t leave within the next ten minutes, we are late
6. If we will leave within the next ten minutes
7. if the population will continue to grow at the present rate

PRACTICE 11, p. 175
1. a. so  b. does
   Meaning: If Tom lives near you
2. a. so  b. are
   Meaning: If you are a resident of Springfield
3. a. not  b. don’t
   Meaning: If you don’t have enough money
4. a. so  b. are
   Meaning: If you are going to do the laundry
5. a. so  b. did
   Meaning: If I left the water running in the sink

PRACTICE 12, p. 176
1. doesn’t approve . . . approves
2. can afford . . . can’t afford
3. is raining . . . isn’t raining
4. don’t understand . . . understand
5. don’t want to . . . whether you want to

PRACTICE 13, p. 176
1. unless you can stand the heat
2. unless it is broken
3. unless you cooperate with your opponents

PRACTICE 14, p. 177
1. he wants something
2. she runs out of clean clothes
3. the temperature outside goes below 50 degrees F
4. it is absolutely necessary to get somewhere quickly
5. will you get into Hailey College
6. could I afford a big house like that

PRACTICE 15, p. 177
1. pass  7. even if
2. not going to go  8. whether
3. rains  9. won’t
4. in case  10. don’t wake
5. only if  11. if
6. always eat  12. can we

PRACTICE 16, p. 178
1. h  5. b
2. g  6. d
3. a  7. e
4. f  8. c

PRACTICE 17, p. 178
1. b  6. c
2. b  7. d
3. d  8. b
4. a  9. c
5. b  10. a

CHAPTER 18: REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

PRACTICE 1, p. 180
1. While they were riding in the car for six hours
2. While riding in the car for six hours
3. Before taking our long car trip across the country
4. While watching the exciting basketball game on TV
5. While they were watching the exciting basketball game on TV
6. Before leaving for the airport
7. while we were walking on the beach this afternoon
8. while walking on the beach this afternoon
9. While I was trying to get a taxi
10. Before getting into a taxi

PRACTICE 2, p. 180
Grammatically correct items:
2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10

PRACTICE 3, p. 181
1. he-opened
2. I-left
3. I-had-met
4. I-searched
5. he-was-herding
6. they-marched
7. she-was-flying
8. they-imported

opening
leaving
meeting / having met
searching
herding
marching
flying
importing
PRACTICE 4, p. 181
1. a. leaving
   b. left
2. a. invented / had invented
   b. inventing / having invented
3. a. working
   b. was working
4. a. flies
   b. flying
5. a. studied
   b. studying
6. a. learning
   b. learned
7. a. taking
   b. take
8. a. was driving
   b. driving

PRACTICE 5, p. 182
Subjects
1. Adv. clause: Sam   Main clause: car   (no change)
2. Adv. clause: Sam   Main clause: he
   While driving to work, Sam had a flat tire.
3. Adv. clause: Nick   Main clause: son   (no change)
4. Adv. clause: Nick   Main clause: he
   Before leaving on his trip, Nick gave his itinerary to his secretary.
5. Adv. clause: Tom   Main clause: he
   After working in the garden all afternoon, Tom took a shower and then . . .
6. Adv. clause: Sunita   Main clause: they   (no change)
7. Adv. clause: a friend   Main clause: American   (no change)
8. Adv. clause: she   Main clause: Emily
   Emily always straightens her desk before leaving the office at the end of the day.

PRACTICE 6, p. 183
Modifying Adverbial Phrases
1. Riding his bicycle to school
2. Being seven feet tall
3. Driving to work this morning
4. Running five miles on a very hot day
5. Having run for 26 miles in the marathon
6. Drinking a tall glass of soothing iced tea
7. Clapping loudly at the end of the game
8. Speaking with her guidance counselor
9. Knowing that I was going to miss the plane because of heavy traffic
10. Having missed my plane
11. Waiting for my plane

PRACTICE 7, p. 184
1. h
2. i
3. j
4. b
5. d
6. a
7. c
8. f
9. e
10. g

PRACTICE 8, p. 184
1. b, c
2. a, b, c
3. a, b
4. b, c
5. a, c
6. b, c
7. a, c

PRACTICE 9, p. 185
1. a. Upon receiving her acceptance letter for medical school, Sarah
   b. On receiving her acceptance letter for medical school, Sarah
2. a. Upon hearing the sad news,
   b. When she heard the sad news,
3. a. On looking at the accident victim,
   b. When they looked at the accident victim,

PRACTICE 10, p. 185
1. (d) arriving at the airport.
2. (c) reaching the other side of the lake
3. (c) discovering a burnt-out wire
4. (a) learning that the problem was not at all serious
5. (b) being told she got it

PRACTICE 11, p. 186
1. d
2. a
3. f
4. i
5. j
6. h
7. g
8. b
9. e
10. c

CHAPTER 19: CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION

PRACTICE 1, p. 187
1. b, c, f
2. a, d, e
3. a, c, e
4. b, d, f

PRACTICE 2, p. 187
1. because
2. because
3. due to / because of
4. because
5. due to / because of
6. because
7. because
8. due to / because of

26 ANSWER KEY Chapter 19
PRACTICE 3, p. 188
1. heavy traffic
2. there was heavy traffic
3. he is getting old
4. his age
5. she is afraid of heights.
6. her fear of heights
7. a cancellation
8. there was a cancellation today

PRACTICE 4, p. 188
1. ... headache,
2. No change
3. ... headache,
4. No change
5. ... headache. T
6. ... headache. She, therefore,...
7. ... headache. She..., therefore.
8. ... headache,...

PRACTICE 5, p. 188
Sentence 1.
1. a
2. b
3. c

Sentence 2.
1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b

PRACTICE 6, p. 189
1. a. I bought lemonade... didn't have any orange juice
   b. the store didn't have any orange juice, I bought lemonade
   c. The store didn't have any orange juice... I bought lemonade.
   d. The store didn't have any orange juice... I bought lemonade.
2. a. Mel has excellent grades. Therefore, he will go to a top university.
   b. Mel has excellent grades. He, therefore, will go to a top university.
   c. Mel has excellent grades. He will go to a top university, therefore.
   d. Mel has excellent grades, so he will go to a top university.
3. a. there had been no rain for several months, the crops died.
   b. There had been no rain for several months... the crops died.
   c. There had been no rain for several months. The crops, therefore, died.
   d. There had been no rain for several months, so the crops died.

PRACTICE 7, p. 190
Part I.
1. Because
2. Therefore,
3. because of
4. Therefore,
5. Therefore,
6. because of
7. Because... town,
8. Because of

Part II.
9. Due to
10. Since... eyesight,
11. ... Consequently,
12. ... heights. Consequently,
13. due to
14. ... Consequently,
15. Since

PRACTICE 8, p. 190
1. ... Therefore,
2. No change.
3. ... He simply ...
4. ... reservation,
5. ... Therefore, ...
6. ... orders,
7. No change.
8. ... The button ... years ago. The zipper ...
9. ... unique. No two zebras ...
10. No change.

PRACTICE 9, p. 191
Sentence 1.
a. Because she ate some bad food, Kim got sick.
b. Because of some bad food, Kim got sick.
c. Kim ate some bad food, so she got sick.
d. Due to some bad food, Kim got sick.

Sentence 2.
a. Adam had driven for thirteen hours. Therefore, he was exhausted.
b. Since Adam had driven for thirteen hours, he was exhausted.
c. Due to the fact that Adam had driven for thirteen hours, he was exhausted.
d. Adam had driven for thirteen hours, so he was exhausted.

PRACTICE 10, p. 191
1. such
2. so
3. so
4. such
5. such
6. so
7. so
8. such
9. so
10. so

PRACTICE 11, p. 192
1. It was such a nice day that we took a walk.
2. The weather was so hot that you could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
3. She talked so fast that I couldn't understand her.
4. It was such an expensive car that we couldn't afford it.
5. There were so few people at the meeting that it was canceled.
6. Ted was so worried about the exam that he couldn't fall asleep last night.
7. The tornado struck with such great force that it lifted automobiles off the ground.
8. Joe's handwriting is so illegible that I can't figure out what this sentence says.
9. David has so many girlfriends that he can't remember all of their names.
10. There were so many people at the meeting that there were not enough seats for everyone.
PRACTICE 12, p. 192
Sentences 1, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8 express purpose

PRACTICE 13, p. 193
1. d
2. i
3. a
4. f
5. j
6. c
7. e
8. g
9. h
10. b

PRACTICE 14, p. 193
1. 1 5 2
2. 2 6 2
3. 1 7 1
4. 2 8 2

PRACTICE 15, p. 193
1. Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.
2. Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment so that he wouldn’t forget to go.
3. Nancy is taking extra courses every semester so that she can graduate early.
4. Sue lowered the volume on the TV set so that she wouldn’t disturb her roommate.
5. Ed took some change from his pocket so that he could buy a newspaper.
6. I turned on the TV so that I could listen to the news while I was making dinner.
7. I turned off the phone so that I wouldn’t be interrupted while I was working.
8. It’s a good idea for you to learn keyboarding skills so that you’ll be able to use your computer more efficiently.
9. Lynn tied a string around her finger so that she wouldn’t forget to take her book back to the library.
10. The Parks Department has placed wastebaskets in convenient places in the park so that people won’t litter.

PRACTICE 16, p. 194
1. is
2. is
3. isn’t
4. is
5. is
6. isn’t
7. is
8. isn’t
9. isn’t
10. is

PRACTICE 17, p. 194
1. a. Even though
b. Despite
c. Despite
d. Although
e. Even though
2. a. In spite of
b. Although
c. Although
d. In spite of
3. a. Despite
b. Although
c. Despite
d. Although
ey. Despite
4. a. In spite of
b. Even though
c. In spite of
d. even though
e. In spite of
f. even though
g. even though
h. In spite of

PRACTICE 18, p. 196
1. e
2. c
3. b
4. g
5. a
6. i
7. d
8. j
9. h
10. f

PRACTICE 19, p. 196
1. a. Even though it was night, we could see the road very clearly.
b. Although it was night, we could see the road very clearly.
c. It was night, but we could see the road very clearly.
2. a. Despite the fact that Helen has a fear of heights, she enjoys skydiving.
b. Despite her fear of heights, Helen enjoys skydiving.
c. Helen has a fear of heights; nevertheless, she enjoys skydiving.
3. a. Though Millie has the flu, she is working at her computer.
b. Millie has the flu, but she is working at her computer anyway.
c. Millie has the flu, but she is still working at her computer.

PRACTICE 20, p. 197
Possible answers
1. Red is bright and lively, while gray is a dull color. OR
   While red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color.
2. Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. Her sister, on the other hand, is full of self-confidence.
3. While a rock is heavy, a feather is light. OR
   A rock is heavy, while a feather is light.
4. Some children are unruly. Others, however, are quiet and obedient. OR
   Some children are unruly; others, however, are quiet and obedient. OR
   Some children are unruly. Others are quiet and obedient, however.
5. Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. On the other hand, math and science courses are difficult for him. OR
   Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex; on the other hand, math and science courses are difficult for him.
6. Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions; however, strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy. OR
   Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy, however.
CHAPTER 20: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES 
AND WISHES

PRACTICE 1, p. 200
1. a. yes 
   b. no
2. a. yes 
   b. no
3. a. no 
   b. yes

PRACTICE 2, p. 200
Group 1
1. c
2. a
3. b

Group 2
1. c
2. a
3. b

Group 3
1. c
2. b
3. a

Group 4
1. a
2. c
3. b

PRACTICE 3, p. 201
1. heat . . . boils
   heat . . . will boil
2. forget . . . look
   forget . . . will look
3. pet . . . purrs
   pet . . . will purr
4. have . . . will call
   have . . . call
5. eat . . . will get
   eat . . . get
6. is . . . are
   is . . . will be

PRACTICE 4, p. 202
1. b
2. a
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. b

PRACTICE 5, p. 202
1. were . . . would be
2. had . . . would travel
3. had . . . would like
4. liked . . . would cook
5. weren’t . . . could have
6. didn’t have . . . would go / ’d go
PRACTICE 6, p. 203
1. h  
2. d  
3. b  
4. j  
5. i  
6. c  
7. a  
8. e  
9. g  
10. f

PRACTICE 7, p. 203
1. b  
2. a  
3. a  
4. a  
5. b  
6. b

PRACTICE 8, p. 204
1. had not taken ... would not have met  
2. had not forgotten ... could have paid  
3. had known ... would have visited  
4. had paid ... would not have cut off  
5. had been ... would not have been canceled  
6. had not discovered ... would not have developed

PRACTICE 9, p. 204
1. c  
2. a  
3. b  
4. e  
5. f  
6. d

PRACTICE 10, p. 205
1. had ... could fly  
2. could fly ... would arrive  
3. get ... will have / ill have  
4. have ... will tell / ill tell  
5. had had ... would have told him  
6. had told ... would not have been

PRACTICE 11, p. 205
1. If I hadn’t been sick yesterday, I would have gone to class.  
2. If Alan ate breakfast, he wouldn’t overeat at lunch.  
3. If his watch had not been slow, Kostas would not have been late to his own wedding.  
4. If the bus were not always so crowded, I would ride it to work every morning.  
5. If Sara had known that Highway 57 was closed, she would have taken an alternative route.  
6. If someone had been there to help her, Camille could have finished unloading the truck.

PRACTICE 12, p. 206
1. If the wind weren’t blowing so hard, we could go sailing.  
2. If the wind had not been blowing so hard, we could have gone sailing.

3. If the water weren’t running, I could hear you.  
4. If the water had not been running, I could have heard the phone.  
5. If the baby were not hungry, she wouldn’t be crying.  
6. If Dick had not been sleeping soundly, he would have heard his alarm clock.  
7. If I had not been watching an exciting mystery on TV, I would have answered the phone.  
8. If I weren’t trying to concentrate, I could talk to you now.

PRACTICE 13, p. 206
1. a, c  
2. b, d  
3. a, d  
4. b, c  
5. a, d  
6. a, d

PRACTICE 14, p. 207
1. If it weren’t raining, we would finish the game.  
2. If I had eaten lunch, I wouldn’t be hungry now.  
3. If Bob hadn’t left his wallet at home, he would have money for lunch now.  
4. If Bruce were not always daydreaming, he would get his work done.  
5. If I hadn’t played basketball for three hours last night, my muscles wouldn’t hurt today.  
6. If the band had not been playing so loud, I could have heard what you said.  
7. If Diane had not asked the technician a lot of questions, she wouldn’t understand how to use her computer now.  
8. If Olga and Ivan had not been paying attention, they would have seen the exit sign on the highway.  
9. If the doctor had explained the test results to me, I would know what they mean.  
10. If we had not been sleeping last night, we would have heard the thunder and lightning.

PRACTICE 15, p. 208
1. Were I  
2. Should you need  
3. Had I known  
4. Had I been offered  
5. Should anyone call  
6. Should the pizza need reheating  
7. Should you feel  
8. Were you really a lawyer

PRACTICE 16, p. 208
1. c  
2. b  
3. c  
4. b

PRACTICE 17, p. 209
1. I hadn’t forgotten to tell him that she needed a ride.  
2. you hadn’t helped  
3. I had opened the door quickly  
4. he could have gotten time off from work  
5. he had told his boss about the problem
APPENDIX: SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS

PRACTICE 1, p. A1

1. Airplanes have wings.

2. The teacher explained the problem.

3. Children enjoy games.


5. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat other animals.

6. According to an experienced waitress, you can carry full cups of coffee without spilling them just by never looking at them.

PRACTICE 2, p. A1

1. Alice arrived at six o’clock.

2. We drank some tea.

3. I agree with you.

4. I waited for Sam at the airport for two hours.

5. They’re staying at a resort hotel in San Antonio, Texas.

6. Mr. Chan is studying English.
7. The wind is blowing hard today.

8. I walked to the theater, but Janice rode her bicycle.


10. Rivers flow toward the sea.

PRACTICE 3, p. A2

1. Jack opened the heavy door slowly.

2. Chinese jewelers carved beautiful ornaments from jade.

3. The old man carves wooden figures skillfully.

4. A busy executive usually has short conversations on the telephone.

5. The young woman had a very good time at the picnic yesterday.

PRACTICE 4, p. A2

1. quickly 8. usually
2. quick 9. well
3. polite 10. good
4. politely 11. gentle
5. regularly 12. gently
6. regular 13. bad
7. usual 14. badly

PRACTICE 5, p. A3

1. Sue always takes a walk in the morning.
2. Tim is always a hard worker.
3. Beth has always worked hard.
5. Do you always work hard?
6. Taxis are usually available .
7. Yusuf rarely takes a taxi .
8. I have often thought about .
9. Yuko probably needs some help.
10. Have you ever attended the show .
12. The students are hardly ever late.
13. Do you usually finish your .
14. In India, the monsoon season generally begins .
15. . Mr. Singh's hometown usually receives around .

PRACTICE 6, p. A3

1. Jim came to class without his books.
2. We stayed at home during the storm.
3. Sonya walked across the bridge over the Cedar River.
4. When Alex walked through the door, his little sister ran toward him and put her arms around his neck.
5. The two of us need to talk to Tom too.
6. Animals live in all parts of the world. Animals walk or crawl on land, fly in the air, and swim in the water.
7. Scientists divide living things into two main groups: the animal kingdom and the plant kingdom.
8. Asia extends from the Pacific Ocean in the east to Africa and Europe in the west.

PRACTICE 7, p. A4

1. Jack put the letter in the mailbox.
2. The children walked to school.
3. Mary did her homework at the library.
4. Chinese printers created the first paper money in the world.
5. Dark clouds appeared on the horizon.
6. Mary filled the shelves of the cabinet with boxes of old books.

PRACTICE 8, p. A4

1. Ø (no linking verb in the sentence)
2. looked fresh
3. Ø
4. Ø
5. tasted good
6. grew quiet
7. Ø
8. Ø
9. Ø
10. smells delicious
11. Ø
12. got sleepy
13. became rough
14. Ø
15. Ø
16. sounded happy
17. turns hot
18. Ø
19. Ø
20. appears certain
21. seems strange
PRACTICE 9, p. A5
1. clean 9. well
2. slowly 10. fair
3. safely 11. terrible
4. anxious 12. good
5. complete 13. light
6. wildly 14. confidently
7. honest 15. famous
8. thoughtfully 16. fine

PRACTICE 10, p. A6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question word</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main verb</th>
<th>Rest of question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a. Ø</td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b. Where</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1c. Who</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a. Ø</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Ron</td>
<td>living</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b. Where</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Ron</td>
<td>living</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2c. Who</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>living</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3a. Ø</td>
<td>Does</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3b. Where</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3c. Who</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4a. Ø</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4b. Where</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4c. Who</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5a. Ø</td>
<td>Did</td>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5b. Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5c. Who</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6a. Ø</td>
<td>Has</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6b. Where</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>Ø?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6c. Who</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 11, p. A7
1. When are you going to the zoo?
2. Are you going downtown later today?
3. Do you live in an apartment?
4. Where does Sue live?
5. Who lives in that house?
6. Can you speak French?
7. Who can speak Arabic?
8. When did Olga arrive?
9. Who arrived late?
10. What is Ann opening?
11. What is Ann doing?
12. What did Mary open?
13. Who opened the door?
14. Has the mail arrived?
15. Do you have a bicycle?
16. What does Alex have in his hand?
17. Do you like ice cream?
18. Would you like an ice cream cone?
19. What would Joe like?
20. Who would like a soft drink?

PRACTICE 12, p. A8
1. How do you take your coffee?
2. What kind of dictionary do you have? (have you? / have you got?)
3. What does he do for a living?
4. Who was Margaret talking to? / To whom was Margaret talking?
5. How many people showed up for the meeting?
6. Why could none of the planes take off?
7. What was she thinking about? / About what was she thinking?
8. How fast / How many miles per hour (or: an hour) were you driving when the police officer stopped you?
9. What kind of food do you like best?
10. Which apartment is yours?
11. What is Oscar like? (also possible: What kind of person / man is Oscar?)
12. What does Oscar look like?
13. Whose dictionary fell to the floor?
14. Why isn’t Abby here?
15. When will all of the students in the class be informed of their final grades?
16. How do you feel?
17. Which book did you prefer?
18. What kind of music do you like?
19. How late is the plane expected to be?
20. Why did the driver of the stalled car light a flare?
21. Which pen do you want?
22. What’s the weather like in July?
23. How do you like your steak?
24. How did you do on the test?
25. How many seconds are there in a year?

PRACTICE 13, p. A9
1. How much money do you need?
2. Where was Roberto born? / In what country/city was ...? / What country/city was Roberto born in?
3. How often do you go out to eat?
4. Who(m) are you waiting for? (very formal and seldom used: For whom are you waiting?)
5. Who answered the phone?
6. Who(m) did you call?
7. Who called?
8. How much gas/How many gallons of gas did she buy?
9. What does deceitful mean?
10. What is an abyss?
11. Which way did he go?
12. Whose books and papers are these?
13. How many children do they have? [British or regional American: How many children have they?]
14. How long has he been here?
15. How far is it / How many miles is it to Madrid?
16. When / At what time can the doctor see me?
17. Who is her roommate?
18. Who are her roommates?
19. How long / How many years have your parents been living there?
20. Whose book is this?
21. Who’s coming over for dinner?
22. What color is Ann’s dress?
23. What color are Ann’s eyes?
24. Who can’t go ...?
25. Why can’t Bob go? / How come Bob can’t go?
26. Why didn't you / How come you didn't answer ...? (formal and rare: Why did you not answer the phone?)
27. What kind of music do you like?
28. What don't you understand?
29. What is Janet doing right now?
30. How do you spell sitting? [you = impersonal pronoun]
31. What does Tom look like?
32. What is Tom like?
33. What does Ron do (for a living)?
34. How far / How many miles is Mexico from here?
35. How do you take / like your coffee?
36. Which (city) is farther north, Stockholm or Moscow? / Of Stockholm and Moscow, which (city/one) is farther north?
37. How are you getting along?

PRACTICE 14, p. A10
1. Haven't you seen ... ? No.
2. Don't you feel ... ? No.
3. Wasn't he ... ? No.
4. Didn't Mary tell ... ? No.
5. Don't Janet you and you work ... ? Yes.
6. Isn't that ... ? Yes.
7. Wasn't she ... ? No.
8. Isn't she ... ? Yes.

PRACTICE 15, p. A11
1. don't you
2. have you
3. didn't she
4. aren't there
5. have you
6. don't you (also possible but less common: haven't you)
7. won't you
8. doesn't he
9. shouldn't we
10. can they
11. are they
12. isn't it
13. didn't they
14. aren't I
15. isn't it

PRACTICE 16, p. A11
1. He's
2. Ø
3. He's
4. Ø
5. She'd
6. Ø
7. She'd
8. Ø
9. We'll
10. They're
11. It's
12. It's
13. Ø
14. Ø
15. We're
16. Ø

PRACTICE 17, p. A12
1. I don't have any problems. I have no problems.
2. There wasn't any food on the shelf. There was no food on the shelf.
3. I didn't receive any letters from home. I received no letters from home.
4. I don't need any help. I need no help.
5. We don't have any time to waste. We have no time to waste.
6. You shouldn't have given the beggar any money. You should have given the beggar no money.
7. I don't trust anyone. I trust no one.
8. I didn't see anyone. I saw no one.
9. There wasn't anyone in his room. There was no one in his room.
10. She can't find anybody who knows about it. She can find nobody who knows about it.

PRACTICE 18, p. A13
1. We have no time to waste. Or we don't have any time to waste.
2. I didn't have any problems. Or I had no problems.
3. I can't do anything about it. Or I can do nothing about it.
4. You can hardly ever understand her when she speaks.
5. I know neither Ann nor her husband. Or I don't know either Ann or her husband.
6. Don't ever drink water from ... or Never drink water from ... .
7. . . . I could barely hear the speaker.

PRACTICE 19, p. A13
1. Hardly had I stepped out of bed . . . .
2. Never will I say that again.
3. Sarcely ever have I enjoyed myself more . . . .
4. Rarely does she make a mistake.
5. Never will I trust him again because . . . .
6. Hardly ever is it possible to get . . . .
7. Seldom do I skip breakfast.
8. Never have I known a more . . . .

PRACTICE 20, p. A13
1. honesty, fairness
2. school, class
3. her illness, her husband's death
4. jail, prison
5. ghosts, UFOs
6. my cousin, a friend
7. mathematics, sports
8. you, your children
9. smoking, cigarettes
10. magazines, a newspaper, websites
PRACTICE 21, p. A14
1. of 
2. at 
3. from 
4. in 
5. at 

PRACTICE 22, p. A14
Situation 1:
1. to 
2. of 
3. of 
4. to 

Situation 2:
1. with/by 
2. with 
3. with 

PRACTICE 23, p. A15
1. c 
2. e 
3. b 
4. f 

PRACTICE 24, p. A15
1. to 
2. for 
3. from 
4. on 
5. about 
6. for 

PRACTICE 25, p. A16
1. for 
2. for 
3. of 
4. to ... for 
5. with 
6. to 
7. on 

Sample answers:
1. be 
2. arrive 
3. tell 
4. talk 

PRACTICE 26, p. A16
5. write 
6. see 
7. become 
8. be 

PRACTICE 27, p. A17
1. take 
2. be named 
3. stay 
4. be postponed 
5. be admitted 
6. be controlled ... (be) eliminated 
7. have 
8. be 
9. know 
10. be 
11. be permitted 
12. not be 
13. return 
14. be built 
15. not tell 
16. be told 

PRACTICE 28, p. A18
1. raised 
2. rises 
3. sat 
4. set 
5. lay 
6. lying 
7. laid 
8. lie 
9. lies 
10. raises 
11. rose 
12. lays 
13. laid 
14. set 
15. sat 
16. lies 

SPECIAL WORKBOOK SECTION: PHRASAL VERBS

PRACTICE 1, p. A21
1. a. after 
2. b. over 
3. c. up 
4. d. into 
5. a. out 
6. b. into 
7. c. out 
8. d. out of 
9. a. over 
10. b. through with 
11. c. out of 
12. d. back from 
13. e. off 
14. a. off 
15. b. up 
16. c. on 
17. d. back 
18. e. in 

PRACTICE 2, p. A22
1. passed out 
2. Pick up 
3. takes after 
4. think ... over 
5. puts up with 
6. passed away 
7. show up 
8. get along with 
9. turn in 
10. pass out 

PRACTICE 3, p. A23
1. our assignment? 
2. a lie / a story 
3. the city / the banks 
4. your cigarette / the lights / the fire 
5. the war / the crisis 
6. the problem / the puzzle 
7. the lights / the music / the printer 
8. his classmate / a girl 
9. chocolate / smoking 
10. a friend / a classmate 
11. high school / college 

PRACTICE 4, p. A23
1. into 
2. off 
3. on 
4. back 
5. out 
6. up 
7. into ... out 
8. up 
9. up 
10. on
PRACTICE 5, p. A24
1. away / out
2. up
3. off / out
4. up
5. off
6. up
7. about, on
8. out of
9. off
10. off ... in

PRACTICE 6, p. A25
1. out
2. back
3. by / in
4. on ... off
5. put ... out
6. up
7. up ... away / out
8. out ... back
9. up
10. on

PRACTICE 7, p. A27
1. up
2. over
3. after
4. up
5. out
6. down
7. up
8. out
9. off
10. up
11. out

PRACTICE 8, p. A28
1. back
2. up
3. out
4. over
5. on ... off
6. in ... out
7. on ... off
8. on ... off
9. up with
10. A: about / on  
   B: along with
11. A: over ... in  
   B: over
UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Betty S. Azar
Rachel Spack Koch
Stacy A. Hagen

Understanding and Using English Grammar is a classic developmental skills text for intermediate to advanced English language learners.

This Workbook consists solely of self-study exercises, with answers included, providing students the opportunity to explore and practice grammar independently. It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts in both the Student Book and the Chartbook.

UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Fourth Edition, includes:

Student Book, now with Audio CDs

Workbook, consisting of self-study exercises for independent work

Teacher's Guide with PowerPoint CD-ROM, with teaching suggestions, grammar notes, expansion activities, and answer key

Test Bank, consisting of quizzes, tests, and mid-term and final exams

Chartbook, a reference text consisting of only the grammar charts

Student Book Answer Key

AzarGrammar.com
a teacher-support website

AZAR Interactive
for online interactive software, go to
http://www.azarinteractive.com

Azar/Grammar Exchange Companion website
http://www.longman.com/azar
http://www.longman.com/grammarexchange